

A-FIRST-LATIN-BOOK

HALE

Atkinson, Mentzer & Grover

Publishers and School Furnishers

350-352 *Wabash Avenue*
Chicago

Eastern Office
120 Boylston St
Boston

Charles F. Atkinson
John P. Mentzer
Edwin O. Grover

A BRIEF ON

Hale's First Latin Book

The "biography of a book" is the biography of an IDEA. This is doubly true of any book that pretends to be a contribution to a subject or to be in any sense creative. The successful school books of the past have been, almost without exception, books that embodied an IDEA, and that had a long existence previous to being presented to the public.

The opening of the biography of Dr. Hale's "A First Latin Book" dates back to the time when he was Professor of Latin in Harvard University. The second chapter of the biography was written when he was Head of the Department of Latin at Cornell University; the third chapter, while Head of the Latin Department of the University of Chicago; the fourth and last chapter, while he was teaching a class of first year boys and girls at the University High School and taking his own son through his preparatory Latin course.

If Your Order

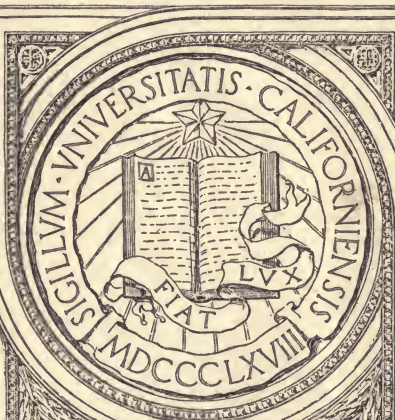
is

direct to
to

all
dis-

GIFT OF

Benjamin Ide Wheeler

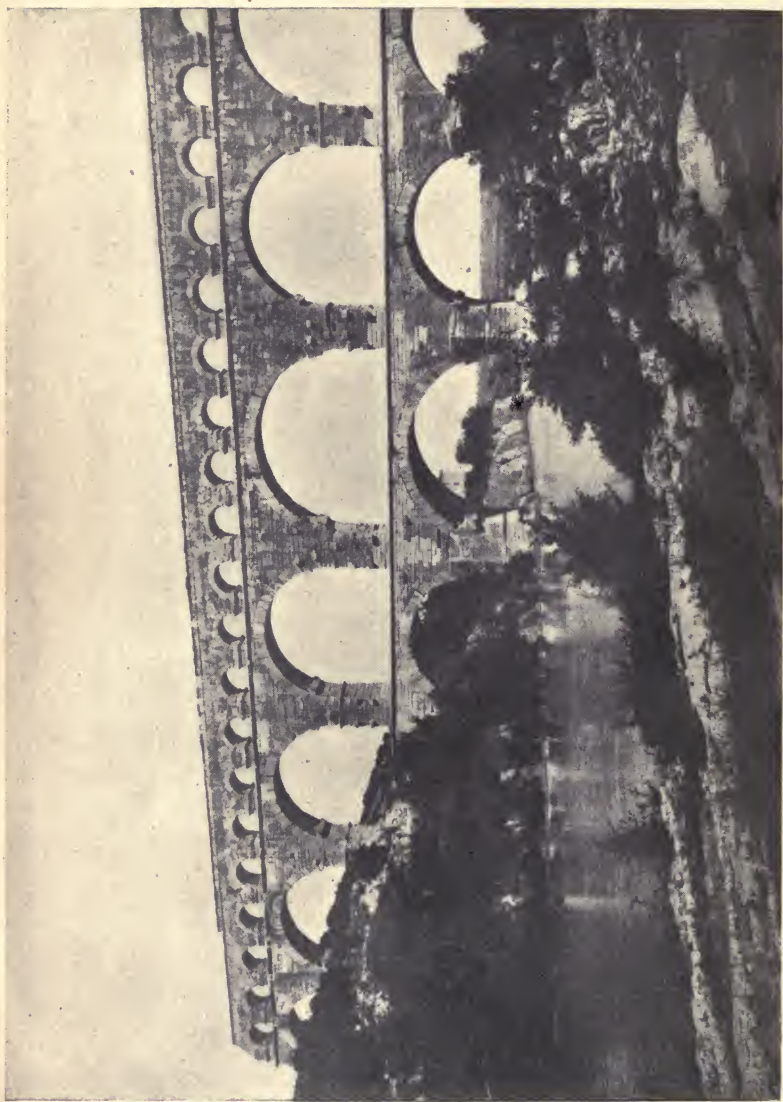


EX LIBRIS



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





REMAINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT NEAR NÎMES, IN SOUTHERN FRANCE.
Probably built about 19 B. C. Lower arcade now serves as a bridge (Pont du Gard)

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM GARDNER HALE

PROFESSOR AND HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO AND PROFESSOR OF
THE TEACHING OF LATIN IN THE
SCHOOL OF EDUCATION



ATKINSON, MENTZER & GROVER
CHICAGO Publishers BOSTON

Prodi, parve liber. Precor ut te discipulusque
Atque magister ament, quantum ego amavi et amo.

GIFT

Benj. L. de la Roche

TO THE
LIBRARY OF
THE UNIVERSITY OF
CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1907
BY WM. GARDNER HALE
Entered at Stationers' Hall, London

PA 20
H 165
1907
MAIN

PREFACE

This book is the product of class-room experience and practice, at my own hands and those of many other teachers who have used it in mimeographed form, and, in the present year, in advance sheets. This is the fifth revision of the original draft.

The method employed in the past in teaching beginners in Latin has been either to make them attack a piece of continuous narrative, written for mature Roman readers, and necessarily without grammatical arrangement, or to furnish them with exercises made up in the main of short bits, without connection. But let us suppose, now, that we could command the services of some ancient Roman teacher. What should we tell him that we wanted for a First Latin Book, or,—and this is the same thing,—what would he, if a good and practical teacher, think of on his own account? A beginning with easy words, standing for familiar ideas connected with home life. The opening sentences should be simple and interesting;—about the dinner, good or bad, the servants, the boy and girl friends, and the like. A fruitful topic, next, would be the school, with its work and play. In time the sentences would group themselves into paragraphs, and paragraphs into stories, making up the Reading Matter of a lesson, and setting the Roman before the student as a living being belonging to a living people.

Then the story would become a “serial” from lesson to lesson, still remaining natural and interesting, and thus easy to read and to remember. For its subject, a hint might be taken from Horace’s mimic battle (Letters, I, XVIII, 58–64), in which boys delighted to fight Actium over again, “till victory crowned the one side or the other.” If the teacher should decide to have the boys in his classes read and write accounts of a mimic war, he would naturally use many of the words and phrases in a great general’s story of his conquest of Gaul. He could depend upon the war-interest to help him in the teaching of a syntax and vocabulary fitted to the later needs of his students; and, every-

where, the presence of a *context*, a *situation*, would make both the force of the construction and the meaning of the words easier.

This book is an attempt to supply just such a lack.

Some may object to modern Latin. But all beginner's books (except those which start with Caesar, who certainly did not have beginners in mind) are made up of modern Latin. Even the occasional Caesar sentences are rewritten. Which is better from a modern, a continuous story, or incoherent bits?

I have tried to lead my readers by a carefully graded road to the lower levels of Caesar. I have sought to interest them by plain ideas plainly stated in easy Latin, and woven at the earliest possible moment into a connected narrative. There is not a word about Caesar,—the whole war is a boys' affair. Then, when forms and constructions have been learned, Caesar appears, not as a writer of a school-book, but as a vigorous and effective person, dramatically rescuing the remains of his army and saving the situation. With few and slight changes the story is in his own words. The reading of this episode is likely to leave the student with a taste for more.

The attention of teachers is called to the following:

Vocabulary. In spite of its starting in simple affairs of home life, 91½ per cent. of the moderate but sufficient vocabulary of 961 words are from the Gallic War, and cover the most important words. So large a proportion has never before been reached. In this reckoning, groups like *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*, count as one. Verbs like *amō*, *certō*, *clāmō*, *currō*, *fidō*, *legō*, *mūtō*, *rumpō*, *suādeō*, are counted as non-Caesarian, though appearing in compounds in Caesar, and thereby demanding all the more that they be inserted. Of the total number of non-Caesarian words, namely 82, 69 appear in the vocabularies of our texts of Cicero or Virgil, or both, leaving only 13 words in this book¹ that are not in High School Latin. It would hardly be possible to go farther than this, and still preserve a normal and natural vocabulary.

Repetition. In the first forty-eight Lessons (after the first three, in which repetition of words without identity of sentences is at points difficult), every new word is used in two successive Lessons at

¹ They are *amīca*, *āthlēta*, *Capreae*, *coqua*, *exemplar*, *herī*, *impigrē* (but *piger* and *impiger* occur), *Iūlia*, *lapillus*, *Pompeī*, and *schola*.

least, besides reappearing later. This feature, which is new, would appear to be an indispensable one.

Organization of Vocabulary. Words closely connected are put, as far as possible, in the same Lesson, or in Lessons not far apart. Thus in §345 are given *iungō* and *coniungō*; *optimus* and *optimē*; *prior*, *prius* and *priusquam*; *suādeō* and *suāvis*. In Lesson XLIX, *optō* is given, to make it easy for the student to understand and remember the term Optative Subjunctive in Lesson L.

English Vocabulary. The English vocabulary is of substantially the same length as the Latin—likewise a novel feature. The student knows his Latin words better, if he has used them from both directions. Principal Parts are given for all verbs, just as genitives are given for nouns. The purpose is to afford the student every opportunity to make his knowledge certain by the repeating of impressions. The same holds for the mention of the more troublesome constructions.

Forms. The forms are all given in the body of the book (except the unimportant list of numerals), and never in a mass, unless the parts of the mass are alike. There is much repetition, to show likeness or contrast (as of the active, when the passive is given). This takes space, but lessens labor. Every set of forms is put to immediate use in a context which enforces its meaning.

The Reading Matter is largely in dialogue, both for greater naturalness, and to fix the persons of the verb.

Syntax. The system is of extreme simplicity. Its categories are merely answers to the questions: What *are* the ideas which the Romans expressed by the cases? What *are* the ideas which the Romans expressed by the moods? In a given case, the student has only to know what the Latin *means* to name the construction.

A Summary of Syntax is given immediately after the Supplementary Reading. It may be useful by way of review with this reading.

Excepting for the place-usage with names of towns (§409) the words employed in the sentences given to illustrate new constructions have already been made familiar. A needless difficulty has thereby been removed.

In many instances, these illustrative sentences are taken from what the student has already read or written. He has, in fact, often come to *feel* the construction before he is asked to formulate it. In this and similar respects, the whole series of exercises and explanations will be found to be carefully woven together.

Index. The Index, being intended for the convenience of the teacher, is full, with constant cross repetitions.

The book has been made in the class-room. At every stage it has received and profited by the criticism of other teachers who were using it. I wish to thank Mr. W. E. Moffatt, formerly of the Bradley Institute, Peoria, Mr. C. H. Van Tuyl, Mr. H. F. Scott, Miss Frances S. Pellett, Mr. S. C. Johnston, Mr. O. M. Washburn, and Mr. W. L. Carr, of the University High School, all of whom have helped by their confidence, and all but two by many criticisms. Nor should I forget other teachers, mostly strangers to me, who in the present year have similarly aided me, in spite of the difficulties of using advance sheets, in successive pamphlets, and without a general Vocabulary,—namely in the Shortridge High School, Manual Training School, and eleven Grammar Schools in Indianapolis; the High Schools of Goshen and Princeton, Ind., Holyoke, Mass., Ishpeming, Mich., and Houston, Tex.; the Biggsville Township High School, Biggsville, Ill., and the Princeton Township High School, Princeton, Ill.; the Public School, Pleasant Hill, Ala.; the Academy of Miami University, Oxford, O., and the Preparatory Schools of the University of Idaho, Moscow, Ida., and Rockford College, Rockford, Ill.; the Lagrange Female College, Lagrange, Ga.; the Kenwood Institute, Chicago, the Blees Military Academy, Macon, Mo., and the Bartholomew-Clifton School, Cincinnati, O. I am also indebted, for the sympathetic granting of every facility, to President Harper, of the University of Chicago, Professor W. B. Owen, Dean of the University High School, and Professor N. Butler, Dean of the School of Education. To Mr. Edward Manley, of the Englewood High School, Chicago, I owe much wise and helpful counsel. And finally, I am deeply indebted to Mr. Carr, now of the Shortridge High School, Indianapolis, to Mr. C. H. Beeson, formerly of the Peoria High School, and to Mrs. C. H. Beeson, formerly of the University of Indiana, for invaluable criticism and assistance in the preparation of the present edition of the book.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION (To the Student)

PART I: PRONUNCIATION

PART II: LEARNING TO READ

LESSON	PAGE
I. Principles:—Forces of Endings	4
II. Principles and Names:—Noun, Adjective, Conjunction. —Agreement.—Nominative and Accusative.—Normal Order and Emphatic Order	6
III. Verb.—Subject and Predicate.—Attributive and Predi- cate Adjective.—Use of <i>est</i>	9
IV. Nouns, Proper, Common, Collective.—Personal Pro- nouns.—Possessive Adjectives.—Adverb	11
V. Appositive Noun.—Vocative.—Interjection.—Emphatic Order (continued)	14
VI. Genitive and Dative, First Declension.—Genitive of Possession.—Dative of Figurative Direction (“to” or “for” Dative)	17
VII. Mood, Tense, Person.—Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.—Direct and Indirect Object	20
VIII. Ablative Case.—Prepositions Defined	23
IX. Accusative and Ablative with Prepositions.—First De- clension Singular, Table	25
X. First Declension, in full.—Present Infinitive and Third Person Plural, First Conjugation.— <i>Sunt</i>	28
XI. The Four Conjugations Distinguished.—Personal End- ings.—Present Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> and <i>sum</i>	31
XII. Second Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.—Dative with Certain Verbs	33
XIII. Genders in the First and Second Declensions.—O-Stem Nouns and Adjectives in full	35
XIV. Shortened <i>ro</i> -Stems.—Irregular Forms	37

LESSON		PAGE
XV.	First and Second Declension Adjectives in full.— Rule inferred for Agreement of Adjectives . . .	40
XVI.	First and Second Conjugations, Present Indicative Passive.—Agent of Passive Voice	43
XVII.	Pronominal Adjectives, Declined. <i>The Complaining Schoolboy. Favoritism in the School?</i> . . .	45
XVIII.	First and Second Conjugations, Present Impera- tive and Infinitive, Active and Passive.—Ipse. <i>The Father and the Lazy Schoolboy</i>	48
XIX.	Imperfect Indicative Active.—Ille and iste.—Pro- nouns and Adjectives as Substantives.—Clause and Phrase. <i>Illness and Drooping Spirits.</i> . .	51
XX.	Imperfect Indicative Passive.—Is. <i>The Reforming Student</i>	55
XXI.	Future Indicative Active.—Idem. <i>Father and Son</i>	57
XXII.	Future Indicative Passive.—Hic. <i>The Pleasures of Work. The Best School</i>	60
XXIII.	Third Conjugation, Present Indicative and Impera- tive, Active and Passive.—“Yes” and “No” Ques- tions, and Answers. <i>The Teasing Boys</i>	62
XXIV.	Fourth Conjugation.—Third Conjugation Verbs in -iō.—All Conjugations, Present Indicative and Infinitive, Both Voices. <i>A Quarrel Begins</i> . . .	65
XXV.	Quis and quī.—Agreement of Relative. <i>The Quarrel Goes On</i>	68
XXVI.	Quicumque.—Quīdam.—Present Imperative, All Conjugations. <i>The Teacher and the Teasing Boys</i>	71
XXVII.	Third and Fourth Conjugations, Imperfect Indica- tive, Active and Passive.—Quisquam.—Quisque. —Genitive of the Whole. <i>The Crybaby</i>	74
XXVIII.	Third and Fourth Conjugations, Future Indicative, Active and Passive.—Aliquis.—Objective Geni- tive. <i>Mark Warns the Teasers</i>	78
XXIX.	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives. <i>The Small Boy and Mark</i>	81
XXX.	Perfect Indicative Active, All Conjugations.—Per- sonal Endings.—Two Forces of the Perfect. <i>The Teacher, to the Allied and the Beaten Boys</i> . .	84

LESSON		PAGE
XXXI.	Stem-Formation in Perfect Indicative Active.— Perfect Passive Participle.—Principal Parts of Verbs thus far Used. <i>Picnic in the Woods</i> . . .	86
XXXII.	Future Active Participle. <i>The Tent in the Woods</i>	90
XXXIII.	Past Perfect Indicative Active, All Conjugations. <i>An Adventure of the Small Boys</i>	92
XXXIV.	Future Perfect Indicative Active, All Conjugations. <i>Does it Pay to Work at School?</i>	94
XXXV.	Present Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive, All Conjugations. <i>Does it Pay to Have Worked at School?</i>	96
XXXVI.	Third Declension, Consonant-Stem Nouns.—Dative of Reference or Concern. <i>The Boys Project a Mock War</i>	99
XXXVII.	Consonant-Stem Nouns (finished). <i>War Talk</i> . . .	102
XXXVIII.	Neuter i-Stems.—Masculine and Feminine i-Stems. —Mixed Stems.—Ablative of Means or Instrument. <i>Sword, Shield, and Helmet</i>	105
XXXIX.	Exceptional i-Stems.—Future Passive Participle, and Dative of Agent. <i>The Braggart Soldier</i> . . .	108
XL.	Consonant-Stem Adjectives.—Dative of Possession. <i>Who will be Chosen Generals?</i>	111
XLI.	I-Stem Adjectives.—Dative of the Person Judging. <i>The Too-Athletic Girl</i>	114
XLII.	Present Active Participle.—Ablative with <i>prō</i> and <i>prae</i> .—Gerundive Defined. <i>Electioneering</i> . . .	117
XLIII.	Ablative Absolute.—Perfects with Present Meaning.—Middle or Reflexive Verbs.—Deponents. <i>Mark Invites a Friend to See the Battle</i>	120
XLIV.	Summary of Points of Difficulty in the Third Declension.—Genders. <i>Mark's Friend Answers</i> . . .	124
XLV.	Irregular Words of the Third Declension: <i>vis</i> , <i>plūs</i> , <i>complūrēs</i> , <i>duo</i> , <i>ambō</i> .—Two Accusatives.— Ablative of the Measure of Difference.—Ablative with <i>ūtor</i> , <i>fruor</i> , <i>fungor</i> , <i>potior</i> , and <i>vēscor</i> . <i>Proposed Ground of the Campaign Explored</i> . . .	127
XLVI.	Subjunctive Mood, Present in full.—Subjunctive of an Act Willed, and of an Act Anticipated. <i>Different Boys Want Different Things</i>	131

LESSON		PAGE
XLVII.	Various Uses of the Subjunctive of Will and the Subjunctive of Anticipation: Expression of Purpose; of Fear; of Deliberation.—Expression of Anticipation after Words Meaning <i>Before</i> or <i>Until</i> <i>Committee on Rules Proposed</i>	134
XLVIII.	<i>How Shall the Committee on Rules be Made Up?</i>	138
XLIX.	<i>The Anxious Father</i>	140
L.	The Subjunctive expressing an Act as Wished, Proper, Likely, Possible, or Certain in an Imagined Case.—Fourth Declension. <i>The Too-Ambitious Servius and the Hoax</i>	142
LI.	<i>Electioneering</i>	146
LII.	Imperfect Subjunctive, in full.—Meaning of the Tense. <i>Mark and Lucius Elected Generals</i>	148
LIII.	Genitive of Material or Composition.—Descriptive Genitive and Ablative. <i>Talk of Mark and Lucius with Their Backers</i>	152
LIV.	Fifth Declension.—Indefinite quis.—Ablative of the Time At or Within Which.—Impersonal Use of Verbs. <i>Drilling for the Battle</i>	156
LV.	Declension of <i>domus</i> .—Ordinary Expression of Place From, To, or In Which; Construction with Names of Towns and Small Islands, and with <i>domus</i> and <i>rūs</i> .—Locative Ablative of Certain Words with or without a Preposition.—Ablative of the Point of View from Which. <i>Where Does Mark's Expected Friend Live?</i>	160
LVI.	Perfect Subjunctive, All Conjugations and <i>sum</i> .—Semi-Deponent Verbs.—The Consecutive Subjunctive of Fact.— <i>Is, ille, etc.</i> , with Descriptive Meaning. <i>Mark's Correspondent Arrives</i>	164
LVII.	Determinative Clauses.—Dative of Tendency, Purpose, or Result.—Dative of the Concrete Object for Which.—Dative and Ablative with <i>fīdō</i> and <i>cōfīdō</i> .—Accusative of Extent, Duration, or Degree. <i>Mark Justifies His Plan</i>	168
LVIII.	Past Perfect Subjunctive.—Ablative of Cause or Reason.—Ablative of Respect.—Substantive <i>quod</i> -Clause of Fact, and <i>quod</i> -Clause of Respect. <i>Authority of the Two Generals</i>	172

Table of Contents

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LIX. Imperative, All Forms.—Supine.—Ablative of Accordance.—Ablative, etc., with a Comparative. <i>Bad Weather. Indoor Talk. Rules of Battle</i> .	176
LX. Infinitive, All Forms.—Infinitive Tenses.—Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. <i>Plans of the Judges</i> .	180
LXI. Inflection of the Regular Verb finished: The Gerund.—Uses of Gerundive and Gerund.—The Natural Harmony of Tenses ("Sequence of Tenses").—Causal or Adversative <i>quī</i> -Clause. <i>Talk of Mothers, Timid and Otherwise</i>	184
LXII. Irregular Verbs begun: <i>possum</i> .—Descriptive <i>cum</i> -Clause of Situation, and Causal or Adversative <i>cum</i> -Clause. <i>Mark and his Officers at his Father's House</i>	188
LXIII. <i>Volō, nōlō, mālō</i> .—Neutral Conditions and Conclusions; Future Conditions and Conclusions, More Vivid or Less Vivid. <i>The Distrustful Schoolmate</i>	192
LXIV. <i>Fiō, eō</i> .—Historical Present.—Aoristic Narrative Clause with <i>ubi, ut, postquam, or simul atque</i> .—Ablative of Accompaniment. <i>Fair Weather. Opening of the Battle</i>	196
LXV. Regular Comparison of Adjectives.—Ablative of Manner.—Historical Infinitive.—Clauses of Cause or Reason with <i>quod, quia, quoniam</i> or <i>quandō</i> .—Ablative with Verbs of Separation. <i>End of the Battle, and Decision of the Judges</i>	200
LXVI. <i>Ferō</i> .—Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact.—Table of Conditions and Conclusions (summary).—Dative after Verbs compounded with Certain Prepositions. <i>Fresh Challenge Accepted. Opening of the Second Battle</i>	204
LXVII. Irregular or Defective Comparison of Adjectives.—Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse (finished);—Table of the Constructions in Indirect Discourse. <i>End of the Second Battle</i>	208
LXVIII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.—Special Uses of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.—Infinitive with Subject Accusative.—Subjunctive by Attraction. <i>An Incident from Real Warfare</i>	212

PART III: SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE GALLIC UPRISING OF 54 B. C.

(From Caesar's Story of the Gallic War, Book v.)

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. <i>Disposition of the Roman Army for the Winter . . .</i>	216
II. <i>Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus.—Attack upon the Winter Camp of Cotta and Sabinus</i>	218
III. <i>The Parley.—Argument of the Barbarians</i>	220
IV. <i>Council of the Roman Officers.—The Wrong View Prevails</i>	222
V. <i>Ambuscade and Battle</i>	224
VI. <i>Cotta is Wounded at the End of the Day.—Sabinus Asks for Mercy</i>	226
VII. <i>Ambiorix Offers a Conference and Promises Safety.—The Trick.—Destruction of the Army</i>	228
VIII. <i>Swift Attack upon the Camp of Cicero.—The Parley.—Cicero not Deceived.—Long Siege</i>	230
IX. <i>A Letter Is Carried through at Last to Caesar</i>	232
X. <i>Caesar Enters the Enemy's Country</i>	234
XI. <i>The Gauls Fly to Meet Caesar.—His Strategy</i>	236
XII. <i>Victory and Rescue.—Mustering of the Survivors</i>	238



SOUTHERN WALL OF PERMANENT
ROMAN CAMP

At Saalburg, near Homburg. Partly re-
stored. From Jacobi

INTRODUCTION

(To the Student)

Latin is the language spoken by the ancient Romans.

It was at first the language only of Rome and its immediate neighborhood. But as the power of the city extended itself, it became first the language of the whole of Italy, and then the dominant language of the entire civilized world. And this it remained, for more than a thousand years.

But no language stands still. Changes are constantly going on, in the words employed, in their forms, in the pronunciation of them, in their meanings, and in the ways of putting them together to express ideas. Try, for example, our own poet Chaucer. You can make out a good many single words, but you cannot *understand* at all at first. And if you went back still further, say to the writings of King Alfred, you probably could not make out more than one word in ten. In the Lord's Prayer of Alfred's time, out of the 49 different words used, you would recognize only *and*, *we*, *us*, *to*, *on*, and *of*, while you would not understand the ways in which some of these are used,—and would not even know that it was the Lord's Prayer which you had before you. English is thus, you see, a living, growing, and changing thing.

Now of course *Latin* was also a living and growing and changing thing. And it changed somewhat differently in different parts of the world,—say in Italy, in France, and in Spain. The form which it took in Italy we call

Italian, in France, French, and in Spain, Spanish. Now we speak of the English of King Alfred's time as Early English. You see that, in the same way, it would be correct to speak of Latin as Early Italian, and Early French, and Early Spanish. Or you might say that the Italian, the Frenchman, and the Spaniard speak Modern Latin.

But it isn't these people only that speak Modern Latin. We do it ourselves. Our language is only in part descended from Early English, or, as we might call it for greater clearness, Anglo-Saxon English. Two-thirds of the words which we have at our command (that is, the words found in a dictionary) are Latin; while, in our ordinary daily speech, half the words we use outside of what we may call the "small change" of language,—such words as *and*, *we*, *us*, *to*, *on*, *of*, spoken of above,—are Latin. The little boy who says in the street, "please give me a cent, Mister," is speaking just one-half Anglo-Saxon English and one-half Latin English ("give," "me," and "a" have come down from Anglo-Saxon, and "please," "cent," and "Mister" from Latin). Moreover, the words that have come down from Anglo-Saxon are mostly very simple words. The words in which we express our finer distinctions in our thinking are mainly Latin. Latin is thus a good language to know. It is just as much our mother tongue as Anglo-Saxon is. Indeed, we should speak more properly if we called *Latin* the mother tongue, and Anglo-Saxon the *father* tongue. Our language of today is the child of both. It gets a good deal of its strength, though not all, from the father, and a good deal of its refinement, though not all, from the mother. X

To know Latin, then, is to understand English better, and to use it more intelligently and effectively. You will come to feel, as you go on, how much it is your own language that you are really studying.

Moreover, our *civilization* comes mainly from Rome. It was Rome, and not England or Germany or Norway and Sweden, that first conquered the world; and Julius Caesar, who subdued France and Belgium (you will sometime read his own story of his wars), enormously influenced your life and mine. Rome spread its modes of living, its laws, its forms of literature, and its ways of thinking over the whole world. We are really, in all these things, *Romans*, or, more exactly (since Rome got its own arts and letters in part from Greece), we are Greeks and Romans. The story of our various forms of literature,—history, the oration, the essay, lyrical poetry, epic poetry, tragedy, comedy, everything, in short, except satire,—begins with Greece; and satire began in Rome. Science and philosophy, too,—the first methodical thinking, in the part of the world to which we belong, about the processes of nature, and the meaning of life, arose in Greece. Our arts, likewise, except for those that have sprung up quite recently in connection with the wonderful progress of natural science, came from Rome. Your great grandfathers and grandmothers had no ways of building, heating, and lighting their houses, or of traveling or communicating with one another, that they had not inherited from Roman times; and in general they lived much less comfortably than the Ancient Romans.

So, then, you want to know these people. Strains of their blood probably actually run in the veins of a great

many of us. But, at any rate, they are our intellectual ancestors. The first thing to do is to learn their language. Then, if you are so fortunate as to have the opportunity, you want to come to know their best books, and something of their arts,—especially their sculpture, and their architecture. You will not be any the less free and independent if you do so; for it is not really the ignorant man who thinks most effectively for himself, and the real freeman is the man to whom most doors are open.

And one thing more. Don't think of these people as "ancient." The great days of Rome are indeed eighteen and nineteen hundred years back. That might seem a long time; it is really extremely little in the history of man, and little, even, in the life of *civilized* man, as we know him, say, in Egypt. But the Romans are not intellectually so far back as the dates would make us believe. There was a long stretch of time in which the *civilized* world was in the main moving backward, until it began to return to where it had been, largely through the rediscovery of Latin and Greek literature, from which our modern literature and our modern science start. If you drop out these lost centuries, Rome isn't twice as far back as our own Shakespeare. The Romans were very like ourselves. If a man of the eleventh century, say, were to come back and lecture to us, you would find that he was living in an entirely different world from ours. If Horace or Pliny or Tacitus were to do the same thing, you would find him as modern as any of us, and that he looked at life in very much the same way. Think of these men, then, as Romans of only the other day, and of their literature and art as a part of our direct inheritance. And get all you can for yourself out of the family treasure.

PART I: PRONUNCIATION

(For Reference)

THE ALPHABET

I. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that Latin has no *w* and no *j*.

CLASSIFICATION

II. The Vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

PRONUNCIATION

III. The Vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as in the first syllable of *aha*.

e as in *let*.

i as in *pin*.

o about as in *obey*.

u as in *pull*.

ā as in *father*.

ē about as in *they*.

ī as in *machine*.

ō about as in *no*.

ū as in *rude*.

y and *ȳ* (rare, not occurring in this book)
like French short and long *u*.

IV. The Diphthongs (two-vowel sounds) are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.

au like *ou* in *out*.

oe like *oi* in *coin*.

ei like *ei* in *deign*.

eu as *ē(h)-oo*, smoothly pronounced in the same breath-impulse.

ui as *oō-i*, smoothly pronounced in the same breath-impulse.

2. Consonants.—Syllables.—Quantity of Vowels

V. Most Consonants are pronounced as in English, but the following points are to be noted:

c always has the *k* sound as in *cat*, never the *s* sound as in *center*.
g always as in *get*, never as in *gem*.

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*.

s as in *hiss*, never voiced (*z*) as in *his*.

b before s and t like p. Thus *urbs* as *urps*.

x (value of *two* consonants) like *ks* as in *extra*.

n before c, g, qu has the sound of *ng* in *singing*. Before s it lost its consonantal value, the preceding vowel being lengthened and nasalized. So *trāns* = *trās* with nasal *ā*.

r rolled as in French.

i consonantal (beginning a syllable) as *y* in *yet*.

v as *w* in *wet*.

u has the same sound in *qu*, *ngu*, and in *suāvis*, *suādeō*, *suēscō*, and their compounds. Compare *quarter*, *anguish*, *persuade*.

ch, ph, th like *k*, *p*, *t*, but with added rough breath, as in *uphill*.

Double letters represent real double consonants, pronounced with separate and distinct articulation and in different syllables, as in *book-case*, *hop-pole*, *well-laid*. So *sic-cus*, *op-pō-nō*, *il-le*.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

VI. A Latin word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The division is as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel. Thus *do-mi-na*. It does not add appreciably to the time taken in pronouncing the vowel of its syllable.

2. A consonant followed by l or r goes with the l or r. Similarly q, g, and s go with u in the combinations given under u in V. Thus *du-plex*, *a-grī*, *pa-tris*, *a-li-qua*, *per-suā-de-ō*.

3. In all other cases a consonant followed by another goes in the same syllable with the preceding vowel. Thus *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *mag-nus*, *cas-tra*, *sānc-tus*.

a. A consonant thus blocked by another may be called *obstructed*.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

VII. Vowels are long or short according to the length of time taken in pronouncing them. Long vowels are shown thus: *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū*. Unmarked vowels are short.

a. The difference between a long vowel and a short one is a real difference in sound. Thus the difference between Latin *i* and *ī* is as great as between *fit* and *feet* in English.

b. A Latin long vowel (similarly a diphthong) takes about twice as much time in pronouncing as a short vowel.

General Facts of Quantity

VIII. 1. A vowel is long before *ns*, *nf*, *nx*, or *nct*, as in *īnsequor*, *īnferior*, *īunxī*, *īunctus*.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel, or *h*, as in *eō*, *vehō*.

3. A vowel is short before final *m* or *t*, before *nt* and *nd* anywhere, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *r* or *l*. Thus in *amem*, *amet*, *amantis*, *amandus*, *amer*, *animal*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

IX. Syllables are long or short according to the length of time taken in pronouncing them.

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong (*two-vowel group*); for example the first syllable in *mā-ter*, *au-di-ō*.

2. A syllable is also long, even when the vowel is short, if this is followed by two consonants (except as in VI, 2). Thus in *dic-tus* the *i* is short. But the clear pronunciation of the *c* before the *t* (as clear as of the corresponding sounds in "Dick took cold") takes as much time as the pronunciation of the vowel.

3. A syllable is short if it ends in a short vowel, as in *i-ta*.

X. In Roman speech, combinations *between* words were pronounced in the same way as *within* words.

a. Thus *at amīcus* was pronounced *a-ta-mī-cus* (so that *at* was here short; compare our unconscious pronunciation of *at all* as *a-tall*), and *at quaerō* was pronounced *at-quaerō* (so that *at* was here long, just as in the single word *at-que*).

ACCENT

XI. 1. In words of two syllables the accent is upon the penult (syllable before the last). Thus: *māgis*, *tégō*.

2. In words of more than two syllables the accent is upon the penult if this is long, otherwise on the antepenult (syllable *before* the penult). Thus *a-mī'-cus*, *ma-gis-ter*, but *vá-li-dus*.

PART II: LEARNING TO READ

LESSON I

PRINCIPLES

1. Specimen Sentence:

Serva cēnam parat, *the servant prepares the dinner.*

You will see that in this sentence three different things are presented to the mind, something *acting* (**serva**, *the servant*), something *acted upon* (**cēnam**, *the dinner*), and an *act* (**parat**, *prepares*).

2. Specimen Sentence:

Domina servam laudat, *the mistress praises the servant.*

Here again three things are presented to the mind, something *acting* (**domina**, *the mistress*), something *acted upon* (**servam**, *the servant*), and an *act* (**laudat**, *praises*).

3. If you compare the two sentences, you see that words end differently, according as they represent that which acts, or that which is acted upon. Thus in the first sentence the servant *acts*, and the ending is **-a** (**serva**); while in the second the servant is *acted upon*, and the ending is **-am** (**servam**).

4. In both sentences, there is a word that expresses an act (**parat**, **laudat**), and it ends in the same way, namely in **-at**.

5. Notice that the Latin order differs from the English, putting the word for an *act* last.

6. Latin has no article ("the" or "a"). Thus **cēna** may correspond, according to the rest of the sentence, to "dinner," "a dinner," or "*the dinner*."

7. Direction. In learning the Latin words in the Vocabularies, be sure that you *pronounce them rightly in your mind*, making the long sounds long, and the short short, and making the consonants full and clear. Then, when you have occasion to *write* the Latin words, you have merely to write them as they sound in your memory.

8.

VOCABULARY

(Commit these words to memory, so that you can at once give the English for the Latin, and the Latin for the English.)

<i>amīca</i> , friend (used only of a woman or girl).	<i>culpat</i> , blames, censures.
<i>cēna</i> , dinner.	<i>laudat</i> , praises.
<i>domina</i> , mistress.	<i>parat</i> , prepares, gets.
<i>serva</i> , servant or slave (used only of a woman or girl).	<i>et</i> , and.

9.

READING MATTER

(Before translating a sentence, make out its meaning, according to what you have learned above of the force of the endings in *-a*, *-am*, and *-at*. Then translate it into English.)

1. *Domina cēnam laudat.*
2. *Serva cēnam parat, et domina servam laudat.*
3. *Amīca cēnam laudat.*
4. *Domina cēnam laudat et servam.*
5. *Domina servam culpat, serva dominam.¹*

10.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

(Write these sentences in Latin, remembering what you have learned about the way of expressing the person *acting*, the person *acted upon*, and the *act*, and also the order in which these are put. In writing, indicate how you pronounce each word. Thus, if you pronounce *cēna*, don't write *cena*.)

1. The servant praises the mistress.
2. The mistress blames the servant.
3. The friend praises the dinner, the mistress the servant.¹
4. The friend praises the dinner and the servant.

¹ Words easily understood can be omitted. What is omitted here?

LESSON II

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

11. Specimen Sentences:

Domina bona cēnam laudat, *the good mistress praises the dinner.*

Domina cēnam bonam laudat, *the mistress praises the good dinner.*

12. Here we have words ending alike,—for instance, **domina** and **bona** in the first example,—but evidently of different natures. **Bona** expresses a *quality* (tells of *what kind*). Such words are called *Adjectives*. Words like **domina**, **cēna**, etc., are *names* of persons or things. Such words are called *Nouns*.

13. You can tell which of two Nouns an Adjective goes with by the ending of that Adjective. Thus if you have **domina bona servam**, it is of course the **domina** of whom **bona** is said (“good mistress”); if you have **domina bonam servam**, it is the **servam** of whom **bonam** is said (“good servant”). This going-together of one word with another is called *Agreement*.

14. Words expressing acts or states, for example **laudat**, are called *Verbs*. Words like **et**, which join others together, are called *Conjunctions*.

15. Varying forms of a given noun, adjective, etc. (as **serva servam**, **bona bonam**) are called *Cases*. The form in **-a** used above is called *Nominative*, the one in **-am** *Accusative*.

a. Look now at the sentences you have had, and see what is the case which represents a person or thing as *acting*, and what the one which represents a person or thing *acted upon*.

b. The Nominative in Latin corresponds to the Nominative in English Grammar. The Accusative corresponds to the Objective case in English Grammar.

16. A word that qualifies or limits another on which it depends is said to *modify* that word, and is called a *modifier*.

Thus in the phrase¹ "good mistress" the word "good" modifies the word "mistress;" and in the statement "praises the servant," the word "servant" modifies the verb "praises."

17.

VOCABULARY

NOUN:

rēgīna, *queen*.

VERB:

amat, *loves, likes*.

ADJECTIVES:

bona, *good*.

mala, *bad*.

dūra, *hard, stern, harsh*.

CONJUNCTION:

et . . . et . . . i. e.,² et doubled,
both . . . and . . .

18.

READING MATTER

(In sentences 1 to 3 the order is the normal³ one. In 4, bona is made emphatic by its position, and in 5 the whole phrase bonam servam is made emphatic in the same way. See if you can express this emphasis in your translation by position or by stress of voice.)

1. Rēgīna dominam bonam laudat.
2. Domina servam malam culpat.
3. Sērva bona dominam dūram culpat.
4. Bona serva dominam amat.
5. Bonam servam domina et laudat et amat.

¹ A Phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A more exact definition will be given later (148, 2).

² The letters i. e. stand for the Latin words id est, meaning *that is*.

³ I. e., the regular one, where no special emphasis is to be given.

NORMAL ORDER AND EMPHATIC ORDER

19. From the above sentences you may make out the following rules¹ of order, to guide you in writing, and help you in reading:

1. *The normal order in a Latin sentence is:*

Subject, with its modifiers modifiers of verb, with verb

Thus: **Serva** **bona** **dominam dūram** **culpat**

2. *The Adjective normally follows its noun.*

Thus: **Serva bona**, a good servant (no special emphasis).

3. *A word or phrase may be put out of its normal position to give it emphasis.*

Thus: **Bona serva**, a GOOD servant.

Bonam servam domina et laudat et amat, a GOOD servant
the mistress both praises and loves.

a. Remember, then, that Latin expresses by position what in English we generally have to express by stress of voice.

20.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The harsh mistress blames the servant.
2. The queen blames the harsh mistress.
3. The queen blames both the harsh mistress and the bad servant.
4. The queen both praises and loves a *good*² mistress.
5. A *good*² mistress both praises and loves a good servant.

¹A "rule" is a brief statement of usage, summing up what you have learned.

²Be sure to express the emphasis by your order.



DISHES AND SPOONS FROM POMPEII (SILVER)

LESSON III

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

21. Specimen Sentences:

1. *Domina bona est, the mistress is good.*

2. *Serva bona est, the servant is good.*

3. *Serva coqua est, the servant is a cook.*

a. The verbs which we have had before have expressed *action*. We have now a verb, *est*, of a new kind, expressing *state*.

22. Verbs *say* ("predicate") something about a person or thing. That of which something is said is called the *Subject* (as "Julia" in "Julia cooks"). That which is said ("predicated") is called the *Predicate* (as "cooks").

23. The verbs we have thus far had are called *Finite* (the meaning of this word will be explained later). The subject with every one of them (that which acts or is) has been in the Nominative. We can, then, lay down the rule that:

24. *The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative.*

25. We have now seen two ways of making an adjective go with a noun:

1. In the first way, the adjective was directly attached to the noun, as in *domina bona cēnam laudat, the good mistress praises the dinner*. So attached, the adjective is called *Attributive*.

2. In the second way, seen in the specimen sentences of this Lesson, the adjective *is a part* of that which is *predicated*, as in *domina bona est, the mistress is good* (here "good" is just as much asserted of the mistress as "is"). Thus used, an adjective is called a *Predicate Adjective*.

26. A *noun* may, in the same way, be a part of the predicate, and is then called a *Predicate Noun*, as *coqua*, *cook*, in *serva coqua est*, *the servant is a cook*.

a. Since the predicate noun or adjective is said of the subject, you will of course expect it to *agree* with the subject.

27.

VOCABULARY

ADJECTIVE:

benigna, *good-natured*,
kind.

VERBS:

est, *is*.
vocat, *calls*.

NOUNS:

coqua, *cook*.
Iūlia, *Julia*.

28.

READING MATTER

1. *Serva cēnam parat. Cēna bona est.*
2. *Iūlia coqua bona est.*¹
3. *Bona coqua Iūlia est.*¹
4. *Domina dūra coquam vocat.*
5. *Domina dūra est, serva mala.*
6. *Domina benigna est, serva bona.*

29.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The dinner is bad.
2. The cook is bad.
3. The stern mistress blames the cook.
4. Julia is a bad cook.
5. Julia is a *bad* cook (or, a *bad* cook Julia is).
6. The kind queen calls the cook, and praises the good dinner.

¹ What is the difference in meaning between sentences 2 and 3?



BRONZE COOKING-UTENSILS
FROM POMPEII

LESSON IV

DEFINITIONS

30. A noun that denotes a particular person, place, or thing, is called a *Proper Noun*. Thus *Iūlia, Julia*.

31. A noun that denotes *any* person or thing of a class is called a *Common Noun*. Thus *serva, servant*.

a. A noun that denotes a number of persons or things taken together is called a *Collective Noun*. Thus *turba, crowd*.

32. Instead of nouns, we often use other words to denote persons or things. Thus instead of saying "I saw John this morning. John was looking well," we say "I saw John this morning. He was looking well." Words like *he, they, you, I, this, who*, etc., because they stand instead of nouns, are called *Pronouns*.

33. Some of these pronouns clearly tell us to which of the possible kinds of persons they refer, namely the person speaking (*I*, called the first person), the person spoken to (*you*, called the second person), or the person spoken of (*he, she, it*, called the third person). They are therefore called *Personal Pronouns*.

34. Corresponding words like *my, your, his, her*, which indicate persons as possessing, are called *Possessive Adjectives*.¹

a. Possessive adjectives have the same position as other adjectives. That is, they normally follow their nouns. Thus:

*serva mea bona est, my servant is good, but
mea serva bona est, MY servant is good.*

¹ Often called Possessive Pronouns. But they are not really pronouns.

35. In Latin, personal pronouns and possessive adjectives are freely omitted, when the meaning is clear without them. Thus after the question, *serva bona est?* *is the servant good?* the answer *she is good* would be expressed simply by *bona est*.

36. A word that modifies the meaning of a verb is called an *Adverb*; but adverbs may also modify adjectives or other adverbs. Thus:

He does it *willingly* (modifying a verb).

He does it *very* willingly (modifying another adverb).

He is *very* willing, or, He is *not* willing (modifying an adjective).

37. Notice the position of the Latin Adverb in the following sentences (*semper* means *always* and *saepe* *often*):

Domina servam semper culpat, the mistress always blames the servant.

Serva dominam saepe culpat, the servant often blames the mistress.

From these we may lay down the rule that:

38. *Adverbs normally precede the words which they modify.*

a. But of course an adverb, like any other word, may be put out of its normal position to give it emphasis.

39.

VOCABULARY

PERSONAL PRONOUNS:

mē, *me*. Accusative.

tē, *thee*, *you* (in speaking to a single person). Accusative.

ADVERBS:

nōn, *not*.

saepe, *often*.

semper, *always*.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES:

mea, *my*, *mine*.

tua, *thy*, *thine*, *your*, *yours* (in speaking to a single person).

CONJUNCTION:

sed, *but*.

NOUN:

turba, *crowd*, *mob*.

40.

READING MATTER

1. Iūlia coqua mea est. Bona¹ coqua Iūlia est.
2. Coqua mea bona cēnam parat;² et cēnam semper parat bonam.¹
3. Mea coqua cēnam parat; sed malam saepe parat cēnam.
4. Coqua tua bona est? (Answer) Mala est.
5. Rēgīna mē amat, nōn tē.
6. Rēgīna benigna est. Amat et tē et mē.
7. Rēgīna tē vocat.
8. Rēgīna turbam³ nōn amat.

41.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. My cook is good, yours bad.
2. Is Julia your cook? (Answer) Julia is my cook. (Question) Is she a good cook? (Answer) She loves a good dinner, but she is a bad cook.
3. The queen is a good friend.
4. A *good* friend the queen is!
5. The queen loves *you*, not *me*. She always praises you.
6. The queen *often* praises you.
7. A mob calls you.

¹What is the effect of the order?²Translate by *is getting*.³Does this probably mean *the* mob, or *a* mob?

BRONZE PITCHERS AND DRINKING-HORN FROM POMPEII

LESSON V

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

42. Specimen Sentences:

Coqua cēnam parat, *the cook gets dinner, or the cook is getting dinner, or the cook does get dinner.*

Coqua cēnam parat? *is the cook getting dinner? or does the cook get dinner?*

a. Notice that the single verb **parat** is used in Latin where English uses three distinct forms, *gets, is getting, does get*. You must, therefore, translate always according to what is the most probable force in the given place. And in translating English into Latin, you must always use the one Latin form.

43. Specimen Sentences:

Iulia coqua cēnam parat, *Julia, the cook, is getting dinner.*

Domina Iuliam coquam laudat, *the mistress praises Julia, the cook.*

a. In these sentences, you see that the word **coqua** is put alongside of **Iulia**, and **coquam** alongside of **Iuliam**, to tell us something more particularly about **Iulia** or **Iuliam**. Such a *putting-alongside* is called *Apposition*, and the word so attached to another is called an *Appositive*.

b. An appositive must, of course, show by its form with what word it goes. Hence:

44. *An Appositive Noun agrees in case with the Noun or Pronoun to which it belongs.*

45. There is, in the forms which we are now studying, another case, precisely like the Nominative, named the *Vocative* (from *vocat, calls*), because used in speaking to (addressing) a person. Thus:

Cēna, coqua, parāta est? *Cook, is dinner ready?*

a. A Vocative normally stands after one or more words.

46. Certain words loosely thrown into the sentence ("interjected") are called *Interjections*. Thus *ō*, English *O* or *Oh*.

47.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS:

culīna, *kitchen*.

culpa (noun corresponding to the verb **culpat**), *fault, blame*.

filia, *daughter*.

villa, *villa*.

ADJECTIVES:

magna, *great, large, big*.

parva, *small, little*.

parāta (connected with the verb **parat**), *prepared, ready*.

pulchra, *beautiful*.

splendida, *splendid*.

VERB:

exspectat, *expects, awaits, waits for*.¹

ADVERB:

cūr, *why*.

48.

READING MATTER

1. Domina cēnam exspectat. Coquam vocat.

2. (The mistress says to the cook) Cēna² cūr nōn parāta est? (The cook answers) Est, domina, parāta.

3. (The mistress says) Cēna tua, coqua, saepe mala est. (Answer) Culpā, domina, nōn mea est. (Mistress) Cūr nōn tua est? (Answer) Culīna parva et mala est.

4. (The cook says) Domina cūr mē semper culpat?

5. (A dialogue of mothers) Filia tua pulchra est. (Answer) Filia mea pulchra sed dūra est. Tua et pulchra est et benigna.

6. Villa tua, amīca mea; magna et splendida est.

7. Turba magna est!

¹ "Waits for" is really a single idea, just as "awaits" is.

² The thing of most consequence is put first to *arrest the attention*, as if we should say "the dinner now: why isn't it ready?"

EMPHATIC ORDER, CONTINUED

49. Evidently the order in Latin is very nearly free. Let us see, then, how, in a sentence of several words, this freedom may be employed to give *emphasis*.

1. In the second sentence in 48 above, the *dinner* was the important thing. Notice how this was expressed by putting *cēna* at the *head* of the sentence.

2. In the second sentence of 40 (turn back), the *goodness* of the dinner was the important thing. Notice how this was expressed by putting *bonam* at the *end* of the sentence.

From these instances we may see that:

50. *The most emphatic places in a Latin sentence; or group of words, are the first and the last.*

a. This is just what we should expect in any language in which the order was free. For, evidently, emphasis may be obtained *either* by putting an important thing before the hearer immediately, or by holding it back for a time, to stimulate his curiosity, or to surprise him with an added idea (principle of *Suspense*).

Apply these principles in your own writing.

51.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Mistress, the dinner is served.¹

2. Your servant, my daughter, is a good cook. (Answer) The dinner is *often* good, (but²) not always.

3. Julia, the cook, is preparing dinner. But my mistress does not expect a *good* (one²). (Question) Why does she not expect a good (one)? (Answer) The kitchen is bad, and the cook is bad.

4. Julia, the dinner is always bad. The fault is yours.

5. Your villa is splendid. (Answer) My villa is *splendid*, but it is not *beautiful*. *Your* villa is small, but beautiful.

6. A big mob calls (for) you.

¹ Use the word for "prepared," "ready."

² Omit in translating, as unnecessary. In general, words in parentheses () are not to be translated.

LESSON VI

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

52. Specimen Sentence:

Villa rēgīnae splendida est, the villa of the queen (or the queen's villa) is splendid.

a. The case of *rēgīnae* is called the *Genitive*. It corresponds to our English Possessive case, or the equivalent phrase with *of*. As you see in this example,

53. *The Genitive may express that to which something belongs (Genitive of Possession). And*

a. A Genitive normally follows its noun.

54. There is, in the set of forms with which we have begun, another case, called the *Dative*, identical in form with the Genitive (thus *rēgīnae*), but with an entirely different meaning, as in:

Filia mea rēgīnae cēnam dat, my daughter is giving a dinner to the queen (or for the queen). Rēgīnae is here Dative.

Rēgīna filiae meae benigna est, the queen is kind to my daughter.

Filiae is here Dative.

As you see in these examples,

a. The Dative normally precedes the word or words which it modifies.

55. The Dative expresses *Figurative Direction*¹ of various kinds. Hence it may be called the "*to, toward, or for case.*"

¹That is, not literal direction in space, but the direction in which an act, a quality, etc., operates,—that *toward which* it goes out.

Notice that, in English, literal direction and figurative direction are expressed in one and the same way. Compare "go to the city" and "be kind to me" (the same word "to" in both). We shall see later that Latin has a different way for expressing literal direction (78, *b*).

a. Compare the following, in which the English word "to," "toward," or "for," expresses this same idea of figurative direction:

He gives a letter to me (direction taken by an *Act*).

This is pleasant to (or for) me (direction taken by a *Quality*. The pleasantness goes out *toward me*).

He is opposed to me (direction taken by an *Attitude*).

He is unfriendly toward me (direction taken by an *Attitude*).

He is near to me (direction taken by a *Relation*).

56.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS:

epistula, epistle; letter.

silva, wood, forest.

PRONOUNS:

mihi, (to or for) me; Dative.

tibi, (to or for) you; Dative.

VERBS:

cēnat (verb corresponding to the noun *cēna*), *dines*.

dat, gives.

ADVERB:

tam, so.

ADJECTIVES:

adversa, adverse, opposed.

(Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)

grāta, gratifying, pleasing, agreeable. (Word of Quality, taking Dat.)

inimīca, unfriendly, hostile.

(Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)

īrāta, angry. (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)

propinqua, near. (Word of Relation, taking Dat.)

57.

READING MATTER

Caution.—When you meet a doubtful form, e. g.,¹ the Genitive-or-Dative form in *-ae*, or the Nominative-or-Vocative form in *-a*, you must carefully hold your judgment in suspense until all the evidence has come in. *Do not jump at the first possibility that comes into your mind.*

1. *Villa rēgīnae silvae magnae propinqua est.*
2. *Villa mea parva mihi grāta est.*
3. *Serva dominae epistulam dat.*
4. *Domina coquae cūr īrāta² est?* (Answer) *Cēna mala est.*
5. *Rēgīna cēnat. Tē, filia mea, exspectat.*
6. *Rēgīna, filia mea, tē nōn amat. Tibi semper adversa est.*
7. *Rēgīna mihi cūr tam inimīca est?*

¹ This stands for *exemplī grātiā*, meaning *for example*.

² *Angry toward the cook.* But we say in English *angry at*.

58.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The queen loves the great forest.
 2. My villa is near¹ (to)² the splendid villa of the queen. But the queen is unfriendly toward me.
 3. My friend, why is the queen always so opposed to you? Why is she angry at (= toward) you?
 4. My daughter gives (to) me a letter.
 5. Your letter is pleasing to me.
 6. The mistress is dining. The dinner is good.
-

¹ A predicate noun or adjective regularly stands next to the verb, since the two together make one idea.

² In English, we omit the preposition "to" in such a combination.



IN THE RUINS OF HADRIAN'S VILLA NEAR
TIVOLI (TIBUR)

Fifteen miles from Rome

LESSON VII

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

59. The verbs which we have been using have all represented an act or state as a *fact*. Such verbs are said to be in the *Indicative Mood*. They have dealt with present time, and hence are said to be in the *Present Tense*. Thus **coqua cēnam parat**, *the cook prepares* (or *is preparing*) *dinner* (a fact, in the Present).

a. *Mood* is the expression of the way in which the act is looked at, e. g., as a *fact* (Indicative).

b. *Tense* is the expression of the idea of time through the form of the verb.

c. The *negative* (*denying* word) for the Indicative is **nōn**, *not*, as we have already seen.

60. The ending **-t**, which we have had in all our verbs, indicates the action of a person or thing *spoken of*, called the *third person*. In the same way, the ending **-ō** indicates the person *speaking* ("I"), called the *first person*. Thus **cēnam parō**, *I am preparing dinner*. The first person of **est**, (*he*) *is*, is **sum**, (*I*) *am*.

a. The endings alone are enough to indicate the person, without the use of any word for "I," "he," "it," etc. Thus **rēgīna sum** must mean "*I am queen*," not "*she is queen*," nor "*you are queen*."

61. A *Transitive Verb* is one that expresses an act immediately affecting some person or thing. The person or thing immediately affected is called the *Direct Object*. Thus **servam** is a *Direct Object* in **Anna servam laudat**, *Anna praises the servant*. We have repeatedly seen that:

62. The *Direct Object* of a *Transitive Verb* is put in the *Accusative*.

63. An *Intransitive Verb* is one that expresses an act *not* immediately affecting any person or thing, or a *state*. Thus *cēnō, I dine, sum, I am*.

a. From its nature, such a verb cannot have a Direct Object.

64. We have also seen another case depending upon a verb, as in:

Domina mihi servam laudat, the mistress praises the servant to me.

a. Here the case of *mihi* (the *to*-case, or Dative) expresses the person *indirectly* affected by the act. This is called the *Indirect Object*.

We may then lay down the rule that:

65. *The Indirect Object of a Verb is put in the Dative.*

From the above example note also that:

a. *The Indirect Object normally precedes the Direct Object.*

66. We may likewise make a *short rule* combining the other uses of the Direction-Case seen in various examples in the last Lesson. These uses are essentially one and the same. Compare the following:

Villa mihi grāta est, the villa is agreeable to me.

QUALITY of the villa, going out toward *me*. (*mihi*, Dative)

Rēgīna mihi adversa est, the queen is opposed to me.

ATTITUDE of the queen toward *me*. (*mihi*, Dative)

Villa silvae propinqua est, the villa is near (to) the wood.

RELATION of the villa to the wood. (*silvae*, Dative)

We see, then, that:

67. *The Dative is used to express that toward which a Quality, Attitude, or Relation is directed.*

68.

READING MATTER

1. *Filiam tuam, rēgīna mēa, laudō. Bona est et benigna.*

2. *Amō rēgīnae filiam; sed rēgīnae nōn grāta sum. Mihi dūra est.*

3. *Rēgīna mihi semper benigna est. Tibi cūr tam inimica est?*

4. Domina mea rēgīnae cēnam magnam dat.
5. (The mistress says) Rēgīna, coqua, cēnam meam nōn laudat. Culpa tua est. Tibi irāta sum.
6. Villa amīcae meae silvae pulchrae propinqua est.
7. Epistula tua mihi nōn grāta est. Tibi irāta sum.

69.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Your mistress is kind to you. Mine is always angry at me.
2. Cook, I do not praise your dinner. It is (a) big (one); *good* it is not. Why is it not good? (The honest cook's answer) The fault is mine, mistress. I am not a good cook.
3. The villa of the queen's daughter is near (to) mine. It is a splendid villa.
4. I am angry¹ at the daughter of the queen. She is always opposed to me.
5. Your letter, my friend, is not agreeable to me.

¹When you are puzzled how to express a given idea, look at the Latin Reading Matter and see how it was expressed there. Thus if the "at" of "angry at" troubles you, look in the Latin sentences of section 57 for an *irāta*, and see how the idea was there expressed.



YOUNG ROMAN LADY, POR-
TRAIT BUST

From Excavations in widen-
ing the Tiber, 1880

LESSON VIII

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

70. Specimen Sentences:

Coqua ā culinā abest, *the cook is absent from the kitchen.*

Coqua cum dominā in culinā est, *the cook is with the mistress in the kitchen.*

α. In *culinā* and *dominā*, we have a new case, with the same letters as the Nominative, but *sounding* differently, having a final long *a*. This case is called the Ablative.

71. The Latin Ablative is a mixed case, being made up of the remains of three cases, which originally were entirely distinct, in form as well as in meaning: the true Ablative, or *from-case*,¹ expressing separation; the Sociative, or *with-case*, expressing association; and the Locative, or *in-case*, expressing location. It inherited the forces of all these cases, and thus expresses the *from-idea*, the *with-idea*, and the *in-idea*.

72. According to its forces, it is convenient to speak of the case as:

1. The *Separative Ablative*,² answering the question "whence?" "from what place?"

2. The *Sociative Ablative*, answering the question "with whom?" or "with what?"

3. The *Locative Ablative*, answering the question "where?"³

73. Words like *from*, *with*, *in*, which define the relation of a noun or pronoun to another word, are called *Prepositions*.

¹ The case is named from this use. The word "ablative" means "the case of taking-away."

² Or Ablative of *Separation*.

³ The word Locative is the best word to use, but not a perfect one. It should be understood as covering *exact* location only—English *in*, *on*, or *under*—but no other ideas of place.

74.

VOCABULARY

(New verbs will henceforth be given in the first person.)

PREPOSITIONS:

ADVERBS:

ā or *ab*,¹ *from, away from.* Takes Abl.
cum, with. Takes Abl.
in, in, on. Takes Abl.

hīc, in this place, here.
hodiē (on this day =), today.
ibi, there.
ubi, where.
quoque, also, too. (Postpositive, i. e., "placed after." Stands just after the word modified.)

VERBS:

absum (ab + sum), am away, am absent, am distant.
ambulō, walk.

75.

READING MATTER

1. *Iūlia hīc est?* (Ans.) *In culinā est.*
2. (Said by a servant to a caller) *Domina ā villā abest.* (Ques.)² *Ubi est?* (Ans.)² *In silvā est.* (Ques.) *Ubi silva est?* (Ans.) *Silva villae propinqua est.*
3. *Rēgina hodiē cum filiā meā cēnat.* (Ans.) *Amat rēgina filiam tuam; meae inimica est.*
4. *Ubi domina tua est?* (Ans.) *In silvā cum amicā ambulat.* *Silvam amat.* (First speaker) *Mea quoque domina silvam amat, et ibi saepe ambulat.*

76.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Where is your mistress? Is she here? (Ans.) She is in the kitchen with the cook.
2. Why is your daughter absent from the villa? (Ans.) She is dining today with the daughter of the queen.
3. My friend's villa is near a great forest, where I often walk. I love the forest.
4. My daughter also loves the forest, and often walks there.

¹ *Ab* before vowels and *h*, *ā* before consonants. But before most consonants *ab* may also be used.

² We will now use the abbreviations *Ques.* and *Ans.* for *Question* and *Answer*.

LESSON IX

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

77.

VOCABULARY

PREPOSITIONS:

VERB:

ad, at, (near) *by*; with verbs of motion, *to, toward*. Takes Acc.

habito, inhabit, dwell, live.

ante, before, in-front-of. Takes Acc.

ADVERB:

post, behind, after. Takes Acc.

nunc, now.

trans, across, beyond. Takes Acc.

per, through. Takes Acc.

NOUN:

in (same word as before), *into*, when used with Accusative.

casa, cottage, cabin.

CASE USES AND SPECIMEN SENTENCES

78. Only Prepositions having a *from*, *with*, or *in* force take the Ablative. You will find that Prepositions expressing *other* space-relations¹ take the Accusative. Thus:

silva post villam est, the wood is behind the villa.

villa ante silvam est, the villa is before (in-front-of) the wood.

villa ad silvam est, the villa is by the wood.

ad silvam ambulat, she walks to the wood.

in silvam ambulat, she walks into the wood.

But *in silvā ambulat, she walks in the wood.*

Notice that, in accordance with the principle above, and the one given in 72, 3:

a. The Accusative is used with *in* to express the Place To Which something moves, the Ablative to express the Place In Which something is or is done.

b. Literal Direction in Space is thus expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition (e.g., *ad* or *in*). The Dative expresses *Figurative Direction* only.

c. Only the Accusative and Ablative are used with Prepositions.

¹ In the real force of the *Latin* prepositions. But *our* expression, with *our* preposition, may sometimes be quite different.

THE DECLINING OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

79. We have seen all the six Latin cases, with their fundamental forces, and all the forms of the Singular number (that is, the number which indicates *one* person or thing) in the first set of case-forms, called the *First Declension*.

We shall now learn to give in order the six cases for *serva*, *servant*, then for *bona*, *good*, and then for *serva bona*, *good servant*, together (thus Nom. *serva bona*, Gen. *servae bonae*, etc.). This is called *Declining*.

80. First Declension: Singular Number

NOUN	ADJECTIVE IN AGREEMENT	ENGLISH TRANSLATION	CASE	FUNDAMENTAL CASE-MEANINGS
<i>serva</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>the good servant</i>	Nom.	Subject.
<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>of the good servant, or the good servant's</i>	Gen.	That to which something belongs.
<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>to or for the good servant</i>	Dat.	Figurative Direction.
<i>servam</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>the good servant</i>	Acc.	Space-Ideas (except from, with and in ideas), and Direct Object.
(<i>serva</i>	<i>bona</i>	(<i>O</i>) <i>good servant</i>	Voc.	Address.)
<i>servā</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>from, with, or in the good servant</i>	Abl.	<i>From, with, and in</i> Ideas.

81. We have now had all the Latin Parts of Speech, which are as in English, minus the Article,—namely: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

a. Henceforth words will be arranged in the vocabularies in alphabetical order, unless there is a special reason for bringing particular words together.

82.

READING MATTER

1. Filia tua hodiē hīc est? (Ans.) Ā villā abest. In silvā cum amīcā ambulat. (First speaker) Mea quoque filia ibi nunc ambulat.

2. Ubi Iūlia coqua est? In culinā nōn est. (Ans.) Ad casam amīcae ambulat. (Ques.) Ubi casa est? Est ad silvam? (Ans.) Trāns silvam amīca habitat. Nunc per silvam coqua ambulat.

3. Villa mea ante silvam magnam est. (Ques.) Filia tua saepe in silvā ambulat? (Ans.) Saepe ā villā ad silvam ambulat; sed in silvam nōn ambulat. Filia parvā est, silva magna.

4. Ubi amīca tua habitat? Post silvam habitat.

83.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Why is the cook absent from the kitchen? (Ques.) She isn't there? (Another servant says) Here she is.

2. A friend of the cook lives in a little cottage behind the wood.

3. Where is your daughter now? (Ans.) She is dining with the queen today. (First speaker) *My* daughter, too, is dining with the queen.

4. Where does your friend live? Does she live in-front-of the wood? (Ans.) She lives beyond the wood. (Ques.) Does she often walk into the wood? (Ans.) She often walks *through*¹ the wood to my villa.

¹ Always keep the preposition before its noun or pronoun. When, then, you want to emphasize a preposition, put the whole group into an emphatic place.



SILVER PITCHERS FOUND IN BOSCOREALE

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION (FINISHED)

84. We may now finish the First Declension by adding the Plural (that is, the number which indicates more than one person or thing). The *case-meanings* are the same.

85. Words of the First Declension are called *ā-Stems*, because their stems originally ended in *-ā-* throughout.¹

a. The stem of a word is the part which remains constant, and to which the endings are added as the word changes in inflection.

b. When the stem ends in a vowel, a change in the stem or the ending, or in both, may take place, so that sometimes neither appears as it originally was. But in such cases it is still convenient to use the word "ending" for the *apparent* ending.

86. FIRST DECLENSION: *a-Stems*

	NOUN	ADJECTIVE	
	Stem <i>servā-</i>	<i>bonā-</i>	
	SINGULAR		Endings
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>serva</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>servam</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>-am</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>serva</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>servā</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>-ā</i>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>servārum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>servās</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>-ās</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>servae</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>servīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>-īs</i>

¹In the First Declension, you can see something of the *a*-sound in almost every form. But the original *long* sound has been shortened in several places.

a. Learn to decline *serva* and *bona* separately and together.

b. You will find that, *in the Plurals of all Declensions, Nominative and Vocative are alike, and Dative and Ablative are alike.*

c. Notice, that in the First Declension, the Genitive and Dative Singular are like the Nominative and Vocative Plural. *You must be on your guard* when you meet one of these doubtful forms.

87. The Infinitive is a kind of verb-noun. It expresses the mere idea of action or being. Thus *amāre, to love*, Present Infinitive of *amō, I love*.

a. An Infinitive that completely fills out the meaning of another verb, as in *ambulāre amō, I love to walk*, is often called a Complementary Infinitive ("complementary" is from a Latin word meaning "fill out").

b. In general, the Infinitive in Latin is used in much the same way as in English, e. g., as Subject, Object, or Complement. Differences will be pointed out later.

88. The third person plural of the Present Indicative is shown by the ending *-nt*. Thus *amant, (they) love*, *sunt, (they) are*.

89.

VOCABULARY

<i>beāta, happy, blessed, fortunate.</i>	<i>rūstica, rustic, country.</i>
<i>cūra, care, anxiety.</i>	<i>sine, Prep., without. Takes Separative Ablative.</i>
<i>fēmina, woman.</i>	
<i>multa, much. In Plural, many.</i>	<i>tranquilla, tranquil.</i>
<i>pecūnia, money.</i>	<i>vīta, life.</i>

90.

READING MATTER

1. *Epistulās ab amicīs nunc expectō.*
2. *Amō amicās meās: mē amant amīcae meae.*
3. *Amīcae meae filiās amō. Et pulchrae et bonae sunt.*
4. *Amō per silvās cum amicīs meis ambulāre. (Ans.) Amīcae quoque meae amant in silvīs ambulāre.*

5. Sunt¹ pulchrae villae et ad silvā et trāns silvā.

6. Vītā tranquillā, amīcae meae, sine multā pecūniā et multīs cūrīs amō. Beāta est vīta rūstica.

7. Multīs fēminīs vīta splendida grāta est: mihi grāta est vīta tranquilla. Cūra multārum servārum mihi nōn grāta est.

91.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The mistresses of good servants are happy.

2. Much money gives many anxieties. (Ans.) But money is agreeable.

3. There are many cottages by the forest. (Ans.) There are many *beyond* the forest too.

4. Many women love a tranquil country life without care.

5. A tranquil country life is agreeable to me, and to my friends also.

6. My friends live by a forest.

7. My daughters love to walk with friends through forests.

8. I often walk *to* the forest, not often *into* the forest.

9. Dinner is ready, my daughters. Where are my friends?

¹ *There are.* The English "there" is merely "expletive" (i. e., a "filling-out" word). *Sunt* is not emphatic, but, like "there," is put first in order that the more important words may be held up (Suspense).



FARMER AND WOOD

Ruins of ancient Aqueduct in distance

LESSON XI

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

92. There are four regular types of Verb Inflection, known as the *Four Conjugations*. They are distinguished by the vowel which ends the stem in the Present ("characteristic vowel"). This is most conveniently seen in the Present Infinitive. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM ENDS IN
I	amō	amā-re, to love	-ā- (amā-)
II	moneō	monē-re, to warn	-ē- (monē-)
III	tegō	tege-re, to cover	-e- (tege-)
IV	audio	audī-re, to hear	-ī- (audī-)

93. A few verbs, called *Irregular*, are inflected in a different way. Thus *sum*, *am*, Infinitive, *esse*, to be.

94. We have already had half of the group of First Conjugation forms with which we began (namely *amō*, *amat*, *amant*). The whole group will now be given, together with the forms for *sum*.

95.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION

IRREGULAR

Stem amā-

Personal Endings

1st Pers. Sing.	amō, I love	-ō or -m	sum, I am
2d " "	amās, you love or thou lovest	-s	es, you are or thou art
3d " "	amat, he (she, it) loves	-t	est, he (she, it) is
1st Pers. Pl.	amāmus, we love	-mus	sumus, we are
2d " "	amātis, you love	-tis	estis, you are
3d " "	amant, they love	-nt	sunt, they are

a. Amō originally was ama-ō (the -ā- being shortened before a vowel). But the a and ō ran together and the a disappeared.

b. The forms of these verbs show the Number and Person of the Subject. When, then, the Subject is expressed, the verb will *agree* with it in Number and Person.

96.

VOCABULARY

iūsta, *just.*

iuvō, *help.*

laeta, *joyous, glad, happy.*

ō, *O, or Oh* (often used in address, though never necessary).

quia, *Conj., because.*

97.

READING MATTER

1. Dominam tuam amās? (Ans.) Dominam meam amō. Servīs semper benigna est.

2. Dominam, ō servae, cūr semper laudātis? (Ans.) Dominam laudāmus, quia semper iūsta et benigna est.

3. Multae fēminae pecūniam cum cūrīs amant, nōn multae vitam rūsticam tranquillam et beātam.

4. Cūr, filiae meae, tam laetae estis? (Ans.) Laetae sumus quia amīcās expectāmus.

5. (The mother calls) Ubi es, filia meā? (The daughter) Hīc sum. (The mother) Ubi "hīc" est? (The daughter) In culinā sum. (The mother) Cūr in culinā es? (The daughter) Coquam iuvō. Cēnam parāmus.

6. Filiārum tuārum amīcae tē quoque amant. Beāta es.

98.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Do you (said to one person) often walk in the forest? (Ans.) I *love* to walk in the forest, because I am always happy there.

2. Where are you, my friends (use ō for practice)? (Ans.) We are waiting-for you and your daughter in-front-of (= before) the villa. Is she ready?

3. I give a-great-deal-of (= much) money to my servants.

4. The queen loves a just mistress.

5. I love to dine with friends.

6. The dinners of *my* friends are often splendid, but not always good.

7. I love to help the cook in the kitchen.

LESSON XII

FIRST CONJUGATION (Repeated) AND SECOND CONJUGATION

99.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
Stem <i>amā-</i>		Stem <i>monē-</i>	Personal Endings
1st Sing.	<i>amō, I love</i>	<i>moneō, I warn</i>	-ō (or -m ¹)
2d	<i>amās, you love</i>	<i>monēs, you warn</i>	-s
3d	<i>amat, he (she, it) loves</i>	<i>monet, he (she, it) warns</i>	-t
1st Pl.	<i>amāmus, we love</i>	<i>monēmus, we warn</i>	-mus
2d	<i>amātis, you love</i>	<i>monētis, you warn</i>	-tis
3d	<i>amant, they love</i>	<i>monent, they warn</i>	-nt

a. Given the differing stems (-ā- and -ē-), the First and Second Conjugations are formed in precisely the same way in the Present Indicative, except that the First Conjugation has lost the final -ā- of the Stem in the first person singular (originally *ama-ō*, like *moneō*).

b. You will now need to learn the following Rules, which will explain various changes to be seen here or later:

100. 1. *A vowel is regularly short before another vowel or h.*

a. Thus *ama-ō* (becoming *amō*), not *amā-ō*, and *mone-ō*, not *monē-ō*.

2. *Every originally long vowel was regularly shortened before final m or t, before nt and nd anywhere, and, except in monosyllables,² before final r or l.*

a. Thus *amā-t* and *amā-nt* became *ama-t* and *ama-nt*, and *monē-t* and *monē-nt* became *mone-t* and *mone-nt*.

¹ We have seen the ending -m in the verb *sum, am*.

² I. e., words of one syllable.

101. Certain Latin verbs express Quality, Attitude, or Relation, just as adjectives do, and hence are followed¹ by a Dative of Figurative Direction (general rule in 67).

a. Thus, just as one says *vīta rŭstica mihi grāta est*, *country life is agreeable to me*, so one says *vīta rŭstica mihi placet*, *country life is pleasing to me* (or *country life pleases me*).

102.

VOCABULARY

causa, *cause, reason.*

ferē, Adv., *generally; (then) about, almost.*

habeō, *have; hold; regard.*

moneō, *admonish, warn, chide, instruct.*

placeō, *am pleasing, please.*

(Word of Quality, taking Dat.)

103.

READING MATTER

1. Nunc, coqua, parāta sum tē iuvāre.

2. Fīliās tuās saepe monēs? (Ans.) Fīliās meās nōn saepe moneō, quia mihi ferē semper placent.

3. Domina mea mē saepe sine causā monet. Iūsta nōn est.

4. Pecūniam, amīcae meae, nōn multam habētis. Cūr tam laetae estis? (Ans.) Pecūniam nōn habēmus multam; sed multās nōn habēmus cūrās.

5. Vīta rŭstica tibi grāta est? (Ans.) Vīta rŭstica mihi placet. Tranquillam amō vītam.

104.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I am happy. My country villa pleases (= is pleasing to) me.

2. Your life pleases you, mine (pleases) me.

3. We love to help the cook, because she is always kind.

4. Do we please you? (The mother answers) You do please me almost always. I have *good* daughters.

5. I do not please my mistress. She is generally harsh to me.

6. My friends often chide me without reason. They are not just.

¹ "Followed by" does not refer to the order of the sentence, but only to the effect of one word upon another.

LESSON XIII

GRAMMATICAL GENDER¹

105. Nouns of the First Declension are feminine, except a few which denote males. These are masculine.

106. In the Second Declension, to which we now pass, nouns in **-um** are neuter. Most others are masculine.

a. In this Declension, the stem originally ended in **-o-**.

b. The Declension of Adjectives closely follows that of Nouns.

107. SECOND DECLENSION: *o*-Stems, in **-us** and **-um**

	servus, <i>slave, M.²</i>	bonus, <i>good.</i>	dōnum, <i>gift, N.²</i>	bonum <i>good.</i>		
<i>Stem</i>	servo-	bono-	dōno-	bono-	<i>Endings</i>	
					M. and F. ² N.	
SINGULAR						
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	bonus	dōnum	bonum	-us	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	bonī	dōnī	bonī	-ī	
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	bonō	dōnō	bonō	-ō	
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	bonum	dōnum	bonum	-um	
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	bone	dōnum	bonum	-e	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	bonō	dōnō	bonō	-ō	
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>	servī	bonī	dōna	bona	-ī	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	bonōrum	dōnōrum	bonōrum	-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	bonīs	dōnīs	bonīs	-īs	
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	bonōs	dōna	bona	-ōs	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	servī	bonī	dōna	bona	-ī	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	bonīs	dōnīs	bonīs	-īs	

a. It is only in the Masc. and Fem. Sing. of Second Declension words in **-us** that the Voc. regularly differs from the Nom.

b. Learn to decline **servus** and **bonus** separately and together, and **dōnum** and **bonum** separately and together.

¹ Gender is in Latin quite as much a matter of termination and of relationship to other words as of sex.

² M. means masculine, F. feminine, and N. neuter.

108.

VOCABULARY

agricola (Masculine), *farmer*.amicus, (man or boy) *friend*.bene, Adv. (cf.¹ bonus), *well*.dominus, *master*.dōnum, *gift, present*.Gallus, *a Gaul*. Also a man's
name, *Gallus*.hortus, *garden*.labōrō, *labor, work*.male, Adv. (cf. malus), *badly*.Mārcus, *Mark*, a name.numquam, Adv., *never*.satis, Adv. and Noun, *sufficiently*,
enough.servus, (man) *servant* or (man)
slave.

109.

READING MATTER

1. Mihi placet in hortō cum agricolā labōrāre.

2. Casa Gallī servī parva sed satis magna est. (Ans.) Casae
servōrum parvae ferē sunt.3. Tibi, Galle, dominus tuus saepe irātus est. (Ans.) Bonus
sum servus, et bene ferē labōrō. Dominō cūr numquam placeō?
Mē semper sine causā monet.4. Bonōs, Mārce, habēs servōs. Beātus es. Meī servī male
labōrant.

5. Dōnum tuum, amīce, mihi placet. Bonus es.

6. Servīs meis dōna parva saepe dō. Satis bonī servī sunt.
(Ans.) Bonum habent dominum.

110.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Where is Gallus? (Ans.) He is with the farmer in the
garden.2. Gallus, your master's garden is small. (Ans.) It is large
enough.3. Mark, why do you chide your slaves without reason? (Ans.)
I chide my slaves because they often work badly.

4. Why do you never give little presents to your slaves?

5. The slaves of *kind* masters are generally good.

6. I love my master, because he is always kind.

7. I love to work well, because I love to please my master.

8. Why do you chide your friend?

¹ For the Latin *cōnfer*, meaning *compare*.

LESSON XIV

SECOND DECLENSION (Cont'd): SHORTENED ro-STEMS

111. The Second Declension includes a number of Nouns and Adjectives, called *ro-* and *rā-*Stems, in which the Nominative ending has been shortened.¹ Thus:

	NOUNS			ADJECTIVES	
	<i>puer, boy, M.</i>	<i>ager, field, M.</i>	<i>vir, man, M.</i>	<i>miser, miserable</i>	<i>piger, lazy</i>
<i>Stems</i>	<i>puero-</i>	<i>agro-</i>	<i>viro-</i>	<i>misero-</i>	<i>pigro-</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>miser</i>	<i>piger</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>pigrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>pigrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>miserum</i>	<i>pigrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>miser</i>	<i>piger</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>pigrō</i>
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>pigrī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>pigrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>pigrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>pigrōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>pigrī</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>pigrīs</i>

a. Decline these new words separately. Then decline *puer piger* together, and *vir miser* together. Then decline *amicus miser* together (Gen. *amicī miserī*, Dat. *amicō miserō*, etc.)

b. Notice that the endings of these new words differ from those of *servus* and *bonus* only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. You have thus but one new form to learn.

¹Originally the forms were the same in *servus*, *puer*, *ager*, etc., namely Nom. *servo-s* (becoming *servus* later), *puero-s*, *agro-s*, etc. But the *ro-*stems lost the *-os* in the Nominative. Thus original *pueros* became *puer*. If in such stems the *r* immediately followed a consonant, an *e*-sound crept in. Thus original *agros* became *agr*, then *ager*.

IRREGULAR FORMS OF DECLENSIONS I AND II

112. 1. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** have the Genitive Singular in **-ī** (not **-iī**). Thus **Cornēlius**, *Cornelius*, Gen. **Cornēlī**; **ingenium**, *intellect*, Gen. **ingenī**.

2. Nouns in **-ius** form the Vocative in **-ī**. Thus **Cornēlius**, *Cornelius*, Voc. **Cornēlī**; **filius**, *son*, Voc. **filī**.

a. These contracted Genitives and Vocatives in **-ī** have the accent on the penult, even if it is short. Thus **ingēnī**.

b. **Meus**, *mine*, has the irregular Voc. Sing. Masculine **mī**.

113. **Fīlia**, *daughter*, has the form **filiābus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural, to avoid confusion with **filiīs**, *sons*, from **filius**.

114.

VOCABULARY

(From here on, the Genitive of every noun will be given, together with the Gender, indicated by M., F., or N., and the Declension; also, for adjectives, the three Nominatives, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.)

ager, agrī, M. 2, *land, field*.

Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2, *Cornelius*, a name.

discipulus, -ī, M. 2, *pupil, school-boy*.

fāma, -ae, F. 1, *fame, report, reputation*.

filius, filī, M. 2, *son*.

ingenium, ingēnī, N. 2, *intellect, ability*.

magister, -trī, M. 2, *master* (= teacher).

miser, misera, miserum, miserabile, unhappy.

piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy.

impiger, impigra, impigrum (from **in**, meaning not, + **piger, lazy**), *energetic, industrious*.

puella, -ae, F. 1, *girl*.

puer, -ī, M. 2, *boy*.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.

validus, -a, -um, strong.

vir, virī, M. 2, *man*.

115.

READING MATTER

1. **Filiīs meīs grātum¹ est in hortō et agrīs cum agricolīs labōrāre, filiābus meīs placet coquam in culinā iuvāre.**

2. **Dominus servīs impigrīs dōna multa dat.**

¹Translate: *It is agreeable*, etc. This "it" is merely an "expletive."—Notice that an adjective (as **grātum**) agreeing with an infinitive (as **labōrāre**) is neuter.

3. Tē, Galle, dominus numquam laudat. Male labōrās.

4. Tē, puer piger, magister saepe monet. Nōn bene labōrās.

5. Cornēlī, fili mī, satis impiger nōn es. Nōn amō puerum pigrum.

6. Fāma ingenī Cornēlī nōn magna est. Bonus nōn est discipulus.

7. Magister puerōrum pigrōrum et puellārum pigrārum miser est.

8. Vir validus et impiger es. Amīcī tuī tē et laudant et amant.

9. Iūlia nōn pulchra est, sed bene labōrat. Bona est coqua.

10. Filiī tuī, amīce mī, pulchrī sunt, fīliae tuae pulchrae.

116.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. My son has good ability. Why does he work badly? Does he like a bad reputation?

2. Cornelius, my son, you are strong, and have good enough ability; but you are lazy. You are a bad pupil.

3. It pleases my daughters to work. They are energetic girls.

4. You work well, girls. You please me.

5. The lazy boy is generally unhappy.

6. The energetic man is almost always happy.

7. Why do you chide me, master? (Ans.) Because you work badly in the fields.



ROMAN SCHOOL, FROM POMPEIAN WALL PAINTING
Ancient Aids to Learning

LESSON XV

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND
DECLENSIONS (Summary)

117. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are declined like nouns of similar form.

bonus, good (Masculine like *servus*)

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, miserable (Masc. like *puer*)

piger, lazy (Masc. like *ager*)

SINGULAR

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miserae	miserō	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
<i>Voc.</i>	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

PLURAL

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
<i>Voc.</i>	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

a. You have had all these forms before, with those of the corresponding nouns. But you must now learn to *recite the three genders side by side for each case* (thus **bonus, bona, bonum**, etc.), in order that you may quickly recognize a given case and gender, and quickly form one in writing Latin.

b. The Stems of **bonus** are o- and ā-Stems, those of **miser** and **piger** ro- and rā-Stems.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

118. We have constantly seen the Adjective taking different forms, according to the *gender*, the *number*, and the *case* of the word to which it belongs. Thus we find **serva bona, servārum bonārum, servus bonus, servum bonum, servōrum bonōrum**, etc., etc. We can then state the usage in the following rule:

119. *Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.*

a. This of course does not mean that a Noun and its Adjective must necessarily have the same *endings*. Thus, if we wish to say "the good farmer," the masculine form must be used for "good," since **agricola** is masculine. The declension will then be:

<i>Nom.</i>	agricola bonus
<i>Gen.</i>	agricolae boni
<i>Dat.</i>	agricolae bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	agricolam bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	agricola bone
<i>Abl.</i>	agricolā bonō

and similarly in the plural.

120.

READING MATTER

1. **Mārcus agricola vir validus et impiger est.**
- ✓ 2. **Agri agricolae boni semper pulchri sunt.**
3. **Mārcus, Mārci agricolae filius, bonus est discipulus.**
4. **Fāma Mārci, Mārci fili, bona est. Impiger est discipulus.**
5. **Ingenium tuum, Cornēli, nōn malum est, fāma tua mala.**

6. Discipulus piger magistrō nōn placet. Impigrum amat magister puerum.

7. Hortus filiārum meārum pulcher nōn est. Pigrae sūnt puellae.

8. Filiae meae pigrae et miserae sūnt, tuae impigrae et laetae. Beātus es.

121.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. It often pleases little boys to work in gardens.
2. *My* little sons love to help the farmers in the fields.
3. The good farmer is kind to the little boys and girls.
4. Mark is both an energetic farmer and a good man.
5. Mark, your son's¹ ability is great. You are fortunate.
6. (To another father) Your son Cornelius has sufficiently good ability and is strong. 7. But he is lazy. Lazy boys give a teacher many cares.

¹ "The ability of your son."



YOUNG ROMAN, PORTRAIT BUST

LESSON XVI

VOICE

122. The Active Voice represents the Subject of the Verb as *acting*, the Passive represents it as *acted upon*. Thus *moneō*, *I warn* (Active), *moneor*, *I am warned* (Passive).

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

123. Present Indicative, Active¹ and PassiveFIRST CONJUGATION, Stem *amā-*.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	<i>amō</i> , <i>I love</i>	<i>amor</i> , <i>I am loved</i>
2d "	<i>amās</i> , <i>you love</i>	<i>amāris</i> or <i>-re</i> , <i>you are loved</i>
3d "	<i>amat</i> , <i>he (she, it) loves</i>	<i>amātur</i> , <i>he (she, it) is loved</i>
1st Pl.	<i>amāmus</i> , <i>we love</i>	<i>amāmur</i> , <i>we are loved</i>
2d "	<i>amātis</i> , <i>you love</i>	<i>amāminī</i> , <i>you are loved</i>
3d "	<i>amant</i> , <i>they love</i>	<i>amantur</i> , <i>they are loved</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION, Stem *monē-*.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	<i>moneō</i> , <i>I warn</i>	<i>moneor</i> , <i>I am warned</i>
2d "	<i>monēs</i> , <i>you warn</i>	<i>monēris</i> or <i>-re</i> , <i>you are warned</i>
3d "	<i>monet</i> , <i>he (she, it) warns</i>	<i>monētur</i> , <i>he (she, it) is warned</i>
1st Pl.	<i>monēmus</i> , <i>we warn</i>	<i>monēmur</i> , <i>we are warned</i>
2d "	<i>monētis</i> , <i>you warn</i>	<i>monēminī</i> , <i>you are warned</i>
3d "	<i>monent</i> , <i>they warn</i>	<i>monentur</i> , <i>they are warned</i>

124. The Personal Endings are thus seen to be as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	<i>-ō</i> (or <i>-m</i>)	<i>-r</i>
2d "	<i>-s</i>	<i>-ris</i> or <i>-re</i>
3d "	<i>-t</i>	<i>-tur</i>
1st Pl.	<i>-mus</i>	<i>-mur</i>
2d "	<i>-tis</i>	<i>-minī</i>
3d "	<i>-nt</i>	<i>-ntur</i>

¹ Repeated for review and comparison.

125. Notice and remember the following, which are true of all the passive forms of the Finite Verb¹ made from the stem seen in the Present Indicative:

1. The Second Person Plural always ends in *-mini*.
2. All other forms contain an *r* somewhere in the termination.

THE AGENT OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

126. *The Agent of the Passive Voice* (the person by whom the act is performed) is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.² Thus:

Servus ā dominō culpātur, the servant is blamed by the master.

127.

READING MATTER

1. Domina mē amat (Active). *Ā dominā amor* (Passive).
2. Magister puerum pigrum monet. Puer piger *ā* magistrō monētur.
3. *Ā* magistrō saepe monēris. Piger es discipulus.
4. Bene, filiū meī, nōn labōrātis. *Ā* magistrō saepe monēmini.
5. Agri Mārci, agricolae validi, pulchrī sunt, et *ā* multis³ laudantur.
6. Impigri sumus servi, sed *ā* dominō numquam laudāmur.
7. Impigrae estis puellae, et *ā* magistrō laudāmini saepe.

128.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The queen blames the harsh master (Active). The harsh master is blamed by the queen (Passive).
2. Gallus, you are often admonished by the mistress.
3. I am often praised by my kind mistress.
4. My daughters, you are not admonished by a kind teacher without reason. 5. You are lazy girls. 6. I am not happy. I do not love lazy³ (people).

¹ The Finite Verb, as will be seen later (338), is made up of the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

² The meaning was originally *from*, the conception being that of the person *from whom* the action started. Compare "an arrow shot from a well-experienced archer." Shakespeare, *Per. i. 1. 164*.

³ Adjective used as a Noun (Masculine, because general).

LESSON XVII

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

129. Nine Adjectives, called Pronominal, are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, *except in the Genitive and Dative Singular*, which have the peculiar *Pronominal*¹ Endings *-īus* and *-ī* in all genders. But *alius* has Neuter *aliud*, and its Genitive is generally replaced by *alterīus*, from *alter*. The nine words are:

ūnus, one, only
ullus, any
nullus, none, no
solus, sole, alone

alius, other, another (of several)
alter, the other, another (of two)
uter, which? (of two)
neuter, neither (of two)

totus, total, whole

a. Except *ūnus* and *solus*, these lack the Vocative.

130. The Declension in the singular is thus as follows:

	<i>totus</i> , whole			<i>alter</i> , the other		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>totus</i>	<i>tota</i>	<i>totum</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>totiūs</i>	<i>totiūs</i>	<i>totiūs</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>alterīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>toti</i>	<i>toti</i>	<i>toti</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>totum</i>	<i>totam</i>	<i>totum</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>toto</i>	<i>tota</i>	<i>toto</i>	<i>altero</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>altero</i>

	<i>alius</i> , another			<i>uter</i> , which? (of two)		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>(alterīus)</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

¹ These endings will be seen later in many pronouns, as *ille*, *that* (145).

a. The Plural is like that of any other Adjectives of the First and Second Declension. Thus Nominative *aliī, aliae, alia*, Genitive *aliōrum, aliārum, aliōrum*, Dative *aliīs, aliīs, aliīs*, etc.

b. Note that in these words the Nominative Plural Masculine is identical with the Dative Singular (thus *aliī* is in either case). Be on your guard, then, when you meet such a form.

131. When *alius* is repeated (*alius . . . alius . . .*), the meaning is *one . . . another . . .* (in the Plural, *some . . . others . . .*). When *alter* is repeated (*alter . . . alter . . .*), the meaning is *one . . . the other . . .* (in the Plural, *one party . . . the other party . . .*).

132. You will notice, in the Reading Matter below, that the pronominal adjectives precede their nouns. And you will find, as you go on, that this is only one illustration of a general usage, which may be briefly stated as follows:

133. *Words of Exactness, Quantity, or Number¹ normally precede their nouns.*

134.

VOCABULARY

(Add the Pronominal Adjectives learned in 129)

<i>an</i> , Conj., <i>or</i> (in second part of a question).	<i>quam</i> , Adv., <i>how, as, than</i> . Thus:
<i>faveō</i> , <i>be favorable to, favor</i> .	<i>quam multī</i> , <i>how many</i> ; <i>tam</i>
(Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)	<i>quam</i> , <i>so (much) as, as (much) as</i> ; <i>magis quam</i> , <i>more than</i> , <i>minus quam</i> , <i>less than</i> .
<i>magis</i> , Adv., <i>more</i> .	<i>-que</i> , Conj., <i>and</i> (enclitic ²). Represents closer connection than
<i>minus</i> , Adv., <i>less</i> .	<i>et</i> .
<i>nōnnumquam</i> , Adv. (<i>nōn</i> + <i>num-</i> <i>quam</i> , not never) <i>sometimes</i> .	<i>schola, -ae</i> , F. 1, <i>school</i> .

135.

READING MATTER

1. *Ūnus discipulus ā magistrō saepe laudātur. Cūr nōn aliī tam laudantur quam Mārcus? Cūr nōn tōta schola nōnnumquam laudātur? (Ans.) Quia nūllus alius discipulus semper bene labōrat. Nōn favet magister discipulō ūllī.*

¹ E.g.: "this" man, the "other" man (exactness); "much" money, the "whole" school (quantity); "one" boy, "ten" pupils (number).

² Enclitic means "leaning back upon" something else.

2. (The master) Cornēliō nōn minus faveō quam Mārcō. Sed alter piger est, alter impiger.

• 3. (A visitor remarks) Quam male labōrat Cornēlius! (Ans.) Piger est discipulus, et saepe culpātur monēturque ā magistrō.

4. (A pupil to the teacher) Utrī magis favēs, Mārcō an Cornēliō? (Ans.) Neutrī magis quam alterī faveō. Tōtius scholae, nōn ūnīus sōliūs discipulī, magister sum. Sed aliōs discipulōs laudō, aliōs¹ moneō, quia aliī bene labōrant semper, aliī¹ nōnnumquam pigri sunt.

136.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Some pupils the master often praises; others he censures and² warns. *One* he always *praises*.

2. (A pupil says) Teacher, I often work well. 3. Why do you not sometimes praise me as (much) as Mark?³

4. Other pupils are lazy sometimes, and are sometimes admonished. 5. Mark alone *always* works well, and is *never* admonished.

6. (Cornelius) Which does the teacher favor, you or me? 7. (Mark) He favors neither. He favors *no*⁴ pupil more than any others. 8. He is ready to help the whole school. 9. He is kind to the whole school; he is the *friend* of the whole school.

10. (The master) I am ready to help Cornelius not less than Mark. 11. But one (of the two) always works well, the other *sometimes*.

¹ Where, as in this sentence, there is an obvious pair of contrasting ideas, Latin generally does not use a conjunction, while English generally does (*and, but, while, etc.*). Thus *aliōs laudō, aliōs moneō, I praise some, (while) I warn others.*

² Show the close connection of the ideas "censures" and "warns" by your choice between *et* and *-que*.

³ Look out for your case! The meaning is "praise me as-much as (you praise) Mark."

⁴ Emphatic. Make your Latin word so by your order.

LESSON XVIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

137. The Imperative Mood expresses Command, Advice, Request, Entreaty, etc., as in English. In the Present of the First and Second Conjugations the Second Persons Singular and Plural are formed as follows:

	PRESENT ACTIVE	PRESENT PASSIVE
I		
Conj. 2d Sing.	<i>amā, love (thou)</i>	<i>amāre, be (thou) loved</i>
2d Pl.	<i>amāte, love (ye)</i>	<i>amāminī, be (ye) loved</i>
II		
Conj. 2d Sing.	<i>monē, advise (thou)</i>	<i>monēre, be (thou) advised</i>
2d Pl.	<i>monēte, advise (ye)</i>	<i>monēminī, be (ye) advised</i>
Irreg. 2d Sing.	<i>es, be (thou)</i>	<i>(be can have no passive)</i>
2d Pl.	<i>este, be (ye)</i>	

a. Note that the 2d Sing. Imperative Active is the same as the bare stem (*amā-, monē-*; cf. 92).

b. Note that the 2d Sing. Imperative Passive is the same as the Infinitive Active (*amāre*),¹ and the 2d Pl. the same as the 2d Pl. Indicative Passive (*amāminī*).

THE PRESENT INFINITIVES, ACTIVE (Repeated) AND PASSIVE

138. The Infinitives Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations are formed like the following:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Conj. I	<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amārī, to be loved</i>
" II	<i>monēre, to warn</i>	<i>monērī, to be warned</i>

¹ Thus *amāre* can mean either *to love* or *be (thou) loved*; etc., etc. It is only the *surroundings* (called the *context*) that can tell you which is the meaning in a given case.

a. Note that, to form the Present Infinitive, you add *-re* to the stem for the Active, and *-rī* for the Passive (*amā-re*, *amā-rī*; *monē-re*, *monē-rī*). And

b. To make the Passive Infinitive from the Active, you change *-re* to *-rī* (thus *culpā-re*, *to blame*, *culpā-rī*, *to be blamed*).

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *ipse*, *self*, *very*.

139. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse*, *self*, is declined precisely like the Pronominal Adjectives, except for the single form *ipse*. Thus:

	<i>ipse</i> , <i>self</i>					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i> ¹	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS

140. Since the form of the verb shows its person and number, the Personal Pronouns are generally not expressed as subjects. But they are necessarily expressed where *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended. Thus:

Ego culpor, *tū* laudāris, *I am* blamed, *YOU* are praised.

141.

VOCABULARY

ego, *I*. Nominative.

etiam, Adv., *even*, *also*.

impigrē, Adv. (cf. *impiger*), *energetically*, *vigorously*.

ipse, *-a*, *-um*, *self*. In English we say (my)self, (him)self, etc.

ita, Adv., *in such a way*, *thus*, *so*.

itaque, Adv. (*ita + que*), *and so*, *therefore*, *accordingly*.

lūdus, *-ī*, M. 2, *play*, *sport*, *game*.

sōlum, Adv. (cf. *sōlus*), *only*.

Nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam . . .

not only . . . but also . . .

studeō (cf. *studium* below), *be zealous for*, *be eager for*, *be devoted to*; *study*. (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

studium, *studī*, N. 2, *zeal*, *interest*; *study*.

tū, *thou*, *you* (Sing.) Nominative.

¹ In many forms of various pronouns, it is difficult to distinguish the ending. Accordingly the terminations will nowhere be given in special type.

142.

READING MATTER

1. Tū studia an lūdōs magis amās? Ego lūdōs magis amō.
2. Impiger es,¹ fili mī, et cum studiō labōrā. Ego ipse labōrō.
3. Impigrī este, filii mei. Bene studēte, et ā mē laudāmini.¹
4. (The father) Cūr, fili mī, ā magistrō semper laudātur Mārcus, tū culpāris monērisque? Monērī magis amās quam laudārī? (Ans.) Ego laudārī tam amō quam Mārcus amat; sed magister Mārcō favet, mihi nōn favet.

5. (The father answers) Ita nōn est. Magister discipulō favet nullī.² Tē nōn minus parātus est iuvāre quam Mārcum. Sed tū lūdīs sōlis studēs, Mārcus nōn solum lūdōs sed etiam studia amat. Itaque tū ā nullō³ laudāris, Mārcus laudātur et ā magistrō et ab ipsīs discipulis. Tū quoque nunc impigrē studē, et ā magistrō laudāre, nōn monēre.

143.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Do *you* like⁴ better⁴ to be praised or to be blamed?
2. I like better to be praised, and-so I work.
3. The master favors others.
4. (Ans.) It isn't so. The fault is yours, my friend.
5. Work as energetically as Mark (works).
6. Love not only your sports but also your studies.
7. Be an energetic pupil; study with interest, and be praised by the master and your friends.
8. Be energetic pupils. Study well, and be praised, not warned.
9. (Dialogue of pupils) Cornelius has good ability.
10. (Ans.) He *has* good ability, (but) *no* interest.
11. He is-devoted-to sports alone.
12. I myself love and⁵ praise sports not less than studies, but I praise no lazy boys.

¹ How do you know whether this is Indicative or Imperative?

² What effect has the suspense?

³ "By *no* (*man*)" = "by *nobody*." Nullus is here used like a Noun.

⁴ Use *amō* and *magis*.

⁵ Use the conjunction of close connection.

LESSON XIX

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

144. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE²

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION		IRREGULAR
<i>I was loving,</i> <i>you were loving, etc.</i>		<i>I was warning,</i> <i>you were warning, etc.</i>		<i>I was,</i> <i>you were, etc.</i>
1st Sing.	amābam	monēbam		eram
2d "	amābās	monēbās		erās
3d "	amābat	monēbat		erat
1st Pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus		erāmus
2d "	amābātis	monēbātis		erātis
3d "	amābant	monēbant		erant

a. The Tense-Sign of the Imperfect Indicative is *-bā-*, which is added to the stem seen in the Present. Thus *amā-bā-m*, *monē-bā-m*, shortened to *amā-ba-m*, *monē-ba-m*; cf. 100, 2.

b. The Imperfect represents an action as going on at some point or period in past time (English "Past Progressive Tense"). It thus expresses a *past state of affairs*, a *past situation*, as in *cēnābam*, *I was dining*.

145. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE¹ PRONOUN *ille*, *that*,² *he*³

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
Gen.	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Acc.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Voc.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

a. *Iste*, *this* (of yours), *that* (of yours), *he*, is declined like *ille*.

¹ A Determinative Pronoun (also called Demonstrative) shows just *who* or just *what* is meant, as in "*That* is the man; *he* did it, not I."

² "That" (Plural "those"), the English "Demonstrative" Pronoun.

³ "He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" pronoun.

SUBSTANTIVES DEFINED.—PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES AS SUBSTANTIVES

146. Words which express persons or things are conveniently called *Substantives*. A noun is thus a Substantive. So is a personal pronoun like *tū*. Thus, if I say, *tū, Cornēlī, you, Cornelius*, both words are Substantive.

a. The Determinative Pronouns may be used in all cases as Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. Thus, *ille, he, illa, she, illud, it; illius dōnum* (the gift of him), *his gift; illi, to him*, etc.

b. We have several times seen that *Adjectives may be used as Substantives*, i. e., as if they were in themselves expressions of persons or things. Thus *ā multis laudantur, they are praised by many*.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS AS ADJECTIVES

147. The Determinative Pronouns are also used as Determinative Adjectives, agreeing with a Noun. Thus *ille puer, that boy, illa puella, that girl, illud dōnum, that gift*.

a. The Determinative Adjectives normally precede their nouns, under the principle of 133.

“CLAUSE” AND “PHRASE” DEFINED

148. 1. A Clause is a member of a sentence containing a Finite Verb of its own, or an Infinitive of corresponding value. Thus, in “it pleases me that you do this,” the words “that you do this” are a Clause. Similarly, in “it is sweet to die for fatherland,” the words “to die for fatherland” are a Clause.

a. An enclitic conjunction introducing a clause or phrase is naturally attached to the first word. Thus:

Cornēlium iuvā, illique favē, help Cornelius and favor him.

2. A Phrase is a group of associated words *not* containing a Finite Verb, or Infinitive of corresponding value.

a. Thus, in *cum studiō labōrā, work with zeal*, *cum studiō* is a Phrase.

149.

VOCABULARY

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill*.
 aegrē, Adv., *in an ill manner*,
ill, with difficulty.

bellum, -ī, N. 2, *war*.

enim, Conj., *for*. Like *nam*, but
 postpositive in its clause.¹

nam, Conj., *for*. Cf. *enim*.

Germānus, -ī, M. 2, *a German*.

ille, -a, -ud, *that; he, she, it*.

iste, -a, -ud, *this (of yours) or*
that (of yours); he, she, it.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um (nōn + nūllus,
 = not none), *some*. In Pl.,
some, several, not a few.

novus, -a, -um, *new*.

nūper, Adv., *recently*.

ōtium, ōtī, N. 2, *ease, repose;*
leisure; peace.

perīculum, -ī, N. 2, *peril, danger*.

probō, *approve*.

timeō, *fear, be afraid*.

tum, Adv., *at that time, then*.

READING MATTER

(In the following sentences, a past state of affairs and a present state of affairs are contrasted, by the use of the Imperfect and Present tenses.)

150. 1. Mārcus nūper bene labōrābat. Fāma illius discipulī magna erat. Illum et magister et tōta schola laudābant. Nunc ita nōn est. Nōnnūllī illum etiam culpant.

2. (The teacher) Nūper, Mārce, bene labōrābās, studiumque tuum tōta schola laudābat. Nunc impigrē nōn labōrās. (Ans.) Ita est. Validus tum eram. Nunc aeger sum; itaque aegrē labōrō. Tū ipse mihi favē, mēque iuvā.

3. Nūper, amīcī meī, ōtium laudābātis, ōtiō studēbātis. Nunc bellum solum laudātis. (Ans.) Tum nūllum timēbāmus perīculum. Nunc Germānōs timēmus. (First speaker) Istud ōtium tum nōn probābam. Nunc istī studiō novō nōn faveō; nam ego (or ego enim) perīculum ā² Germānīs timeō nūllum.

151.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Recently, my friends, you were favoring peace. Why are you now favoring war? 2. (Ans.) At-that-time we feared³ no danger. Now we are expecting war from the Germans themselves.

¹ I. e., placed after the first word of its clause, as in *ille enim*, for *he*; sometimes after a prepositional phrase, as in *ab illō enim*, for *by him*.

² From. ³ "Feared" here = "were fearing," — a past situation.

3. That war was just: this new war (of yours) is not just. 4. I approved¹ that: I do not approve this.

5. *Some* (people) never favor war.

6. My son, I do not favor this friend (of yours). 7. His² reputation is not good. 8. He is strong, but works badly.

9. Warn and help this friend (of yours), for he is not working well now. 10. (Ans.) He is ill, and is working with difficulty.

¹ = *was approving*; past situation.

² See section 146, *a* for the way to express "his."



VILLA D'ESTE, AT TIVOLI (TĪBUR). BUILT IN 1549

LESSON XX

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

152. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE (Repeated)
AND PASSIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I was loving,</i> etc.	<i>I was being</i> <i>loved, etc.</i>	<i>I was warning,</i> etc.	<i>I was being</i> <i>warned, etc.</i>
1st Sing. amābam	amābar	monēbam	monēbar
2d " amābās	amābāris or-re	monēbās	monēbāris or-re
3d " amābat	amābātur	monēbat	monēbātur
1st Pl. amābāmus	amābāmur	monēbāmus	monēbāmur
2d " amābātis	amābāminī	monēbātis	monēbāminī
3d " amābant	amābantur	monēbant	monēbantur

a. The stem of the passive is the same as in the active (amābā-, monēbā-). The personal endings are the regular ones seen in 124.

153. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE PRO-
NOUN is, this,¹ that,¹ the,² he,³ she, it

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī or iī (ī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius ⁴	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abl.	cō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)

a. In the Pl., the preferred forms are spelled with two i's, but pronounced with one.

¹ "This" (Plural "these") and "that" (Plural "those"), the English "Demonstrative" Pronouns.

² "The," the English "Definite Article."

³ "He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" Pronoun.

⁴ Pronounce as if written with two i's, ei-ius (= ēhⁱ-yoos). The first syllable is thus long. So regularly with e-i, a-i.

154.

VOCABULARY

anteā (ante + eā), Adv., *before this; before that; formerly.*

condiscipulus, -i, M. 2 (con- = cum), *fellow pupil, school-mate.*

cunctus, -a, -um, *all (together), whole.* In Pl., *all, everybody.*

diligentia, -ae, F. 1, *diligence.*

is, ea, id, *this, that, the; he, she, it.*

magnopere (first part from magnus, second from a word meaning work), Adv., *greatly.*

sī, Conj., *if.*

155.

READING MATTER

1. (A schoolmate of Cornelius, to his father) Cornēlius nūper male labōrābat, eiusque fāma mala erat. Is ā magistrō et ā condiscipulis nōnnūllis culpābātur. Nunc cūctī eī puerō favent, cūctī eum probant: nunc enim labōrat. (The father) Sī ita est, id¹ mihi magnopere placet.

2. Anteā, mī fili, ā magistrō saepe monēbāris; nunc ab eō laudāris. (Ans.) Ita est. Anteā ōtium amābam, et saepe culpābar. Sed illa fāma mala mihi nōn placēbat. Itaque nunc cum studiō labōrō. (The father) Ista nova diligentia mihi placet.

3. Filiū meī anteā ā magistrō culpābantur. Nunc laudantur.

4. Anteā, filiū meī, ā magistrō saepe culpābāmini. (Ans.) Ita est. Anteā culpābāmur. Sed nunc laudāmur. Laudārī magis amāmus.

156.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Recently Cornelius was being blamed. 2. Now, all his schoolmates approve him, all are praising his new diligence.

3. Formerly, my friends, you were being praised by everybody.² 4. Now you are (being) warned by many. 5. This does not please me greatly. 6. (Ans.) *Then* we were not sick, *now* we are.

7. Recently no dangers were feared. 8. Now danger is feared from the Germans; for they are strong, and are-eager-for war.

9. Recently, my friend, you were (being) censured. 10. If some (people) are now praising you, I am glad.

¹ This (thing), this, it.

² Use cūctī, *all*, in the proper case.

LESSON XXI

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

157. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	ENDINGS	IRREGULAR
<i>I shall love, or</i> <i>I shall be loving, etc.</i>	<i>I shall warn, or</i> <i>I shall be warning, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be,</i> etc.
1st Sing. amābō	monēbō	-bō	erō
2d " amābis	monēbis	-bis	eris
3d " amābit	monēbit	-bit	erit
1st Pl. amābimus	monēbimus	-bimus	erimus
2d " amābitis	monēbitis	-bitis	eritis
3d " amābunt	monēbunt	-bunt	erunt

a. The Tense-Sign of the Future Indicative in the First and Second Conjugations is **-b-** plus a variable vowel (**-bō-**, **-bi-**, **-bu-**, etc.).

b. The Future Indicative represents an act either as *going on* at some point or period in future time, or *indefinitely* in the future.

158. DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUN *idem, the same*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	īdem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
	PLURAL		
Nom.	eīdem or īdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)

a. *Īdem* corresponds to *is*, with *-dem* added to every form. Before the *d*, *m* becomes *n*. (Thus Acc. *eun-dem* for *eum-dem*.)

b. Note that *īdem* (long *i*) is Masculine, and *idem* (short *i*) Neuter.

c. Remember the following for the Plural of *is* and *īdem*: In the Pl. of *is*, the preferred forms are spelled with two *i*'s but pronounced with one *i*; in the Pl. of *īdem*, the preferred forms are spelled, as well as pronounced, with one *i*.

159. For *ego*, the Nom. Pl. is *nōs* (also Acc.); for *tū*, it is *vōs* (also Acc. and Voc.). Like *ego* and *tū*, these words are generally not expressed as Subjects, since the form of the Verb itself shows the person and number. But they are necessarily expressed where *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended. Thus:

Nōs culpāmur, vōs laudāminī, WE are blamed, YOU are praised.

160. In *if*-clauses referring to the future, we commonly use a Present Indicative in English. Latin is generally more exact. Thus:

Sī bene labōrābis, beātus eris, if you (shall) work well, you will be happy.

This will be found to be true in many constructions. Remember, then, that:

161. *In general, Latin expresses relations of time more exactly than English.*

162.

VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure, assured, fixed; trusty.

certē, Adv., certainly, surely; at any rate, at least.

dēsiderō, desire.

displīceō, be displeasing, displease (Verb of Quality, taking Dat.).

īdem, eadem, idem, the same.

mox, Adv., soon.

nimis, Adv., too much, too.

nōs, we, us. Nom. and Acc. Pl. of ego.

noster, nosfra, nostrum, our.

persevērō, persevere.

umquam, Adv., ever. (Cf. numquam, never.)

vērus, -a, -um, true, real.

vērō, Adv., in truth, really, indeed. Often merely emphasizes.

vester, vestra, vestrum (cf. *vōs* below), *your* (when two or more persons are addressed).

vōs, you. Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. of tū.

163.

READING MATTER

1. Magister tuus et ipsi condiscipuli nuper te culpabant. Nunc bene laborās. Si perseverābis, idem magister et idem condiscipuli diligentiam tuam laudābunt. Studia tua nuper tibi displicēbant. Eadem studia mox placēbunt, tibi que certam dabunt¹ famam. Tū ipse laetus eris. (Ans.) Perseverābō certē. Si studia umquam amābō, beātus erō. Sed id verō nōn expectō.

2. (Cornelius serves as an example. A father says to his sons) Cornēlius nuper ā cūctis condiscipulis culpābatur. Eiusdem pueri fama nunc bona est: eidem puero cūcti favent, eundem cūcti magnopere laudant; nam is bene nunc laborat. Vōs si impigrē studēbitis, eadem fama mox vestra erit. Magister vester et cūcti vērī amīci vestri vōs laudābunt. Etiam studia vestra amābitis. (One of them answers) Nōs studēbimus, tū si id dēsiderās, et laetī erimus; sed studia nostra certē numquam nimis amābimus.

164.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. You will please me, my son, if you (shall) work well, and you yourself will soon be happy, for you will have a real and assured reputation. 2. You displease me now. 3. (Ans.) I will work well, and I shall really be happy, if I (shall) please you. 4. But I shall not love my studies too-much.

5. You will please me, my sons, if you (shall) work well, and you yourselves will be happy. 6. (Ans.) We will work well, if you desire this greatly, and we shall be fortunate if ever you (shall) praise us. 7. We will persevere at any rate.

8. Our son and your son Mark are studying in the same school. 9. They have the same friends, the same studies, and the same sports.

¹Dō has a short a in inflection, except in words of one syllable. Thus dare, dabam, dabō, etc. (but dās). All other verbs of the first conjugation have the long a everywhere (except as by 100, 2).

LESSON XXII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

165. FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE (Repeated) AND PASSIVE.

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I shall love,</i> etc.	<i>I shall be loved,</i> etc.	<i>I shall warn,</i> etc.	<i>I shall be warned,</i> etc.
1st Sing. amābō	amābor	monēbō	monēbor
2d " amābis	amāberis or -re	monēbis	monēberis or -re
3d " amābit	amābitur	monēbit	monēbitur
1st Pl. amābimus	amābimur	monēbimus	monēbimur
2d " amābitis	amābiminī	monēbitis	monēbiminī
3d " amābunt	amābuntur	monēbunt	monēbuntur

a. The stem of the passive is the same as in the active. The personal endings are the regular ones already seen in the present and imperfect.

166. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN
hic, this,¹ he²

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius ³	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic ⁴	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Voc.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. *Hic* is made up of a true pronoun, to which in certain forms a -c is added, itself meaning something like "this" or "here."

b. Notice *hae-c* in the Nom. Sing. Fem., and the Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl. The *ae* in these forms is a *special pronominal ending*, which you will see again in several pronouns.

¹"This" (Plural "these"), the English "Demonstrative" pronoun.

²"He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" Pronoun.

³Pronounce *hui-ius* (= *hooi-yoos*).

⁴Pronounce *hooic*.

167. 1. Of the Determinative Pronouns *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* (now learned), *hic* means *this*, *he* (near the speaker), *iste* *this* (of yours), *that* (of yours), *he* (near you), and *ille* *that*, *he* (over there).

2. *Is*, *this*, *that*, *he* is less sharply specific, and is therefore preferred when there can be no mistake about the reference.

3. Latin has thus *four* words, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, and *is*, used as Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. *Is* is the most common.

168.

READING MATTER

1. Magister tuus tē nūper culpābat. Sī bene labōrābis; ab hōc eōdem magistrō mox laudāberis. Studia tibi antea nimis displicēbant. Sī bene umquam studēbis, haec eadem studia ā tē¹ vērō amābuntur. Perseverā, et tū ipse laetus eris.

2. Hic puer impigrē labōrat. Haec puella cūr tam pigra est?

3. Cūctī condiscipulī nostrī nōs culpant. Ab hīs numquam satis probābimur, etiam sī impigrē studēbimus. (Ans.) Ā mē¹ certē probābiminī; magnopere enim dēsiderō vōs laudāre.

4. Cūr tū huic scholae favēs? (Ans.) Quia cūctī eius² discipulī vērī discipulī sunt.

169.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (A student, sick and despondent) I shall be censured if I do³ not work well, even if I am³ ill. 2. (Ans.) You will be censured by no one. All will favor you.

3. My sons, you will be censured if you do³ not work well.

4. These new pupils are really working vigorously. 5. (Ans.) They will be praised by our teacher. 6. We shall be censured by him, even if we shall really work well.

7. This school was formerly bad. 8. Its master will not soon be happy; for the new pupils alone will work well.

9. This school is good, that (one) is too bad. 10. Therefore I favor this (one), and censure that (one).

¹ Mē and tē are Ablative as well as Accusative.

² For eius, following huic, see 167, 2.

³ Look out for the real tense-meaning.

LESSON XXIII

THE THIRD CONJUGATION

170. The Third Conjugation, like the others, is best recognized in the Present Infinitive. The forms are repeated below from 92.

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM ENDS IN
I	amō	amāre, <i>to love</i>	-ā- (amā-)
II	moneō	monēre, <i>to warn</i>	-ē- (monē-)
III	tegō	tegere, <i>to cover</i>	-e- (tege-)

a. The Present Infinitive Passive of the Third Conjugation is formed with only the ending -ī. Thus *tegere* (Active) *to cover*, *tegi* (Passive) *to be covered*.

171. THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE,
ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

tegō, *cover*; Stem tege-

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	tegō	tegor
2d " "	tegis	tegeris or -re
3d " "	tegit	tegitur
1st Pl.	tegimus	tegitur
2d " "	tegitis	teginī
3d " "	tegunt	teguntur

a. Notice that these endings are precisely the same as those which you have just learned for the *Future* of *sum* (erō, eris, erit, etc.).

b. Remember that the characteristic vowel of the Third Conjugation is *variable* (thus *tege-re*, but *tegi-t*, *tegu-nt*, etc.).

172. THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT IMPERATIVE,
ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

	PRESENT ACTIVE	PRESENT PASSIVE
2d Sing.	tege, <i>cover (thou)</i>	tegere, <i>be (thou) covered</i>
2d Pl.	tegitē, <i>cover (ye)</i>	teginī, <i>be (ye) covered</i>

a. Tege, like amā and monē, is the bare stem.

"YES" OR "NO" QUESTIONS, AND ANSWERS TO THEM

173. Questions calling for the answer "Yes" or "No" may be asked in the four following ways:

1. With no sign but that of the inflection of voice, or, in print, of the "question mark."
2. With *-ne* (attached to the emphatic word), implying nothing about the answer (= *a question mark at the beginning*).
3. With *nōnne*, implying the answer "yes."
4. With *num*, implying the answer "no."

Thus:

1. *Mārcus adest? Is Mark present?*
2. *Mārcusne adest? Is Mark present?*
3. *Nōnne Mārcus adest? Isn't Mark present?*
4. *Num Mārcus adest? Mark isn't present, is he?*

174. 1. Answers to "Yes" or "No" Questions may be given, as we have seen, by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Or,

2. "Yes" may be expressed by *ita, etiam, vērō, certē*, etc. (*so, even, in truth, certainly*, etc.), and "no" by *nōn, minimē*, etc. (*no, not at all*, etc.).

175.

VOCABULARY

(Infinitives will hereafter be given for new verbs.)

cadō, cadere, fall.

dē, Prep., down from, from, of descent. Takes Separative Abl.

equus, equī, M. 2, horse.

ex or ē, Prep., out of, from.

Takes Separative Abl. *Ex* and *ē* before consonants, *ex* before vowels.

iam, Adv., by this time, already, now.

inimīcus, -ī, M. 2 (in, not, + amīcus, not friend, =) enemy.

minimus, -a, -um, smallest, or very small.

minimē, Adv., in the smallest degree; not at all.

nōbīs, Dat.-Abl. Pl. of nōs.

-ne, enclitic interrogative Adv., implying nothing about the answer.

nōnne, not? interrog. Adv., implying "yes."

num, interrog. Adv., implying "no."

petō, petere, aim at, attack; seek, ask.

properō, -āre, hurry, hasten.

regō, regere (make straight), direct, guide, rule.

saxum, -ī, N. 2, stone, rock.

tegō, tegere, cover; shield, hide, protect.

via, -ae, F. 1, way, street, road.

vōbīs, Dat.-Abl. Pl. of vōs.

176.

READING MATTER

1. Parvīne puerī ā puerīs magnīs vestrā¹ in scholā petuntur?²
2. Inimīcī mē petunt; mē tege, amīce mī.
3. Nōnne tū ab amīcīs tegeris? (Ans.) Vērō. Nullī mē petunt.
4. Nōnne vōs, puerī parvī, ab amīcīs magnīs vestrīs tegiminī? (Ans.) Ita. Semper tegimur. Amīcī nōbīs bonī sunt.
5. Ā mē regere,³ fili mī. Ego tibi vērū erō amīcus.
6. Ā mē regiminī,³ filiū meī. Ego vōbīs certus erō amīcus.
7. Hic puer minimus est, sed equum magnum iam regit. (Second speaker) Num equus magnus ā puerō tam parvō regitur?
8. Saxa viārum dūra sunt. Nōnne tū, puer parve, saepe dē equō in ea⁴ cadis? (Ans.) Minimē. Ego numquam cadō. (First speaker) Meī filiū iam magnī sunt, sed saepe dē equīs cadunt.
9. Ex scholā properāte. Vōs in viā expectant amīcī.

177.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I don't attack you, boys, do I? Why do you attack me?
2. Why are you attacked? Don't you yourself attack others?
3. We are attacked by our enemies. 4. If you are true and sure friends of-ours (say "to us"), protect us.
5. Does it please you, big boys, to attack little (ones)? 6. In our⁵ school the smallest boys are never attacked. 7. Be guided by me. Attack no(body).
8. Are you sometimes attacked by big boys in school, my sons?
9. (Ans.) Yes, but other big boys protect us. We don't fear at all.⁶
10. You are already big, but you fall from your horses upon the stones of the street. Aren't they hard?
11. Why are you hurrying out of the street? 12. (Ans.) We are-afraid-of⁷ those horses.

¹ Vestrā goes with scholā (a common group-order,—Adj., Prep., Noun).

² Petō has here its simple meaning, *attack*.

³ What is this doubtful form? Consider context.

⁴ "Upon them." Ea is Acc., because cadis expresses motion.

⁵ Cf. footnote 1.

⁶ "We fear not-at-all."

⁷ "We fear."

LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued).—THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

178. 1. The Fourth Conjugation has the characteristic vowel *-ī-*. Thus, *audiō, audire, hear*.

2. Besides these Fourth Conjugation verbs in *-iō*, there are also certain *Third* Conjugation verbs in *-iō*. Thus *capiō, capere, take*.

a. These were originally of the Fourth Conjugation, but came to belong to the Third through a shortening of the characteristic vowel.

b. There are thus *two* Third Conjugation types, namely in *-o* and *-iō*.

179. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS WITH INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Conj.	Present Stem ends in	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFIN. ACTIVE	PRESENT INFIN. PASSIVE
I	-ā- (amā-)	amō	am-āre	am-ārī
II	-ē- (monē-)	monēō	mon-ēre	mon-ērī
III	-e- (tege-) (cape-)	tegō capiō	teg-ere cap-ere	teg-ī cap-ī
IV	-ī- (audī-)	audiō	aud-īre	aud-īrī

a. Remember carefully that the Present Passive Infinitive of the Third Conjugation, in either type, ends merely in *-ī* (thus *tegī, capī*); while in all the other Conjugations it ends in *-rī* added to the characteristic vowel (*-ārī, -ērī, -īrī*).

b. From here on, the Conjugation of each new verb occurring in the Vocabularies will be indicated by a number, which is to be repeated when you are asked to give the verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION (Both Types), AND FOURTH CONJUGATION

180. Present Indicative, Active and Passive

THIRD CONJUGATION

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Active

1st Sing.	tegō, cover	capiō, take	audiō, hear
2d "	tegis	capis	audīs
3d "	tegit	capit	audit
1st Pl.	tegitur	capimus	audīmus
2d "	tegitis	capitis	audītis
3d "	tegunt	capiunt	audiunt

Passive

1st Sing.	tegor	capior	audior
2d "	tegeris or -re	caperis or -re	audīris or -re
3d "	tegitur	capitur	audītur
1st Pl.	tegitur	capimur	audīmur
2d "	tegitur	capimur	audīmur
3d "	teguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

a. Note that all verbs showing *i* before another vowel in conjugation (*-iō, -iunt*, etc.) must belong to the Third or Fourth Conjugation.

b. Remember that *i* is short in the Third Conjugation, and long in the Fourth (except, of course, in the places of regular shortening).

181.

VOCABULARY

atque or ac, ¹ Conj., and. Of close connection, like <i>-que</i> .	faciō, facere, 3, make, do; perform; act.
neque or nec, ¹ Conj., nor. Neque . . . , neque . . . , neither . . . nor . . .	fugiō, fugere, 3, flee, run away.
audiō, audīre, 4, hear.	iaciō, iacere, 3, throw.
capiō, capere, 3, take, take up.	mūrus, -ī, M. 2, wall.
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous.	pugnō, pugnāre, 1, fight.
cupiō, cupere, 3, desire, wish, want.	quid, what? Neut. Nom.-Acc. Sing.
cum, Conj., when.	sciō, scīre, 4, know.
dēsistō, -ere, 3, desist, stop.	sonus, -ī, M. 2, sound.
	stō, stāre, 1, stand.
	videō, vidēre, 2, see.

¹ Neque generally before vowels, nec generally before consonants; atque before either, ac only before consonants.

182.

READING MATTER

1. (A quarrel begins) Nōnnūllī puerī in¹ condiscipulōs dē mūrō saxa iaciunt. (One says) Nōs dē mūrō petimur. (A passer-by) Hī puerī neque ipsī saxa capiunt nec fugiunt. (To the boys) Cūr hīc stātis? Ex viā properāte. Petī cupitis? (One of the boys) Cupidī nōn sumus. (The passer-by) Ex periculō fugite. (Another of the boys to the rest) Minimē. Cūr nōn ipsī saxa capimus atque illōs puerōs petimus? Cūr nōn pugnamus? Num nōs timēmus?

2. Saxa capiuntur et iaciuntur. Haec in viā cadunt. Sonus ā magistrō auditur. (He says to others) Auditisne? (They answer) Audimus. (He goes out and calls) Ō puerī, quid facitis? Cūr saxa iacitis? Mēne auditis? Dēsistite. Hic² nōn est lūdus, sed bellum vērū. Magnō in periculō cūctī estis. Nōne id scītis? Haec³ cum facitis, tum⁴ vērō⁴ vōbīs irātus sum.

3. Vidē illum puerum parvum! Dē equō cadit!

183.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. *That*⁵ boy *never*⁵ falls from his horse.
2. Do you want to fight? (Ans.) I am not desirous. Stop.
3. What are you doing, boys? (Ans.) We are standing on the wall. 4. (The teacher) Yes, I see that myself. 5. But I hear the sound of stones. Why are you throwing them? 6. *This*⁶ (is what) I want to know.
7. Do *your* pupils often throw stones? 8. (Ans.) They never throw at schoolmates. 9. But when they are attacked by boys from (=out of) other schools, they sometimes take-up stones; for they love neither to be attacked nor to run-away.
10. (A boy shouts) Protect us, friends! (To his mates) We are heard, and other boys are hurrying to us from our school.

¹ Into, = English *at*.

² Masc., because the *Predicate* is.

³ *These things* (*things like these*).

Note the emphatic position.

⁴ *Then indeed*, = *then . . . really*.

⁵ Make emphatic by position.

⁶ Say merely "I want to know *this*."

LESSON XXV

184. DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE AND
RELATIVE PRONOUNS, *quis, quī*

quī, Relative Pronoun, *who*, and *quis*, Interrog. Pronoun, *who?*
Interrog. Adjective, *what?* (as Substantive).

	SINGULAR				
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i> ¹	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i> ¹	<i>cuius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i> ²	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i> ²	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>

PLURAL (same for both words)

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. Notice that *quis* and *quī* are declined alike in the Plural, and differ in the Singular only in the pairs *quis, quid*, and *quī, quod*. But *quis* does not distinguish between Masc. and Fem. in the Sing.

b. Notice also the ending *-ae* in the Nom. Fem. Sing. and the Nom. and Acc. Neut. Pl. of *quī*, just as in *haec* from *hic* (166).

c. In the Acc. Masc. Sing. *quem*, notice the new Acc. ending in *-em*.

185. The translations differ with the genders. Thus:

Interrogative Substantive: *quis? who? quid? what?*

Interrogative Adjective: *quī? what? which?*

Relative: *quī, who, that* (Masc. or Fem.); *which, that* (Neuter).

¹ Pronounce *cui-ius* (= *cooi-yoos*).

² Pronounce *cooi*.

186. The Interrogative Pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. Thus *quem vocās?* *whom are you calling?*

a. Note the difference in form between the Interrogative as Substantive and the Interrogative as Adjective:

Quis hic est? *who is this?* (Interrogative Substantive).

Quī puer hic est? *what boy is this?* (Interrogative Adjective).

Quid parās? *what are you getting up?* (Interrogative Substantive).

Quod bellum parās? *what war are you getting up?* (Interrogative Adjective).

187. 1. The Relative Pronoun is a *connecting* pronoun referring to something that precedes or follows.

2. The word to which the Relative refers is called the *Antecedent*, because it generally *comes before* the Relative.

3. The part of the sentence consisting of the Relative, its Verb, and all that goes with them, is called the Relative Clause.

188. Examples for the use of the Relative Pronoun:

1. *Hic puer, quem tū culpās, aeger est, this boy, whom you are blaming, is sick.*

a. Here *quem* must of course be Masculine and Singular, because it is meant to go with (refer to) *puer*, which is Masculine and Singular; and it must be Accusative, because it is the Object of *culpās*.

2. *Hās fēminās laudō, quae bene labōrant, I praise these women, who work well.*

a. Here *quae* must of course be Feminine and Plural, because it is meant to refer to *fēminās*, which is Feminine and Plural; and it must be Nominative, because it is the Subject of *labōrant*.

Evidently these principles must always hold. Hence the rule:

189. *Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents in Gender and Number, but their Case depends upon their relations in the Clauses to which they belong.*

190.

READING MATTER

1. (Same subject as in 182, 2. The teacher says) *Quem sonum audiō? Quī saxa dē mūrō iaciunt?* (Some one says)

Ego videō. Illi quī saxa iaciunt discipulī ex hāc scholā sunt. (The teacher, to the boys above) Quid facitis? Quod bellum parātis? Vōs quī saxa iacitis, dēsistite. Hī puerī quī in viā stant magnō in periculō sunt. Nōne id scītis? Haec cum facitis, tum vērō mihi magnopere displicētis.

2. (A neighbor says) Haec schola, quae tibi placet, mihi non placet. Nōn probō eam¹ scholam cuius discipulī in condiscipulōs saxa iaciunt.

3. Quam magnus equus!² (Ans.) Sed hic idē equus ā puerō parvō amat regi.

191.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. In what school are you studying? (Ans.) In the same school in which Mark is studying. 2. (First speaker) But of what school (Genitive) is Mark? (Second speaker) Don't you know that?³

3. (One father to another) What school do you approve? (Ans.) I favor a school in which the pupils desire to study.

4. I love the same studies that⁴ you love, the same friends.

5. What are you doing? What danger are you fleeing? 6. (Ans.) Some boys are throwing stones from the wall. Don't you see?

7. When stones are thrown by your boys, what do you do?

8. (Ans.) I admonish the boys, and⁵ they⁵ stop.

¹That school whose, a school whose.

⁴Here "that" = "which."

²How big a horse! what a big horse! ³Use id. ⁵Say "and these."



STAIRWAY PATH, VILLA D'ESTE

LESSON XXVI

DECLENSION OF *quicumque*, *whoever*, and *quidam*, *a certain*

192. The Generalizing or Indefinite Relative Pronoun *quicumque*, *whoever*, is declined like *quī* (184) with *-cum-que*¹ added to each form. Thus:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quicumque</i>	<i>quaecumque</i>	<i>quodcumque</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuiuscumque</i>	<i>cuiuscumque</i>	<i>cuiuscumque</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuicumque</i>	<i>cuicumque</i>	<i>cuicumque</i> , etc., etc.

193. The Indefinite Pronoun *quidam*, *a certain*, is declined like *quī* with *-dam* added, except that in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular there is a *second* form *quid-*, which is used Substantively.² The declension is as follows:

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quoddam or quiddam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quoddam or quiddam</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quādam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

a. Notice that in *quīdam* (just as in *īdem* in 158), *m* becomes *n* before *d*. Thus *quendam* (for *quemdam*), *quādam* (for *quamdam*), etc.

¹ The *-que* of *quī-cum-que* is an indefinite particle, meaning *any*. *Quī-cum-que* thus = *who-any-when*, i. e., *who at any time*, i. e., *whoever*.

² Thus *quoddam dōnum*, *a certain gift*, but *quiddam*, *a certain thing*. This distinction,—that the *Substantive* form is *quid* and the *Adjective* form *quod*,—you will find to hold for all compounds in this book having *quī* or *quis* for one element.

194. PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF ALL FOUR CONJUGATIONS

CONJ.	Active				
	I	II	III	IV	
2d Sing.	amā	monē	tege	cape	audī
2d Pl.	amāte	monēte	tegite	capite	audīte
Passive					
2d Sing.	amāre	monēre	tegere	capere	audīre
2d Pl.	amāmini	monēmini	tegimini	capimini	audīmini

a. Note that the passive forms are ambiguous (read 137, b again).

195. VOCABULARY

accipiō, accipere, 3 (ad + capiō, take to oneself), take, receive, accept.	imperātum, -ī, N. 2, command.
animus, -ī, M. 2, mind, spirit; feeling.	incipiō, incipere, 3 (in + capiō, take on), begin.
aut, Conj., or. Aut . . . aut . . . , either . . . or . . .	iniūria, -ae, F. 1, injury, wrong.
auxilium, -ī, N. 2, aid, help.	lapillus, -ī, M. 2, pebble.
cēdō, cēdere, 3 (originally move, then, with Dative, move for, =) yield; give way. (Verb of Attitude, taking Dative.)	pellō, pellere, 3, drive (out or off).
dīcō, dīcere, 3, say, speak.	pugna, -ae, F. 1, fight.
discēdō, -ere, 3 (dis-, apart, + cēdō, move ¹), move off, depart.	quicumque (192), whoever.
	quidam (193), a certain.
	reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, left; as Subst. in Pl., the rest.
	vel . . . vel . . . , Conj., either . . . or . . . (where a choice is offered).
	vertō, vertere, 3, turn; change.

196. READING MATTER

1. (A neighbor to the teacher) Nōnnūllī discipulōrum tuōrum nōnnumquam saxa in condiscipulōs iaciunt. Tū hunc lūdum aut nōn vidēs aut probās. Ego nōn probō. (Ans.) Lapillōs, nōn saxa, iaciunt. Sed certē neque ego probō.

2. (To the pupils, later) Mē audīte. Quiddam ā quibusdam discipulis petō. Aliīs imperātum quoddam dare dēsiderō.

¹ The original meaning *move* is lost in the simple verb *cēdō*, but appears in all the compounds, as in *discēdō* in this lesson. *Dis-* is used only in composition, at the beginning of a word (hence called an "inseparable prefix").

3. (A boy) Quid ā nōbīs petis?¹ Quodcumque tū cupis, id nōs facere cupimus. 6. (The teacher) Quidam ex vōbīs lapillōs in condiscipulōs nōnumquam iaciunt. Hī illis² nōn cēdunt. Ita pugna vēra incipit. Schola nostra magnam accipit³ iniūriam.

4. Nunc iīs qui hās pugnās incipiunt haec dicō: Quicumque haec facit, is scholae iniūriam facit. Itaque vel animōs vestrōs ad aliōs lūdōs vertite, vel ex hāc scholā pellimini; vel cēdite vel discēdite. Ā reliquīs hoc petō: Per vestrum auxilium fāmae bonae scholae nostrae favēte.

197.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The same ideas, in English) Certain boys of this school throw pebbles at little schoolmates. They⁴ do not desire to do⁵ harm⁵ to them.⁴ 2. But in whatever school pupils do these things, that school soon begins to be blamed. 3. Therefore I say to these boys: Either⁶ desist or⁶ depart. This is my command.

4. (A boy says to the teacher) We do not approve (of) these boys. 5. (The teacher) Then I ask help of (=from) you and the rest; for these fights do harm⁵ to our good fame. 6. Say⁷ to these boys that⁸ which⁸ you say to me, and be *heard* by them.

7. (The boy to the teasers) Either yield, or leave⁹ the school, or be driven out. 8. To yield is good. It will be *bad* either to leave⁸ the school, or to be driven out.

¹ For the meaning of *petō*, look back at Vocabulary, 175.

² *These to those* = *the latter to the former*.

³ *Receives injury* = *suffers injury*.

⁴ Say "those . . . to these." Latin is more exact than English in the use of pronouns.

⁵ Use *iniūriam* and *faciō* ("do an injury").

⁶ This means, let them take their *choice*. Which should you use, *aut* or *vel*?

⁷ *Dīc* not *dīce*. See footnote, page 204.

⁸ *Id quod*.

⁹ "Depart from."

LESSON XXVII

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (Finished)

198. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

CONJ.	II (Repeated)	III			IV
		Active			
1st Sing.	monēbam	tegēbam	capiēbam		audiēbam
2d "	monēbās	tegēbās	capiēbās		audiēbās
3d "	monēbat	tegēbat	capiēbat		audiēbat
1st Pl.	monēbāmus	tegēbāmus	capiēbāmus		audiēbāmus
2d "	monēbātis	tegēbātis	capiēbātis		audiēbātis
3d "	monēbant	tegēbant	capiēbant		audiēbant
		Passive			
1st Sing.	monēbar	tegēbar	capiēbar		audiēbar
2d "	monēbāris	tegēbāris	capiēbāris		audiēbāris
	or -re	or -re	or -re		or -re
3d "	monēbātur	tegēbātur	capiēbātur		audiēbātur
1st Pl.	monēbāmur	tegēbāmur	capiēbāmur		audiēbāmur
2d "	monēbāminī	tegēbāminī	capiēbāminī		audiēbāminī
3d "	monēbantur	tegēbantur	capiēbantur		audiēbantur

a. Notice that the formation in the 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations is the same, except that the -iō Verbs have the additional -i-.

b. Remember now that -bā- marks the *Imperfect Indicative*.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN *quisquam*, *any at all*

199. *Quisquam* is declined like *quis* (184), with -quam added.

	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam ¹
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam ¹
Voc.	_____	_____
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

¹ For *quid-quam* (the q affecting the d). *Quidquam* also occurs.

a. Quisquam has no Plural. The *Adjective* use is supplied by *nĭllus*.

b. Quisquam and *nĭllus* are used especially with *negative ideas*, expressed or implied.

200. THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN *quisque*,¹ *each, every*

	AS ADJECTIVE		N.	AS SUBSTANTIVE	
	M.	F.		M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quodque	quisque	quidque
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quamque	quodque	quemque	quidque
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōque	quōque

a. Notice that *quisque* is declined exactly like *quis* (184) with *-que* added, except that the form *quisque* itself is used both as substantive and as adjective (whereas for *quis* the adjective form is *quī*).

b. The Plural is not common. (The forms, where used, are like those of *quis* plus *-que*. See 184).

c. An Indefinite Pronoun *quispiam*, to be used later (564), is declined with *quis-* as in *quisque*.

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (or THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

201. Specimen Sentences:

Multi condiscipulōrum meōrum impigrī sunt, many of my school-mates are energetic.

Nĭllus amīcōrum meōrum piger est, not one of my friends is lazy.

a. Notice that the Genitive *condiscipulōrum* (first sentence) here expresses the whole body of schoolmates, while *multi* expresses a *part* of them; and similarly that *amīcōrum meōrum* (second sentence) expresses the whole body of friends, while *nĭllus* expresses a *part* of them.

The usage is thus as follows:

¹*Quis-que* = *quis* plus the indefinite *-que* already seen = *any-who* = *every, each*.

202. *The Whole to which a Part Belongs may be expressed by the Genitive.*

a. But there is also another way in which the same idea may be expressed, as follows:

b. *After most words, the whole to which a part belongs may also be expressed by dē or ex with the Ablative.* So regularly with *quīdam*, and with Cardinal Numbers (one, two, three, etc.). Thus: *Multi ex amicīs meis, many of my friends* (many out of my friends). *Quīdam dē meis amicīs, a certain one of my friends* (a certain one from . . .).

Unus dē meis amicīs, one of my friends (one from . . .).

203.

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse (ad + sum), *be by, be present, be at hand.*

contrā, against. Prep. of Space-Relation, taking Acc.

fleō, flēre, 2, weep, cry.

incommodum, -ī, N. 2, trouble, misfortune.

iterum, Adv., again.

laccessō, laccessere, 3, worry.

maneō, manēre, 2, remain, continue.

memoria, -ae, F. 1, memory.

modo, Adv., just, only; just now.

noceō, nocēre, 2, be hurtful to, hurt, injure. (Verb of Quality, taking Dat.)

quisquam (199), *any at all.*

quisque (200), *each, every one.*

respondeō, -ēre, 2, respond, answer.

Sextus, -ī, M. 2, Sextus, a name.

vestrum, of you. Gen. Pl. of *tū*.

Cf. *vōs*.

victōria, -ae, F. 1, victory.

204.

READING MATTER

1. (The teacher) *Quis modo flēbat?* (Ans.) *Quīdam puer parvus.* (Teacher) *Cūr id faciēbat?* (Ans.) *Ā quibusdam puerīs magnīs laccessēbātur.*

2. (Teacher) *Magna haec victōria erat! Sed quis erat, quī laccessēbātur?* (Ans.) *Sextus erat.* (Teacher) *Quī eum laccessēbant?* (The boys are silent. The teacher says) *Nūllam habētis memoriā?*¹ *Cūr nōn respondētis? Certē aut scītis aut nōn scītis.* (Ans.) *Scīmus.*

¹ Notice the emphasis given to *memoriā* by the slight suspense. This is an extremely common order. Use it yourself.

3. (The teacher) Videō. Scītis, sed dicere nōn cupitis. Bene.¹ Animum² vestrum probō. Num vōs hōs puerōs probātis? (One answers) Minimē. Nōs iīs adversi sumus. Sed cum tū modo Sextum audiēbās, nōs nōn aderāmus. Nec quisquam³ aderat amīcōrum Sexti, nec quicquam aliud auxili.⁴ Sōlus erat cum iīs puerīs quī eum lacessēbant.

4. (The teacher) Auxilium vestrum contrā hōs quoque puerōs petō. Nam id quod ūnī discipulō nocet, cuique discipulō nocet. Itaque schola iniūriam iterum accipit. Vel hoc vel illud mihi displicet. Manet incommodum⁵ scholae.

205.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Sextus, why were you crying just-now? 2. (Sextus is silent) Why don't you answer? Is your memory so bad? 3. (Sextus) I was (being) worried by certain big boys, and I wished⁶ to be heard. 4. (Teacher) You were certainly (being) well heard.

5. (To the whole school) Certain of you⁷ were recently throwing pebbles at fellow-pupils. 6. Now a new game begins, and our trouble remains. 7. Some⁸ of you are worrying our little boys. 8. This spirit does not please me, nor does any⁹ (one) of you¹⁰ approve it.

9. Therefore I again say to each of you who is doing these things: 10. You are injuring the school; either stop or leave¹¹ it. 11. To the rest who are-present I say: Give me your aid against the¹² boys who are doing these-things. 12. The victory will be yours.

¹ *Very well.*

² *Spirit, feeling.*

³ *Why is quisquam chosen?*

⁴ *Nor anything else of help, nor any other help. What kind of Genitive is auxili?*

⁵ *Trouble remains for the school.*

⁶ = *was wishing.* State of Affairs.

⁷ Read 202, b again.

⁸ Use nōnnūllī (Plural).

⁹ What pronoun after a negative?

¹⁰ Use vestrum, Gen. Pl.

¹¹ Say "depart from it."

¹² Means "those boys who."

LESSON XXVIII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

206. FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

in -e-

Active

1st Sing. tegam

capiam

2d " tegēs

capiēs

3d " teget

capiet

1st Pl. tegēmus

capiēmus

2d " tegētis

capiētis

3d " tegent

capiant

Passive

1st Sing. tegar

capiar

2d " tegēris or -re

capiēris or -re

3d " tegētur

capiētur

1st Pl. tegēmur

capiēmur

2d " tegēminī

capiēminī

3d " tegentur

capiantur

FOURTH CONJUGATION

in -ī-

audiam

audiēs

audiet

audiēmus

audiētis

audient

audiar

audiēris or -re

audiētur

audiēmur

audiēminī

audientur

a. Remember now that, in the formation of the Future, the four Conjugations *divide in the middle*, the First and Second forming it in -bō, -bis, -bit, etc., the Third and Fourth in -am, -ēs, -et, etc. Thus:

	PRESENT	INFINITIVE	FUTURE
I	amō	amāre	amābō
II	moneō	monēre	monēbō
III	tegō capiō	tegere capere	tegam capiam
IV	audiō	audīre	audiam

207. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN **aliquis**, *some, any*

	AS ADJECTIVE			AS SUBSTANTIVE	
	SINGULAR				
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	aliquis	aliquid
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod	aliquem	aliquid
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō

PLURAL (same for Substantive and Adjective)

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Note that **aliquis** is declined like **quis** (184), except that in the Nom. Fem. Sing. and Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl. it has the regular ending **-a**, not the special pronominal ending **-ae**.

b. An indefinite pronoun **quis**, to be used later (397) is declined like the **quis** at the end of **ali-quis**.

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

208. Specimen Sentences:

Memoria huius victōriae diū manēbit, *the memory of this victory will long remain.*

Hī puerī pugnae cupidī sunt, *these boys are desirous of a fight.*

a. In both sentences, the Genitives really express an *Object*. The meaning in the first is that people will long *remember* the victory, and in the second, that these boys *desire* a fight. **Pugnae cupidī sunt** really means the same thing as **pugnam cupiunt**.

Hence we may lay down the rule:

209. *The Genitive may be used Objectively with many Nouns and Adjectives, or Participles used as Adjectives (Objective Genitive).*

210.

VOCABULARY

aliter, Adv., *otherwise, differently*. (Cf. *alius*.)

aliquis (207), Indefinite Pronoun, *some, any one, any*.

dēfendō, -ere, 3, *defend*.

diū, Adv., *for a long time, long*.

resistō, -sistere, 3, *resist*. (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)

sententia, -ae, F. 1, *feeling, idea, view*. (Cf. *sentiō* below.)

sentiō, -ire, 4, *perceive* (by the senses); *feel, think*.

211.

READING MATTER

1. (A friend to one of the teasers) *Tū modo dīcēbās, "mihi placet puerōs parvōs lacessere, iisque flēre nōn nocet."* Ego *aliter sentiō*; atque *tū ipse, si in istā manēbis sententiā, aliter sentiēs*; aut in *hāc scholā diū nōn manēbis*.

2. *Pueri parvi tibi cēdunt, quia tē timent. Sed Mārcus atque quīdam amīci eius tē nōn timēbunt. Pugnae cupidī nōn sunt; sed, tū si perseverābis, tibi resistent. Si aliquem tū discipulum lacessēs, eum Mārcus atque reliquī contrā tē dēfendent. Nec victōria tua erit.*

3. *Hī sine ūllō periculō pugnābunt. Si aliqua pugna ā magistrō audiētur, Mārcus iterum laudābitur, tū ex scholā pellēris. Memoria istius incommodī tibi nocēbit.* (Ans.) *Si aliquem ego lacessere cupiam, lacessam. Nec quemquam vestrum timeō.*

212.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Mark to the above) Why do you worry these little boys? It is a misfortune for the school. 2. (Ans.) Because it pleases me to do so. 3. (Mark) You will soon feel differently. 4. They do not resist you, because they fear to fight. 5. I am not desirous of a fight, but I shall not yield to you. 6. This is *my* idea.

7. Listen to (hear) me. 8. If any pupil shall do anything against the reputation of the school, I shall be his enemy (an enemy to him). 9. If any one shall do any wrong to any pupil, I shall defend that pupil.

10. Nor will any-one help you. 11. The victory will be mine, the memory of the wrong will long be yours.

LESSON XXIX

INFLECTION OF THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

213. 1. The Personal Pronouns indicate the speaker, the person spoken to, or the person (or thing) spoken of. Thus, *tū mē amās, you love me, tū eum amās, you love him.*

a. We have already had all of the forms of these Pronouns, except certain Genitives in -ī.

2. The Reflexive Pronouns *refer back* to the subject of the verb. Thus, *ego mē amō, I love myself, tū tē amās, you love yourself, is sē amat, he loves himself.*

a. The forms of these two kinds of Pronouns are in Latin largely similar, and they are therefore given below in immediate succession.

214. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS (*I, you, he, she, or it*)

	First	Second	Third
		SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	is, ille, hic, or iste,
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	he, etc. (declined in
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	153, 145, and a,
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	166)
<i>Voc.</i>	—	tū	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrum or nostrī	vestrum or vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vōs	
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	

a. The Genitive forms in **-um** are Genitives of the Whole, while those in **-i** are Objective Genitives. Thus:

multī vestrum, *many of you.*

memoria vestrī, *the memory of you.*

215. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (*myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, etc.*)

	First	Second	Third
		SINGULAR	
Gen.	meī, <i>of myself</i>	tuī, <i>of yourself</i>	suī, <i>of himself, herself, or itself</i>
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
		PLURAL	
Gen.	nostrī, <i>of ourselves</i>	vestrī, <i>of yourselves</i>	suī, <i>of themselves</i>
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

216. The Possessive Adjectives, Personal and Reflexive, are:

1. Personal Possessive Adjectives:

1st Person, **meus**, *my* (for ego); **noster**, *our* (for nōs).

2d Person, **tuus**, *thy, your* (for tū); **vester**, *your* (for vōs).

3d Person, supplied by the Genitive of is, ille, hic, or iste

Victōria mea magna est, *my victory is great.*

Victōria tua magna est, *your victory is great.*

Victōria eius magna est, *his victory is great.*

2. Reflexive Possessive Adjectives:

1st Person } Same as the *Personal Possessive Adjectives*
2d Person }

3d Person, **suus**, *his, theirs, etc.* (same for Singular and Plural)

Ego meum filium amō, *tū tuum*, *I love my son, you (love) yours.*

Nostrum filium amāmus, *we love our son.*

Filium suum cūr laudat? *why does he praise his son?*

Filium suum cūr laudant? *why do they praise their son?*

217.

VOCABULARY

dictum, -ī, N. 2, *saying, word.*glōria, -ae, F. 1, *glory.*maleficium, -ī, N. 2 (cf. male and faciō), *wrong-doing.*postea (post+ea) Adv., *after that, afterward* (opposite of antea).prohibeo, -ere, 2, *prohibit, prevent, keep (from).*servo, -are, 1, *preserve, save, guard, keep.*sui, *of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.*suus, -a, -um, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*vincō, -ere, 3 (cf. victōria), *vanquish, conquer, win.*

218.

READING MATTER

1. (Mark to one of the little boys) Cūr nōn tē dēfendis? Tū sī resistēs, ego tē iuvābō.

2. (The teacher, to Mark and his backers) Vōs vincētis. Memoria vestrī dictōrumque vestrōrum hōs puerōs ā maleficiō prohibēbit. Sē contrā vōs nōn dēfendent, sed ex periculō sē servābunt; nam vērae pugnae nōn cupidī sunt, nec cupiunt ā condiscipulīs suis culpārī. Vōbīs nōn resistant. Quam diū¹ hīc manēbitis, nūllum puerum laceissent. Sī aliquī puerī parvī postea laceissentur, aliī puerī magnī idem facient quod vōs nunc facitis. Ita vestra victōria iniūriam scholae in glōriam vertet.

3. (Mark) Sententia tua nōbīs grāta est, multī enim nostrum idem sentiunt.² Sed aliī ūnam et alteram³ pugnam expectant.

219.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (One of the small boys) If anybody attacks me I shall defend myself. 2. Mark will help me after-that.

3. (One of his backers, to Mark) I expect no fight. 4. The memory either of you or of the master's words will keep these boys from wrong-doing. 5. They will feel their danger, and will wish to save themselves. 6. You will conquer. 7. (Another says) If anyone shall do otherwise he will hurt himself.⁴ 8. We shall turn the injury of the school into (its) glory.

¹ (As) long as.

³ One and another = one or two.

² Feel the same thing = have the same feeling.

⁴ Use sē, not ipse. Ipse is intensive, not reflexive.

LESSON XXX

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

220. The Perfect stems of different words are formed in different ways, but the final *endings* are always the same. Thus *amāvī* (from *amō*), *monuī* (from *moneō*), *cēpī* (from *capiō*), *fuī* (from *sum*).

	<i>I have loved, or I loved</i>	<i>I have warned, or I warned</i>	<i>I have taken, or I took</i>	<i>I have been, or I was</i>	PERFECT ENDINGS
<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>monuī</i>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>fuī</i>	-ī
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāvistī</i>	<i>monuistī</i>	<i>cēpistī</i>	<i>fuistī</i>	-istī
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāvit</i>	<i>monuit</i>	<i>cēpit</i>	<i>fuit</i>	-it
<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>amāvimus</i>	<i>monuimus</i>	<i>cēpimus</i>	<i>fuimus</i>	-imus
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāvistis</i>	<i>monuistis</i>	<i>cēpistis</i>	<i>fuistis</i>	-istis
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāvērunt</i>	<i>monuērunt</i>	<i>cēpērunt</i>	<i>fuērunt</i>	-ērunt
	<i>or -ēre</i>	<i>or -ēre</i>	<i>or -ēre</i>	<i>or -ēre</i>	<i>or -ēre</i>

a. Similarly inflect *flēvī* (from *fleō*), *habuī* (from *habeō*), *prohibuī* (from *prohibeō*), *placuī* (from *placeō*), *mānsī* (from *maneō*), *dēfendī* (from *dēfendō*), *vertī* (from *vertō*), *vīcī* (from *vincō*), *iūvī* (from *iuvō*), *fēcī* (from *faciō*).

MEANINGS OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE

221. The Perfect has two distinct forces:

1. It may represent the act as in a finished state ("perfect") at the time of speaking ("present"), as in English "I have warned you." So used it is called the Present Perfect.¹

2. It may simply throw the act vaguely back into the past, as in "I warned you." So used it is called the Aoristic Perfect.²

¹ It is also called the "Perfect Definite," but less exactly.

² It is also called the "Perfect Indefinite."

222.

VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, 1 (ad, strengthen-
ing, + iuvō, help), *assist, aid*.
cōservō, -āre, Perfect cōser-
vāvī, 1 (con-, strengthening, +
servō, save), *save, preserve*.
prīstinus, -a, -um, *pristine*,
former.

socius, -i, M. 2, *associate, ally*.
tamen, Conj., *still, nevertheless*,
yet.
temerārius, -a, -um, *rash*,
thoughtless.
temerē, Adv., *rashly, thought-*
lessly.

Add also the Perfect forms learned in 220 and a.

223.

READING MATTER

(The Perfects here all have Present Perfect meaning.)

1. (His chief backer, to Mark) Tū vīcistī; neque fuit pugna ūlla. Fāmam malam scholae in glōriam vertistī. (Mark) Nōn ego vīcī, sed nōs vīcimur. Nec sōlī id nōs fēcimus. Sociōs habuimus, quōrum quisque nōs adiuvāre parātus erat.

2. (The teacher to the allied boys) Quod vōs fēcistis, id nōn minus mihi quam vōbīs placuit. Scholae bonam fāmam contrā puerōs temerāriōs dēfendistis ac cōservāvistis. Memoria victōriae vestrae diū manēbit. (Mark answers) Hī discipulī temerē haec fēcērunt, malī tamen nōn sunt. In sententiā prīstinā suā nōn mānsērunt, sed sēsē ā maleficiō prohibuērunt.

224.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The teacher to the beaten boys) You have not continued in your former way-of-thinking. 2. (One answers) Mark and his allies have conquered. They have kept us from wrong-doing. 3. Nor does this please any one more than us. 4. We have been thoughtless, but we ourselves wish to aid the school, and preserve its good reputation.

5. (The teacher sums up) These boys have acted¹ rashly. 6. Still they censure themselves. 7. They will both remain in the school, and will keep² from wrong-doing.

¹ Say "have done these things."

² Say "keep themselves."

LESSON XXXI

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—THE
PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

225. The Perfect Indicative Active is formed in six different ways, namely in:

1. -vī, as in amā-v-ī, from amō.
2. -uī, as in mon-u-ī, from moneō.
3. -sī, as in măn-s-ī, from maneō.
4. -ī, with reduplication, as in ded-ī, from dō.
5. -ī, with lengthened penult, as in iuv-ī, from iuvō.
6. -ī, without change, as in vert-ī, from vertō.

a. The -ī is the Ending, the rest is the Perfect Stem.

b. The -s- of -s-ī often affects a preceding consonant. Thus cēdō, cessī (for ced-sī); tegō, tēxī (for tēc-sī, from tēg-sī).

THE PARTICIPLE

226. A Participle is a Verbal Adjective. Thus *loving* (Present Active), *loved* (Perfect Passive).

a. As an Adjective, a Participle belongs to a Substantive and agrees with it. As a Verb, it expresses Tense and Voice, may govern a Case, and may be modified by an Adverb.

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

227. 1. The Perfect Passive Participle expresses an act as *suffered by* a person or thing ("passive"), and as in a *finished state* ("perfect"). Thus *monitus, having been warned*, or (simply) *warned*. It is declined like *bonus*.

2. The Perfect Passive Participle bears a general relationship in form to the Perfect Indicative Active. It normally ends in -tus. Thus amā-tus, *having been loved*, or (simply) *loved*.

a. The -t- of the ending -tus often affects a preceding consonant, and sometimes both are affected. Thus tegō, tēctus (for tēg-tus); cēdō, cessum (for ced-tum).

b. A number of verbs (as we shall see later, 400), can have only the *Neuter* of this participle. Hence in a list it is more practical to give the neuter form for *all* verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

228. The Parts of a Verb from which all others may be formed are called the Principal Parts. These are:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
			(Neuter; see <i>b</i> above)
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum, <i>love.</i>
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum, <i>warn.</i>
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum, <i>cover.</i>
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum, <i>take.</i>
audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum, <i>hear.</i>

229. LIST OF REGULAR VERBS THUS FAR USED WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS AS ABOVE

(For Study and Reference)

1. Perfect in -vī:

amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum,	<i>love.</i>
ambulō	ambulāre	ambulāvī	ambulātum,	<i>walk</i>

Similarly cēnō, culpō, dēsiderō, exspectō, habitō, labōrō, laudō, parō, persevērō, probō, properō, pugnō, servō and cōservō, vocō.

audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum,	<i>hear.</i>
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītum,	<i>desire.</i>
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētum,	<i>weep.</i>
laccessō	laccessere	laccessīvī	laccessītum,	<i>worry.</i>
petō	petere	petīvī	petītum,	<i>aim at.</i>
sciō	scire	scīvī	scītum,	<i>know.</i>

2. Perfect in -uī:

moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum,	<i>warn.</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum,	<i>have.</i>
prohibeō	prohibēre	prohibuī	prohibitum,	<i>prohibit.</i>
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum,	<i>injure.</i>
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitum,	<i>please.</i>
displiceō	displicēre	displicuī	displicitum,	<i>displease.</i>
studeō	studēre	studuī	(lacking)	<i>be zealous for.</i>
timeō	timēre	timuī	"	<i>fear.</i>

3. Perfect in -sī:

cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum,	<i>yield.</i>
discēdō	discēdere	discessī	discessum,	<i>depart.</i>
dīcō	dīcere	dixī	dictum,	<i>say.</i>
manēō	manēre	mānsī	mānsūm,	<i>remain.</i>
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum,	<i>rule.</i>
sentīō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsūm,	<i>feel.</i>
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum,	<i>cover.</i>

4. Perfect in -ī, with reduplication:

dō	dare	dedī	datum,	<i>give.</i>
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsum,	<i>drive.</i>

5. Perfect in -ī, with lengthened vowel in penult:

iuvō	iuvāre	iūvī	iūtum,	<i>help.</i>
adiuvō	adiuvāre	adiūvī	adiūtum,	<i>aid.</i>
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum,	<i>favor.</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsum,	<i>see.</i>
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victum,	<i>conquer.</i>
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum,	<i>take.</i>
accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptum,	<i>accept.</i>
incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptum,	<i>begin.</i>
faciō	facere	fēcī	factum,	<i>make.</i>
iaciō	iacere	iēcī	iactum,	<i>throw.</i>

6. Perfect in -ī, without change in penult:

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsūm,	<i>defend.</i>
respondeō	respondēre	respondī	respōnsūm,	<i>answer</i>
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum,	<i>turn.</i>

230.

VOCABULARY

(From here on, the Principal Parts of new verbs will be given in full.)

dē (same word as before, with Abl. of starting-point of the thought), <i>concerning, about.</i>	māne, Adv., <i>in the morning.</i>
inquit, <i>says he, or said he.</i> Used in direct quotation, and always follows one or more words.	nihil, indeclinable, Neut. Noun, <i>nothing.</i>
invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātum, 1, <i>invite; attract.</i>	periculōsus, -a, -um, <i>full-of-danger, dangerous.</i>
	veniō, venīre, venī, ventum, 4, <i>come.</i>
	verbum, -ī, N. 2, <i>word.</i>

231.

READING MATTER

(The Perfects here still have Present Perfect meaning.)

1. (The teacher) *Mārcus eiusque socii mē adiūverunt. Ii quī Sextum lacessiverunt, nōn temerē in pristinō maleficiō mānsērunt, sed sēsē cōservāverunt. In scholā manēbunt. Ipse Sextus, ab hīs diū lacessitus, tamen iīs inimicus nōn est. Haec mihi magnopere placuerunt.*

2. (Sextus has stayed away from Mark's picnic in the woods. Mark says) *Sextus nōn vēnit. Viditne eum aliquis? Ā mē hodiē māne invitātus, tamen abest. (One of the boys) Ego eum vīdī. (Mark) Ubi erat? Quid faciēbat? (Ans.) In villā suā manēbat. (Mark) Quid erat causae?¹ (Ans.) Ab aliquō agricolā monitus, venīre timēbat. (Mark) Quid dē nostrā cēnā dicēbat agricola? (Ans.) "Temerārius," inquit, "es. Silva periculōsa est." (Mark) Nihil hīc est periculōsi.² Hic agricola Sextō verba dedit.³*

232.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (A friend goes to get Sextus) Hasn't Mark invited you to our dinner? 2. (Sextus) Yes. He has invited me. 3. (First speaker) Why, having-been-invited by him, have you nevertheless not come? 4. (Ans.) I have not come, having-been-warned about the forest this morning by a certain farmer. 5. (First speaker) What was the farmer saying to you? 6. (Sextus) "These boys are rash," said he. "The forest is dangerous." 7. (First speaker) Are these his words? (Sextus) These are his very⁴ words. 8. (First speaker) Have you yourself ever seen anything⁵ (of) dangerous in this forest? I have seen nothing. 9. That farmer has certainly fooled⁶ you.⁶ 10. Come now to our supper.

¹ *What (of) reason?* Genitive of the Whole.

² *Nothing (of) dangerous.*

³ = *has fooled Sextus.*

⁴ Use *ipse*, *very*.

⁵ Use *quisquam* (in Neuter), because of implied negative.

⁶ Cf. footnote 3.

LESSON XXXII

FORMATION AND USE OF THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

233. 1. The Future Active Participle is formed with the ending **-tūrus**, and is declined like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**. The stem generally follows that of the Perfect Passive Participle, with the same changes, if there are any, in the **-t** (cf. **227, a**).

a. Practically, then, we may form the Future Active Participle of most verbs by simply changing **-us** of the Perfect Passive Participle to **-ūrus**. Thus **amātus**, **amātūrus**; **monitus**, **monitūrus**; **audītus**, **auditūrus**; **pulsus**, **pulsūrus**.

2. The Future Active Participle represents an act as *intended* or *impending*.

a. Its regular use is in the Predicate with some form of the verb **sum**. Thus **tē monitūrus sum**, *I am going to warn you*.

b. This combination of the Future Active Participle with **sum** is very nearly equivalent to a Future Indicative (just as "I am going to warn you" is very near to "I shall warn you"). Hence it is called the Periphrastic Future (= *round-about* Future).

234. A few verbs lack the Perfect Passive Participle, but have the Future Active, which will be given in their Principal Parts. Thus:

sum	esse	fuī	futūrus,	<i>be.</i>
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsūrus,	<i>fall.</i>
fugiō	fugere	fugī	fugitūrus,	<i>flee.</i>
dēsistō	dēsistere	dēstitī	dēstitūrus,	<i>desist.</i>
resistō	resistere	restitī	restitūrus,	<i>resist.</i>
stō	stāre	stetī	stātūrus,	<i>stand.</i>

a. Compounds are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed. Thus **absum**, **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**.

235.

VOCABULARY

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,
4 (con-+veniō), *come together,
meet.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2,
teach, inform, tell, show.

eō, Adv., *thither, to that place.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ex-
plore, reconnoiter; find out.*

herī, Adv., *yesterday.*

hōra, -ae, F. 1, *hour.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit.*

Iūlius, -ī, M. 2, *Julius, a name.*

locus, -ī, M. 2, *place.* Pl. loca,
locōrum, N. 2.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *an-
nounce, tell.*

prope, Prep., *near*, taking Acc.
of Space-Relation.

statuō, statuere, statuī, statu-
tum, 3, *set up; decide* (set up
in one's mind).

tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2, *tent.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be
strong or powerful, be well.*

236.

READING MATTER

(The Perfects here are partly Present Perfects, partly Aorists.)

Aliquid novī¹ tibi nūntiātūrus sum. Ego et Iūlius² in
silvā prope scholam in idōneō locō tabernāculum statūtūrī
sumus. Loca propinqua herī explōrāvimus. Nihil vidimus
periculōsī. Locus ipse ubi tabernāculum est stātūrum pulcher
est. Eō saepe vel māne vel post scholae hōrās convenient amīcī
ā nōbīs invītātī. Tē invītāre statuimus. Aliōs nunc dē hōc
tabernāculō doctūrus sum. Valē.³ (The hearer congratulates
himself) "Tē," inquit, "invītāre statuimus." Haec Sextī ipsa
verba sunt. Beātus sum.

237.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Julius has just-now announced some news¹ to me. 2. He
and Sextus are going-to-set-up a tent in the forest near the
school. 3. They explored the neighborhood⁴ yesterday, and
saw nothing dangerous. 4. The tent is going-to-stand in a
suitable place. 5. They are going-to-inform their friends about
it, and these will often meet there,⁵ either after school hours or
in-the-morning. 6. They have decided to invite us too. Good-
bye. 7. (The hearer) Many will come without⁶ invitation.⁶

¹ Something (of) new = some news.

² Latin order is: 1st Person, 2d, 3d.

³ Be well, = farewell, good-bye.

⁴ Say "places near."

⁵ Say "come together thither."

⁶ Say "not invited."

LESSON XXXIII

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

238. The Past Perfect Indicative Active is formed by adding *-eram*, etc. (seen in the Imperfect of *sum*, 144) to the Perfect Stem. Thus:

	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>I had warned</i>	<i>I had taken</i>	<i>I had been</i>	ENDINGS
<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>amāveram</i>	<i>monueram</i>	<i>cēperam</i>	<i>fueram</i>	<i>-eram</i>
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāverās</i>	<i>monuerās</i>	<i>cēperās</i>	<i>fuerās</i>	<i>-erās</i>
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāverat</i>	<i>monuerat</i>	<i>cēperat</i>	<i>fuerat</i>	<i>-erat</i>
<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>amāverāmus</i>	<i>monuerāmus</i>	<i>cēperāmus</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāverātis</i>	<i>monuerātis</i>	<i>cēperātis</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>	<i>-erātis</i>
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāverant</i>	<i>monuerant</i>	<i>cēperant</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>-erant</i>

239. The Past Perfect represents an act as already in a finished state ("Perfect") at some past time ("Past"). It thus also implies that the performance of the act had preceded that time. Thus:

Tē monueram, I had warned you (act previously performed).

240.

VOCABULARY

<i>at</i> , Conj., <i>but, yet</i> . Of contrast or objection.	<i>forte</i> , Adv., <i>by chance, perhaps</i> .
<i>autem</i> , Conj., postpos., <i>on the other hand, but, however; now</i> . Of contrast, but not so strong as <i>at</i> .	<i>longē</i> , Adv., <i>far</i> (cf. <i>longus</i>).
<i>colō</i> , <i>colere</i> , <i>coluī</i> , <i>cultum</i> , 3, <i>cultivate</i> .	<i>longus</i> , -a, -um, <i>long</i> .
<i>dēfatigō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (<i>dē</i> , intensive, + <i>fatigō</i> , <i>fatigue</i>), <i>fatigue, tire out</i> .	<i>paulisper</i> , Adv., <i>a little (while), for a little (while)</i> .
<i>dēnique</i> , Adv., <i>finally, at last</i> .	<i>prōcēdō</i> , -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, <i>proceed, advance</i> .
	<i>propter</i> , <i>along, beside; on account of</i> . Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.
	<i>quattuor</i> , indeclinable, Adj., <i>four</i> .

241.

READING MATTER

(An Adventure of the Small Boys)

(Julius's father asks) *Nōn valētis, filiī meī? Aut forte nimis impigrē hodiē in scholā studuistis? Quid est?*¹ *Mihi respondēte.* (Julius) *Herī tabernāculum, quod tū nōbīs dederās, in idōneō locō in silvā prope scholam statuimus. Eō hodiē bene māne² ante scholae hōram vēnimus. Quattuor condiscipulī, ā nōbīs invītātī, ad eundem locum vēnerant. Nōn diū mānsūrī erāmus.*

Mox autem ūnus ex discipulīs, "Quid," inquit, "sī paulisper in silvā ambulābimus, eamque explōrābimus?" Alius "id laudō,"³ inquit. Cūctī⁴ probāvimus. At mox longē prōcesserāmus. Eum locum ubi tum erāmus numquam antea viderāmus. Magnopere timēbāmus.⁵ Dēnique agricolam vidimus, quī tum forte agrum propter silvam colēbat. Is nōs dē viā docuit. At haec longa fuit. Propter hoc iam dēfatigātī erāmus, cum magister nōs in scholam vocāvit.

242.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Continuation) Finally the teacher said: "Aren't you well? You are not already tired out, are you? 2. Where were you, Julius, when I called you?" (Julius) I was in the road. 3. (Master) Where had you been before-that? (Ans.) I had walked a-little-while in the woods. 4. (Master) Had you perhaps gone (= proceeded) far? (Ans.) I had gone *too* far.

5. A farmer who was cultivating a field beside the wood told me about the way. It was (a) long (one). 6. (Master) Had you walked with others? Why don't you answer? 7. (One of the four) We had all four walked in the woods. 8. (Master) I am not going-to-chide you, but this I will say: 9. It pleases me when you walk in the woods; it does not please me, however, when you walk there *before* the school⁶ hour.

¹ *What is the matter?*² *Well early = early in the morning.*³ *= that's a good idea.*⁴ *Nom.; hence goes with Subject.*⁵ *We were much frightened.*⁶ *Say, "hour of school."*

LESSON XXXIV

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

243. The Future Perfect Indicative Active is formed by adding *-erō*, etc. (seen in the Future of *sum*, 157) to the Perfect Stem. But the 3d Person Plural ends in *-erint*, not *-erunt*.

	<i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>I shall have warned</i>	<i>I shall have taken</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	ENDINGS
<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>amāverō</i>	<i>monuerō</i>	<i>cēperō</i>	<i>fuerō</i>	<i>-erō</i>
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāveris</i>	<i>monueris</i>	<i>cēperis</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>-eris</i>
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāverit</i>	<i>monuerit</i>	<i>cēperit</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>-erit</i>
<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>amāverimus</i>	<i>monuerimus</i>	<i>cēperimus</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāveritis</i>	<i>monueritis</i>	<i>cēperitis</i>	<i>fueritis</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāverint</i>	<i>monuerint</i>	<i>cēperint</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	<i>-erint</i>

a. The Future Perfect represents an act as in a finished state ("Perfect") at a future time ("Future"). It thus also implies that the performance of the act will have preceded that time.

244.

VOCABULARY

<i>aliquot</i> , indecl. Adj., <i>some, several</i> .	<i>gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum</i> , 3, <i>carry, bear; carry on, wage, manage</i> (e. g., a business, a war, etc.); <i>do</i> .
<i>annus</i> , -ī, M. 2, <i>year</i> .	<i>negōtium</i> , -ī, N. 2, <i>business, occupation</i> .
<i>cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōnfectum</i> , 3 (<i>con-+faciō, do thoroughly</i>), <i>finish, complete</i> .	<i>nisi</i> , Conj. (<i>ni</i> , a negative particle, + <i>sī</i> , if=if not), <i>unless; without a verb=except</i> .
<i>cōstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum</i> , 3 (stronger than <i>statuō</i>), <i>establish, place; determine</i> .	<i>nōndum</i> , Adv. (<i>nōn</i> , not, + <i>dum</i> , the while=not the while), <i>not yet</i> .
<i>discō, discere, didicī, —, 3, learn</i> .	<i>Servius</i> , -ī, M. 2, <i>Servius</i> , a name.
<i>efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum</i> , 3 (<i>ex+faciō</i>), <i>make out, accomplish, bring about</i> .	<i>spatium</i> , -ī, N. 2, <i>space, distance; period</i> (of time).
<i>excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum</i> , 3 (<i>ex+cēdō</i>), <i>come out</i> (of), <i>leave, withdraw</i> .	<i>subitō</i> , Adv., <i>suddenly</i> .

245.

READING MATTER

1. (Mark remonstrates with a schoolmate) Quid tū, Servi, cōstituistī facere? Cum hōs quattuor annōs cōnfēceris, quid dēnique effēceris? Multī nostrum aliquid certē didicerimus; tū autem nōn longē prōcesseris. Nihil bene colueris, nisi lūdōs. (Ans.) Ad¹ negōtium satis forte didicerō. (Mark) Minimē. Per longum annōrum spatium piger fueris. At impiger vir, nōn piger, bene negōtium gerit. Tū, cum paulisper labōrāvistī, subitō dēfatigātus es.

2. (The teacher to a father) Filiī tuī in studiis nōn longē prōcesserint, cum ex scholā excēdent. Per quattuor annōs pigri fuerint. Propter hoc ad negōtium parātī nōndum erunt. (The father, to these sons) Cum post hōs quattuor annōs negōtium gerere incipiētis, labōrāre nōn didiceritis.

246.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. You have finished several years in school; but you have not learned anything, except sports. 2. (Ans.) On this account,² I am going-to-cultivate studies vigorously for-a-little-while. 3. I shall at-any-rate have accomplished something when I leave³ the school.

4. Servius has suddenly determined to work vigorously. 5. He will not proceed far, however. 6. When he leaves³ the school, he will be prepared for nothing, because he will not have learned to work.

7. Unless you work⁴ through this year, you will not be prepared for business. 8. (Ans.) I shall begin to work when I begin to carry³ on business. 9. (First speaker) You will not-yet have learned to work.

10. Many of these boys will have been lazy through⁵ a period of four years. 11. They will not then suddenly begin to work.

¹ Ad gains figurative meaning: *In the direction of=for.*

² Say "on account of this."

⁴ More exactly, "shall have worked."

³ Express the time more exactly.

⁵ Use *per* as above.

LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION IN
THE INDICATIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

247. The Perfect tenses of the Indicative Passive are compound forms, made from the Perfect Passive Participle, combined with the verb **sum** in the Present, Imperfect, or Future. Thus, from **moneō**:

Present Perfect **monitus sum**, *I have been warned.*

Past Perfect **monitus eram**, *I had been warned.*

Future Perfect **monitus erō**, *I shall have been warned.*

a. These meanings arose naturally out of the combinations. Thus, **monitus sum** meant originally, *I am a warned (man)*. But this, of course, implied the idea *I have been warned*.

b. The three tenses express *situation*, present, past, or future, resulting from the completion of an action. Compare the examples.

c. *The Participle of compound forms must agree with the Subject, like any other Participle.* Thus:

puer monitus est, *the boy has been warned.*

fēminae monitae sunt, *the women have been warned.*

dōna data sunt, *the gifts have been given.*

The forms may then be exhibited as follows:

248. THE PERFECT TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE
PASSIVE

	PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	<i>I have</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>I shall have</i>
	<i>been warned</i>	<i>been warned</i>	<i>been warned</i>
1st Sing.	monitus sum	monitus eram	monitus erō
2d "	" es	" erās	" eris
3d "	" est	" erat	" erit
1st Pl.	monitī sumus	monitī erāmus	monitī erimus
2d "	" estis	" erātis	" eritis
3d "	" sunt	" erant	" erunt

249. You may now easily form the Indicative tenses of completed action, Active and Passive, of any verb of which you know the Principal Parts. Thus, if you know the four parts *doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, teach*, you get:

	PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Active	docu-ī	docu-eram	docu-erō
Passive	doctus sum	doctus eram	doctus erō

a. Form now the three tenses of completed action, Active and Passive, for *amō, tegō, capiō*, and *audiō* (first saying the Principal Parts to yourself in each instance).

250. The Present Perfect Passive may of course be used with Aoristic force, just as the Present Perfect Active is. Thus, according to the context,

Monitus sum means either { *I have been warned* (Pres. Perfect), or
{ *I was warned* (Aoristic Perfect).

251. There are only three possible divisions of time, namely the past, the present, and the future.

a. A given act will appear differently according to the time with reference to which the speaker looks at it (that is, the *point of view*). Thus I may say, *I AM now BUILDING a house*, the point of view being the present time; but if by and by I think of the same act and the same time, I should say, *I WAS then BUILDING a house*, the point of view being now a *past* time.—Again, I should say, *I HAVE now BUILT a house*, but, later, thinking of the same time, *I HAD then BUILT a house*.

252.

VOCABULARY

bracchium, -ī, N. 2, <i>the arm</i> (strictly the fore-arm only).	firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>make firm, strengthen.</i>
cōsiliū, -ī, N. 2, <i>counsel, plan; judgment, wisdom; council.</i>	mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>change, alter.</i>
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2, <i>suffer, ache, grieve.</i>	proelium, -ī, N. 2, <i>battle.</i>
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2, <i>exercise, drill.</i>	sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, 3, <i>take up, take, assume.</i>
	triumphus, -ī, M. 2, <i>triumph.</i>

253.

READING MATTER

1. (*Point of View Past*) Filii mei spatium quattuor annōrum in studiis iam cōnfecerant, cum ex scholā excessērunt. Sed ab iis lūdī, nōn studia, semper culta erant. Propter hoc per aliquot annōs negōtium male gessērunt; nam labōrāre nōndum didicerant.

2. (*Point of View Present*) Multum¹ ā meis filiis in hīs annīs effectum est. Et bracchia et animi eōrum exercitī sunt.

3. (*Point of View Future*) Cum hī pueri quattuor annōs ad lūdōs sūmpserint, quid ab iis dēnique effectum erit? Bracchia eōrum firmāta erunt, animi autem nōn erunt firmatī. Nisi forte cōnsilia sua mox mūtāverint atque subitō cōstituerint labōrāre, ad negōtium idōneī nōn erunt. Tum vērō dolēbunt. Tum vērū incipiet proelium. Nullōs tum habēbunt triumphōs nisi ex animi diligentiā.

254.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

(*Point of View Past*) 1. Servius had at-that-time spent² four years in (his) studies. 2. But only games had been cultivated by him; his mind had not yet been strengthened. 3. On this account he managed business-affairs³ badly for several years.

(*Point of View Present*) 4. Several years have now been used up by you in (your) studies. 5. Has much been accomplished? (Ans.) Nothing has been accomplished. 6. This I see at last, and I have now determined to work.

(*Point of View Future*) 7. When you leave⁴ school, nothing will have been accomplished, unless perhaps you suddenly change⁴ your plans. 8. Your arms will have been exercised, your mind will not have been strengthened for⁵ the real battle. 9. Then, indeed, you will suffer. Then you will have no triumphs.

¹ Adjective used as noun, = *much*.

² "Spent" = "finished" (cōficiō).

³ Plural of negōtium.

⁴ Express time-idea exactly.

⁵ Use *ad*, as in the Latin above, third line from end.

LESSON XXXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS

255. In the Third Declension, the Stem ends in a Consonant, or in *-i*. Consonant Stems will be taken up first.

256. *rēx*, *king*, M. *mīles*, *soldier*, M. *caput*, *head*, N.

Stems	<i>rēg-</i>	<i>mīlit-</i>	<i>capit-</i>	Endings	
				M. and F. N.	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>-s or —</i>	<i>—</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>capitī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>-em</i>	<i>—</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>-s or —</i>	<i>—</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>
<i>Pl. , Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	<i>-um</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

257. *victor*, *victor*, M. *pater*, *father*, M. *rōbur*, *oak*, N.

Stems	<i>victōr-</i>	<i>patr-</i>	<i>rōbor-</i>	Endings	
				Same as above	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>rōbur</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>victōris</i>	<i>patris</i>	<i>rōboris</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>victōrī</i>	<i>patrī</i>	<i>rōborī</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>victōrem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	<i>rōbur</i>		
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>rōbur</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>victōre</i>	<i>patre</i>	<i>rōbore</i>		
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>rōbora</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>victōrum</i>	<i>patrum</i>	<i>rōborum</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	<i>rōboribus</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>rōbora</i>		
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>rōbora</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>	<i>rōboribus</i>		

258. Remarks on the Third Declension Nouns with Consonant Stems:

1. The stem is found by dropping *-is* of the Genitive Singular.
2. Masculine and Feminine Nouns are declined alike.
3. Neuters have no case-ending in the Nom.-Acc.-Voc. Singular.
4. With these facts in mind, you can decline any consonant-stem noun, after mastering the case-endings given above, if you know the *Nominative* and *Genitive* of that noun, and its *Gender*.

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR CONCERN

259. Specimen Sentence:

His pueris timeō, I am afraid for these boys.

a. Here the Dative expresses the persons to whom the act *refers*,—the persons whom it *concerns*. The construction may be used after any Verb. Hence we may state the rule, that:

260. *Any Verb may be followed by a Dative of the Person to whom the act or state Refers, or whom it Concerns.*

261.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N. 2 (not used in Sing.), *arms, weapons*.

caput, *capitis*, N. 3, *head*.

crēdō, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*, 3, *believe*. (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*, 3, *lead*.

ēligō, *ēligere*, *ēlēgī*, *ēlēctum*, 3 (*ē* + *legō*), *pick out, elect, choose*.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *command, order*. (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

inter, *between, among*. Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

legō, *legere*, *lēgī*, *lēctum*, 3, *pick, choose; read*.

lēx, *lēgis*, F. 3, *law, rule*.

mīles, *militis*, M. 3, *soldier*.

pater, *patris*, M. 3, *father*.

rēx, *rēgis*, M. 3, *king*.

rōbur, *rōboris*, N. 3, *oak*; figurative meaning, *strength*.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *simulate, pretend*.

unde, Adv., *from what, whence; out of what*.

victor, -ōris, M. 3, *victor, conqueror*.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wound*.

262.

READING MATTER

Bellum simulātum (pretended war, mock war) puerī ex scholā nostrā inter sē gestūrī sunt. Rēgēs ex discipulīs ēligentur. Hī

ex reliquīs discipulīs milītēs legent. Certae lēgēs¹ pugnae cōn-
stituentur.² Victōrēs dēnique rēgem victum in triumphō dūcent.
Rēgis victī milītēs, quaecumque iīs victor imperāverit,³ ea facient.
(Second speaker) Timeō hīs milītibus et hīs rēgibus, nisi cōn-
siliū mūtāverint; nec minus victōrī quam victō timeō rēgī.
Nam sī arma sūmpta erunt, aliquot puerī vulnerābuntur.
Bracchia iīs firmābuntur, sed capita post proelium dolēbunt.
(First speaker) Nōn crēdō.⁴ Dolitūra nōn sunt; nam arma quae
facient puerī periculōsa nōn erunt. (Second speaker) Unde⁵ ea
factūrī sunt? (Ans.) Ex rōbre. (Second speaker) Patrēsne
hōrum rēgum hōrumque milītum hoc cōnsiliū probābunt?
(Ans.) Certē. (Second speaker) Tibi nōn crēdō. Numquam
probābunt.

263.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Have you heard about the mock war which we are going
to wage among ourselves? (Ans.) I have heard nothing.
2. (First speaker) The boys are going-to-choose kings. By these
(kings) soldiers will be chosen. 3. (Second speaker) Who will
lead the soldiers? 4. (First speaker) The kings themselves will
command them; and, after the battle, the conqueror will lead the
conquered (king) in triumph. 5. (Second speaker) What⁶ shall
you make weapons out⁶ of? 6. (First speaker) We shall make
weapons of oak. 7. (Second speaker) Some of the boys will be
wounded. 8. I fear for your heads and arms. They will ache
for you after the battle. 9. (First speaker) I don't think so.⁴
We shall not aim-at heads. 10. (Second speaker) Will your
father approve-of this scheme? 11. (First speaker) If fixed
rules are established,⁷ he will approve.

¹ Fixed rules.² Will be established.³ Whatever (things) the victor
shall command (to) them.⁴ I don't believe it = I don't think so.⁵ Out of what? from what?⁶ Use unde.⁷ Look out for the time-relation.

LESSON XXXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS (Finished)

264.	sermō, talk, M.	multitūdō, multitude, F.	nōmen, name, N.	
<i>Stems</i>	sermōn-	multitūdin-	nōmin-	<i>Endings</i>
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	As
<i>Gen.</i>	sermōnis	multitūdinis	nōminis	already
<i>Dat.</i>	sermōnī	multitūdini	nōminī	given
<i>Acc.</i>	sermōnem	multitūdinem	nōmen	(256)
<i>Voc.</i>	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	
<i>Abl.</i>	sermōne	multitūdine	nōmine	
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> sermōnēs	multitūdiniēs	nōmina	
	<i>Gen.</i> sermōnum	multitūdinum	nōminum	
	<i>Dat.</i> sermōnibus	multitūdiniibus	nōminibus	
	<i>Acc.</i> sermōnēs	multitūdiniēs	nōmina	
	<i>Voc.</i> sermōnēs	multitūdiniēs	nōmina	
	<i>Abl.</i> sermōnibus	multitūdiniibus	nōminibus	
265.	pulvis, dust, M.	mōs, custom, M.	corpus, body, N.	
<i>Stems</i>	pulver-	mōr-	corpor-	<i>Endings</i>
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	pulvis	mōs	corpus	As
<i>Gen.</i>	pulveris	mōris	corporis	already
<i>Dat.</i>	pulverī	mōrī	corporī	given
<i>Acc.</i>	pulverem	mōrem	corpus	(256)
<i>Voc.</i>	pulvis	mōs	corpus	
<i>Abl.</i>	pulvere	mōre	corpore	
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
	<i>Gen.</i> pulverum	mōrum	corporum	
	<i>Dat.</i> pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	
	<i>Acc.</i> pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
	<i>Voc.</i> pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
	<i>Abl.</i> pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	

a. In Latin, *s* between two vowels regularly became *r*. Hence the change from the original *s*, preserved in the Nominative, to *-r* in the other cases. Such words are often called *s*-Stems.

266. NOTES ON CONSONANT STEMS (256, 257, 264, 265)

1. In the Masc.-Fem. Nom. Sing., sometimes the *s* is lacking,¹ sometimes the final consonant of the stem, and sometimes both. Thus *victor* (not *victōr-s*), *mīles* (not *mīlet-s*), *sermō* (not *sermōn-s*).

2. Before final *r* or *l*, a vowel suffers the regular shortening (100, 2). Thus *victor*, from *victōr*, Gen. *victōr-is*.

3. Otherwise vowels generally remain unchanged in length. Thus, *rēx* with long *e*, as in *rēg-is*.

267.**VOCABULARY**

apud, *at*, *among*; *at-the-house-of*.
Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

compleō, -*plēre*, -*plēvī*, -*plētum*,
2 (con-, intensive, +*pleō*,² fill),
fill thoroughly, fill up, fill.

corpus, -*oris*, N. 3, *body*.

excitō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, 1 (ex
+*citō*, rouse), *rouse up, raise*.

frāter, *frātris*, M. 3, *brother*.

honor, -*ōris*, M. 3, *honor*.

māter, *mātris*, F. 3, *mother*.

mōs, *mōris*, M. 3, *custom, habit*.

multitūdō, -*inis*, F. 3, *multitude*,
great number.

nōmen, *nōminis*, N. 3, *name*.

pēs, *pedis*,³ M. 3, *foot*.

pulvis, *pulveris*, M. 3, *dust*.

quamquam, Conj., *although*.

sermō, -*ōnis*, M. 3, *talk, conversation*.

sīc, Adv., *in this way, thus, so*.

soror, *sorōris*, F. 3, *sister*.

virtūs, -*tūtis*, F. 3, *manliness*,
courage, prowess (the quality
belonging to a *vir*).

268.**READING MATTER**

1. *Audīvistīne sermōnem discipulōrum?* *Tōtus dē armīs est.* *Multitūdō eōrum mōrēs vēri bellī apud sē⁴ ā patribus discunt,⁵* *quōrum nōnnūllī ipsī mīlītēs fuērunt.* *Nōmen mīlitis apud eōs magnō in honōre nunc est.* *Virtūtem laudant.* *Corpora sua exercent.* *In viā pulverem vidēs, quem pedēs eōrum excitāvērunt.* (Ans.) *Tibi crēdō.* *Servius, filius meus, iam victor est, quamquam is rēx⁶ neque elēctus est, neque umquam eligētur.* *Lēgēs*

¹ Hence the blank added to the -*s* in the scheme of endings, 256.

² *Pleō*, *fill*, appears only in compounds.

³ Note difference of quantity between Nominative and Genitive. (*Exception* tō 266, 3.)

⁴ *At-the-house-of themselves*=*at home*.

⁵ Plural, because *multitūdō* is plural in meaning (Collective Noun; cf. 31, a).

⁶ *Rēx* is in the Predicate, (*chosen king*).

ille cōstituit. Militēs sibi ex amīcīs legit.¹ Frātrēs parvōs suōs, cum sorōre parvā, in triumphō simulātō dūcit. Magnam inter eōs habet fāmam. Etiam mātīrī multa² imperat. Corpus suum exercet. Sonus armōrum tōtam villam complet. Caput mihi vērō dolet.³ (First speaker) Unde arma fēcērunt puerī? (Ans.) Ex rōbore. Rōbur nōn dūrum est. Tamen etiam sic multī vulnerābuntur.

269.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. There is war at my house⁴ between my father and my mother. 2. (Second speaker) I don't believe you. *They* never fight each other.⁵ 3. (Ans.) It is true. (Second speaker) Why are they fighting? 4. (Ans.) My father approves-of our mock war. 5. My little brothers and sisters, too, love the very name of soldier. 6. But my mother grieves. 7. Although she praises our courage, yet on account of our talk she fears for our bodies, and she fears for our habits also. 8. My father says: "War is always thus in honor among boys. 9. The feet of our school-boys will raise a dust, and the sound of arms will fill the streets for-a-little-while. 10. But bodies will be exercised and strengthened, and no⁶ soldier of the whole multitude will be wounded." 11. Nevertheless my mother resists.

¹ What tense? Notice the short e, and distinguish from *lēgit*.

² *Commands his mother many things,=gives many orders to his mother.* Why is *mātīrī* Dative?

³ *The head really aches for me,=my head really aches.*

⁴ See definition of *apud* in the Vocabulary.

⁵ Say "among themselves," as in 262.

⁶ "And no" is in Latin "nor any." Do you want *quisquam* or *ūllus*? See 199, a.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

270.

NEUTER i-STEMS

	insigne, signal, N.	animal, animal, N.	exemplar, pattern, N.	Endings
Stems	insigni-	animāli-	exemplāri-	
Sing. Nom.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Gen.	insignis	animālis	exemplāris	-is
Dat.	insignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Acc.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Voc.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Abl.	insignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Pl. Nom.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Gen.	insignium	animālium	exemplārium	-ium
Dat.	insignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus
Acc.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Voc.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Abl.	insignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus

271. MASCULINE AND FEM-
ININE i-STEMS

MIXED STEMS

(Mostly like Consonant Stems in
Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)(Consonant Stems in Sing.,
but i-Stems in Plural.)

finis, end, M. caedēs, slaughter, F. nox, night, F. gēns, race, F.

Stems	fini-	caedi-	noct- in Sing. nocti- in Pl.	gent- in Sing. genti- in Pl.
Sing. Nom.	finis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Gen.	finis	caedis	noctis	gentis
Dat.	finī	caedī	noctī	gentī
Acc.	finem	caedem	noctem	gentem
Voc.	finis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Abl.	fine	caede	nocte	gente
Pl. Nom.	finēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Gen.	finium	caedium	noctium	gentium
Dat.	finibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus
Acc.	finīs (-ēs)	caedis (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)	gentīs (-ēs)
Voc.	finēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Abl.	finibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus

272. NOTES ON THE i-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

1. Neuter i-Stems show the *-i-* throughout the Plural, and in the Ablative Singular (*-i*).¹

2. Most Masculine and Feminine i-Stems, together with Mixed Stems,² show the *-i-* only in the Plural, namely in Genitive *-ium* and Accusative *-īs* (with alternative *-ēs*).

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

273. In Latin, as in English, the *with*-idea is used to express not only Accompaniment, as in "I walk with a friend," but Means or Instrument, as in "I walk with a crutch" (= "by means of a crutch").

a. This construction has never taken on a preposition in Latin, the idea being expressed by the case alone. We may then say that:

274. *Means or Instrument may be expressed by the Ablative.*

Tē cōsiliō adiuvābō, I will help you with (or by) advice.
Armīs ex rōbore pugnāmus, we fight with weapons of oak.

275.

VOCABULARY

(The Genitive Plural will be added to mark i-Stems or Mixed Stems.)

animal, -ālis, -ium, N. 3, <i>animal</i> .	imāgō, imāginis, F. 3, <i>image, likeness, representation</i> .
barbarus, -a, -um, <i>barbarian</i> .	insigne, -is, -ium, N. 3, <i>decoration, badge, device; signal</i> .
caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3, <i>slaughter</i> .	nox, noctis, noctium, F. 3, <i>night</i> .
exemplar, -āris, -ārium, N. 3, <i>pattern</i> .	numerus, -ī, M. 2, <i>number</i> .
ferus, -a, -um, <i>fierce, wild</i> .	pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pīctum, 3, <i>paint</i> .
finis, -is, -ium, M. 3, <i>limit, end, boundary; in Pl., boundaries; hence territory</i> .	Rōmānus, -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .
galea, -ae, F. 1, <i>helmet</i> .	scūtum, -ī, N. 2, <i>shield</i> . A curved rectangle of wood and leather.
gēns, gentis, gentium, F. 3, <i>race</i> .	spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>look at, witness, watch</i> .
gladius, -ī, M. 2, <i>sword</i> .	
hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3, <i>enemy</i> .	

¹The *-i-* originally showed everywhere. Thus Nom. insigni, animāli.

²Many of the Mixed Stems were originally i-Stems, but came to be declined like Consonant Stems in the Singular. Of some the opposite is true. The two types, originally opposed, thus became alike.

276.

READING MATTER

1. (Sermō inter condiscipulōs). Mōs est militum in proeliō insignia in galeīs gerere. Māter sorōrēsque meae mihi nunc insigne faciunt. Exemplar ex insignī sūmpsērunt quod pater meus habet; nam ille antea miles fuit. Corpus meum scūtō magnō tegam, in quō imāginem animālis alicuius ferī pingam. Frātēs quoque mei parvī galeās et insignia sibi faciunt; quamquam hī spectābunt solum virtutem nostram, ipsī nōn pugnābunt. (Ans.) Multitūdō puerōrum quī nōs spectābunt viās complēbit, multumque¹ pedibus suis excitābunt pulveris.

Sed quibus tū armīs pugnātūrus es? (First speaker) Nōne arma Rōmāna scūta gladiūque sunt? Ego certē nōmen Rōmānī, nōn barbarī, militis mihi sūmam. Id solum in honōre apud nōs est. (Ans.) Ego tam Rōmānus sum quam tū. Sed quid si cūctī erimus ex Rōmānā gente? Contrā quōs tum hostis pugnābimus? Nōn magnus certē erit hostium numerus.

2. Quam diū hī puerī pugnābunt? (Ans.) Nox finem caedi faciet.

277.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Ques.) Of what fierce animal shall you paint an image on your shield? 2. (Ans.) I shall paint no² image of an animal on my shield; for I shall not be of any³ barbarian race. 3. Only barbarians fight thus with painted shields. 4. (Ques.) Shall you wear⁴ a decoration on your helmet? (Ans.) Certainly; although I haven't yet a pattern. I have made me a sword already. 5. I shall protect my body with this, not with my shield. 6. (Second speaker) I shall watch your prowess when the fight begins.

7. When night comes, we Romans shall put⁵ an end to the slaughter of the enemy. 8. Fortunate will be those-remaining. The number of these will not be large.

¹ Much—of what? Wait and see.

² Say "an image of no animal."

³ "Not of any" = "of no."

⁴ Say "bear."

⁵ Say "make."

LESSON XXXIX

EXCEPTIONAL I-STEMS

278. A few i-Stems preserve the i-Declension in the Singular, showing it in an Accusative **-im** (sometimes alongside of **-em**), or an Ablative **-ī** (sometimes alongside of **-e**), or in both cases. Thus:

	turris, tower, F.	ignis, fire, M.
<i>Stems</i>	turri-	igni-
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Gen.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Dat.</i>	turri	igni
<i>Acc.</i>	turrim (rarely -em)	ignem
<i>Voc.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Abl.</i>	turri or -e	igni or -e
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	turrēs	ignēs
<i>Gen.</i>	turrium	ignium
<i>Dat.</i>	turribus	ignibus
<i>Acc.</i>	turrīs or -ēs	ignīs or -ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	turrēs	ignēs
<i>Abl.</i>	turribus	ignibus

a. These exceptional words must be picked up individually.

On general principles, *if in doubt, decline any given Masc. or Fem. i-Stem or Mixed Stem as a Consonant Stem in the Singular and an i-Stem in the Plural* (i. e., with Acc. **-em** and Abl. **-e** in the Sing., and Gen. **-ium** and Acc. **-īs** or **-ēs** in the Pl.).

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

279. The Future Passive Participle is formed by adding **-ndus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the Present Stem. Thus:

CONJ. I	II	III	IV	
amandus	monendus	tegendus	capiendus	audiendus
<i>to be loved</i>	<i>to be warned</i>	<i>to be covered</i>	<i>to be taken</i>	<i>to be heard</i>

Example:

Haec pugna nunc pugnanda est, this fight is now to be fought.

280. The Future Passive Participle with *sum*, etc., early acquired the force of *Obligation, Propriety, or Necessity*; and this is the force regularly found in this combination. Thus:

Arma facienda sunt,	{	<i>arms are to be made, that is</i> <i>arms must be made, or</i> <i>arms have to be made, or</i> <i>there is an obligation or necessity for</i> <i>making arms.</i>
---------------------	---	---

a. This combination is often called the Periphrastic Future Passive.

b. The Future Passive Participle with *sum* is often accompanied by a *Dative*, which originally expressed the *Person Concerned* by the Obligation, Propriety, or Necessity, but has come to be in effect an expression of the *Agent*, as in :

Arma nobīs facienda sunt, *for us, there is an obligation to make arms; i. e., arms must be made BY us.*

We may now *sum up* the expression of the Agent as follows:

281. *The Agent of the Passive Voice is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. But the Dative is used to express the Agent with the Future Passive Participle.*

282.

VOCABULARY

fuga, -ae, F. 1, *flight*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.

homō, hominis, M. 3, *man*. (The ordinary word for a man merely as a human being, whereas vir implies a compliment.)

ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *fire*. (Abl. Sing. -ī or -e.)

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsū, 3, *set on fire*.

inveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, 4 (in + veniō, come upon), *find, discover; invent*.

ōs, ōris, N. 3, *mouth; face, countenance*.

pars, partis, partium, F. 3, *part; party, side* (in this sense either the Sing. or the Pl. may be used).

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, 2, *terrify, frighten*.

terror, terrōris, M. 3, *terror, fright*.

turris, -is, -ium, F. 3, *tower*.

vulnus, vulneris, N. 3 (cf. vulnerē), *wound*.

283.

READING MATTER

(Girl and Braggart Soldier)

1. Proelium ex villae meae turri spectābō. Sed tū Rōmānae an Gallicae eris partis? (The boy) Ego Gallicae gentis erō. Nam Gallī barbarī atque ferī sunt, et magnam gladiis suis faciunt caedem hominum. (The girl) Tum tibi Gallicum insigne in galeā gerendum est. Ubi exemplar inveniēs? (The boy) Mārci pater multa insignia in bellō cēpit. Ex hīs exemplaria sūmēmus. Ego etiam imāginem animālis alicuius ferī in scūtō meō pingam. Haec enim hostis terrōre complēbit. (The girl) Sed Gallōrum mōs est etiam ōra atque corpora sua in terrōrem¹ hostium pingere. Id tū factūrus es? (The boy) Crēdō. (The girl) Mātrem certē et frātrēs parvōs sorōrēsque terrēbis, sed militem terrēbis nūllum. Nec magnus erit numerus vulnerum tuōrum. Fīnis erit virtūtis tuae, cum pugna incipiet. Tum tē territus fugā servābis, neque ante noctem fugere dēsistēs.

2. (A father) Vērī militēs saepe ignī pugnant. Haec pugna vōbīs sine ignī pugnanda est. Silvae nōn sunt incendendae.

284.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (One mother to another) Have you heard the talk of this fierce boy? 2. He wishes to be of the barbarian side; for he has a real Gallic helmet. 3. (Second mother) Where did he find it? (Ans.) Some man gave it to him. 4. And he is going to paint his face and body for² the terror of his schoolmates. 5. How beautiful he will be! We shall watch him from the tower of our villa. 6. (First speaker) If anybody attacks him, he will run-away in-a-fright.³ 7. He will receive *his* wounds in flight.

8. (A father) There will be great danger from⁴ fire; for if the woods are-set-on-fire, our villas will-be-set-on-fire too. (Another father) Fires are not to be made by these boys.

¹ "For the terror of" = "to frighten."

² Use in as above.

³ Say "terrified."

⁴ Use ā or ab.

LESSON XL

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

285. Like Nouns, Adjectives of the Third Declension are divided into two classes, those with Consonant Stems, and those with *i*-Stems. *The i-Stems are by far the more numerous.*

CONSONANT-STEM ADJECTIVES

286. Comparative¹ Adjectives, and a very few Adjectives of One Ending in the Nominative Singular are of the Consonant-Stem Declension. These are declined precisely like Consonant-Stem Nouns.

Stem	Comparative Adjective certior, surer		Adjective of One Ending vetus, old	
	certiōr-		veter-	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
<i>Gen.</i>	certiōris	certiōris	veteris	veteris
<i>Dat.</i>	certiōrī	certiōrī	veterī	veterī
<i>Acc.</i>	certiōrem	certius	veterem	vetus
<i>Voc.</i>	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
<i>Abl.</i>	certiōre	certiōre	vetere	vetere
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	certiōrum	certiōrum	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Voc.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus

¹ Adjectives express qualities in three degrees, called Positive, Comparative, and Superlative; thus *sweet, sweeter, sweetest*. A Positive Adjective simply expresses the presence of the quality in a person or thing; the Comparative expresses its presence in a higher degree than in some other person or thing, and the Superlative expresses its presence in the highest degree. The same holds correspondingly for Adverbs.

287. 1. All Comparative Adjectives are declined like *certior*. Decline now *melior*, *better*, *maior*, *greater*, *minor*, *less*, *validior*, *stronger*.

2. *Vetus*, *old*, is the only Consonant-Stem Adjective of one ending to be used in this book.¹ Remember, then, *that except Comparatives, and vetus, all Third-Declension Adjectives in this book are i-Stems.*

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

288. Specimen Sentence:

Mihi multī amīcī sunt, for me there are many friends.

a. The Dative here was originally the Dative of the Person Concerned, and has been translated as such above. But to say, "for me there are many friends," amounts to saying, "I have many friends," and this has come to be the regular meaning of such a combination. Hence:

289. *Possession may be expressed by the Dative with the verb sum, or other verbs implying existence.*

a. Of course, the same idea may be expressed by *habēō*, as we have often seen. Thus we may say:

either *multī amīcī mihi sunt* } *I have many friends.*
or *multōs amīcōs habēō* }

290.

VOCABULARY

āthlēta, -ae, M. 1, *athlete*.

certior, -ius, *surer, trustier*.

Compar. of *certus*, *sure, trusty*.

dux, *ducis*, M. 3 (cf. *dūcō*), *leader, guide*.

dēdō, *dēdere*, *dēdidī*, *dēditum*, 3 (*dē+ dō*, give away), *give up*; with reflexive pronoun, *give oneself up (to), devote oneself (to); surrender*.

exemplum, -ī, N. 2, *example, precedent*.

labor, *labōris*, M. 3, *labor, work*.

Lūcius, -ī, M. 2, *Lucius, a name*.

maior, *maius*, *greater, bigger*.

Compar. of *magnus*, *great, big*.

minor, *minus*, *smaller, less*.

Compar. of *parvus*, *small*.

melior, *melius*, *better*. Compar. of *bonus*, *good*.

nēmō, Dat. *nēmīnī*, Acc. *nēmīnem* (Gen. and Abl. supplied by *nūllius* and *nūllō*), M. 3, *no one, nobody*.

oculus, -ī, M. 2, *eye*.

validior, -ius, *stronger*. Compar. of *validus*, *strong*.

vetus, -us, *old; old-fashioned*.

¹ It is the only one in Caesar's story of the Gallic War, I-IV.

291.

READING MATTER

1. Mārcus certē nōbīs alter¹ ex rēgibus ēligendus est. Nēmō enim melior est discipulus, nēmō āthlēta melior. Nēmō sē maiōre cum diligentīā lūdīs dēdidit, nēmō labōrī. Nēminī validius est ingenium, nēminī corpus validius. Nullius exemplum umquam melius fuit. Certiōrem ducem nōn inveniēmus. Quaecumque imperāverit, ea milītēs eius facient. Eius nōmen ipsum alterās partīs terrēbit.

2. (One of the opposition) Nullus in cuiusquam nōmine terror est. Tū Mārcō propter diligentiam eius favēs. Ego veterēs mōrēs eius nōn amō. Lūciō faveō. Is nihil nisi lūdōs colit.

3. (An anxious father) Haec cōnsilia mē terrent. Hī ferī milītēs Gallicī et Rōmānī vulnera in ōra² aut oculōs dabunt et accipient. Etiam ignēs facient, quibus silvae incenduntur. (Ans.) Tū, videō, filiō tuō timēs. Is autem in proeliō sē fugae dabit. Vel minus erit perīculum, sī pugnam longē ex turri spectābit.

292.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Lucius ought (say "is") to be chosen by us. 2. He loves games. He will devote himself to this war. 3. No-one will lead us with greater interest. 4. He has (use sum for practice) less diligence than Mark (has), but no one has a bigger or stronger body. 5. He really *loves* wounds. *He* doesn't fear for his face or eyes. Mark is too good. 7. He loves work and old-fashioned ways. He hurts us by his example. 8. If he is elected he will be a stern leader.

9. (Ans.) Wait a little (while). You will see. 10. Mark is even now the better athlete, and, on-account-of his ability, he will be the *surer leader*. 11. *You* are filled with terror, because *you* do not wish to exercise your lazy body.

¹ One (of the two). Notice that *alter* is here in the Predicate.

² Acc., because the wounds go *into* the face. We say "in the face."

LESSON XLI

I-STEM ADJECTIVES

293. I-Stem Adjectives are of Three Endings, Two Endings, or One Ending in the Nominative Singular. They are declined as follows:

Stem	Of Three Endings <i>acer, sharp</i>			Of Two Endings <i>fortis, brave</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrīs or -ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs or -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>	<i>fortīs or -ēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

Of One Ending: *duplex, double*

Stem	<i>duplici-</i>	
	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duplicis</i>	<i>duplicis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duplicem</i>	<i>duplex</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicī</i>
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duplicium</i>	<i>duplicium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duplicīs or -ēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>

a. I-Stem Adjectives always have -ī in the Ablative Singular.

b. Notice that those of Three Endings and those of Two differ practically only in the Nominative-Vocative Singular *Feminine*.

Thus *acer puer, a spirited boy, acris puella, a spirited girl,*
but *fortis puer, a brave boy, fortis puella, a brave girl.*

DATIVE OF THE PERSON JUDGING

294. Specimen Sentence:

Mihi Mārcus āthlēta melior est, to me, Mark is the better athlete.

a. The Dative here practically expresses the idea of the person *in whose eyes, to whose judgment*, the statement made is true. This became a regular power of the case, and we may accordingly lay down the rule that:

295. *The Dative is used to denote the Person In Whose Judgment, or For Whom, the statement holds good.*

a. So often with *videor* (Passive of *videō*), meaning *seem*:

Mārcus mihi melior esse vidētur quam Lūcius, Mark seems to me to be better than Lucius.

b. Notice that the Predicate Adjective *melior* goes back finally (*through esse and vidētur*) to *Mārcus*, and of course agrees with it.

296.

VOCABULARY

acer, acris, acre, sharp, fierce.

alacer, -cris, -cre, eager.

aptus, -a, -um, apt, fitted, fit.

certāmen, -inis, N. 3, contest.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, contend, strive.

civitas, -ātis, -ātium (sometimes civitātum), F. 3, state.

cōsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3, custom.

duplex, duplex, Gen. duplicis, twofold, double; ambiguous.

facilis, -e (cf. faciō, do; do-able, i. e.), easy.

facile, easily (Adv. for facilis).

fortis, forte, strong, brave.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, enter.

latus, -eris, N. 3, side; lung.

maximus, -a, -um, Superl. of

magnus, greatest, largest, biggest; (in a family) oldest.

maximē, Adv., in the largest degree, very greatly, exceedingly.

omnis, -e, all, the whole; every, any.

omnīnō, Adv., in all, at all.

parum, Adv. (cf. parvus), little, too little.

prōptus, -a, -um, ready (in sense of ready to do a thing).

statim, Adv., immediately, at once.

videor (Passive of videō), seem.

297.

READING MATTER

(The Too-Athletic Girl)

1. Soror Lūcī maxima turbae puellārum minōrum imperat, nec quisquam certior aut melior dux est. Nunc maximē cupit gladiō et scūtō pugnāre inter puerōs. Fortis frāter est, soror nōn minus fortis. Animus eius ad¹ bellum gerendum alacer¹ ac prōmptus est. Acris habet oculōs, latera² bona. Multis āthlētis corpora nōn maiōra aut validiōra sunt. Multōs ea nostrum, sī pugnābit, facile vincet. Sed ex cōsuētūdine vetere huius cīvitatīs pugnae puellīs omnīnō nōn pugnandae sunt. Puer ācer mihi placet, puella nimis ācris parum placet. Malum exemplum erit, haec³ sī certāmen intrāverit. Quid tū sentis?

2. (Ans.) Mea sententia duplex est. Nōn probō; sed, sī illa pugnātūra est, ego eārundem partium esse dēsiderō. Omnēs enim eī hostēs sēsē statim dēdent, quia nēmō cupiet cum puellā certāre. Itaque illa sine omnī labōre vincet.

3. Proelia mihi puellīs apta esse nōn videntur; sed facilis alterās partīs manet victōria, haec³ sī puella arma sūmpserit.

298.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Your words are ambiguous. 2. Certainly girls seem to you to be little fitted for⁴ contests to-be-carried-on with boys. 3. Why don't you say so at-once? 4. This girl is exceedingly eager, and-not less brave and ready. 5. But *many* girls have⁵ sharp eyes, strong bodies, good lungs, and brave minds. 6. If all the oldest sisters of our friends enter the contest, the boys will not contend. 7. In that case,⁶ an easy victory easily awaits this girl. 8. But where will the sport be for the boys?

9. To me, this game seems not at-all fit for girls. 10. Accord-
ing-to⁷ the custom of this state, other and smaller things are to-be-done by them.

¹ *Eager for war to be waged; i. e., eager for waging war.*

² *Sides here clearly = lungs.*

³ Note the emphasis.

⁴ Use *ad* as above.

⁵ Use *sum* for practice.

⁶ Say "then."

⁷ Say "from" as above.

LESSON XLII

THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

299. The Present Active Participle is formed in the Nominative by adding *-ns* to the Present Stem. Thus:

CONJ.	I	II	III	IV
	<i>amāns</i>	<i>monēns</i>	<i>tegēns</i> <i>capiēns</i>	<i>audiēns</i>
	<i>loving</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>covering</i> <i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>

300. DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

	<i>amāns, loving</i>		<i>monēns, warning</i>	
Stems	<i>amant-</i> in Sing.		<i>monent-</i> in Sing.	
	<i>amanti-</i> in Pl.		<i>monenti-</i> in Pl.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>monēns</i>	<i>monēns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>monentis</i>	<i>monentis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amantī</i>	<i>amantī</i>	<i>monentī</i>	<i>monentī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amantem</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>monentem</i>	<i>monēns</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>monēns</i>	<i>monēns</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amante (or-ī)</i>	<i>amante (or-ī)</i>	<i>monente (or-ī)</i>	<i>monente (or-ī)</i>
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>	<i>monentēs</i>	<i>monentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amantium</i>	<i>amantium</i>	<i>monentium</i>	<i>monentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>monentibus</i>	<i>monentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amantīs or-ēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>	<i>monentīs or-ēs</i>	<i>monentia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>	<i>monentēs</i>	<i>monentia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>monentibus</i>	<i>monentibus</i>

a. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (*Abl. Sing. -e*); but when used as Adjectives, they are *i*-Stems (*Abl. Sing. -ī*).

ABLATIVE WITH *prō* AND *prae*

301. *Prō*, originally *forth* (*from*), or *in front* (*from*), and *prae*, *in front* (*from*), take an Ablative of Separation. The meaning slightly changes, so that we should define *prō* and *prae* as meaning simply *in front of* (much like *ante*); but the *case*-usage remains fixed.

THE GERUNDIVE

302. Specimen Example (from last Reading Matter) :

Alacer ad bellum gerendum, eager for war to-be-waged.

This clearly suggests, *eager for WAGING war.*

a. In other words, what was originally merely a Future Passive Participle comes to be felt as the *leading word* in its phrase, and to seem very like a verbal noun (cf. WAGING in the translation above).

When the form has reached this power, it is called the *Gerundive*.

We may then state the usage as follows :

303. *The Gerundive is the Future Passive Participle after it has gained the power of conveying the Leading Idea in its phrase.*

a. Notice that the Gerundive, although conveying the leading idea in its phrase, is still *grammatically* dependent. Thus, in the example above, *bellum*, not *gerendum*, depends upon *ad*, and *gerendum* agrees with *bellum*.

304.

VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, administer, manage.

ars, artis, artium, F. 3, art, skill.

castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, camp.

(Used only in Pl.)

commodē, Adv., conveniently, properly.

cotidiē, Adv., daily, every day.

inermis, -e (in, not + arma, arms), unarmed.

militāris, -e, military. Ars militāris, art of war, tactics.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3, neglect, pass by, disregard.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, get acquainted with, come to know, learn.

oppidum, -ī, N. 2, town.

prae, in front of. Prep., taking Abl.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (prae + cēdō, go in front), precede.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, irreg. (prae + sum, be in front), be in command over, be present. Participle praesēns, being present, as Adj., present.

prō, in front of. Prep., taking Abl.

Pūblius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2, hold.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2 (per + teneō, hold through to), reach (to); pertain (to).

305.

READING MATTER

(Two Ways of Electioneering)

1. Servius hodiē omnīs ad certāmen vocāvit! Gladium et scūtum prae sē gerēns,¹ prō oppidō prōcessit cum ācrī multitudine amīcōrum, alacrium et ad omnia faciēda prōmptōrum. Ipse praesēns² vidī. Praecēdēbat maxima turba puerōrum parvōrum inermium, Servium propter eius studium laudantium. Hic iīs fortis homō vidēbātur. Mihi nōn fortis sed negligēns³ et temerārius est. Latera autem eius certē bona sunt.

2. Mārcus autem et Pūblius, Mārcī amīcus, nōn statim certāre cupiunt, sed milītēs cotīdiē spectant, quī, castra ante oppidum tenentēs, gladiīs ex rōbore factīs pignantēs sē exercent, omniaque quae ad bellum commodē gerendum pertinent discunt. Servius maximē cupit rēx eligī. Parum autem aptus est ad nōs dūcendōs. Facile eligentur Mārcus et Lūcius.

3. (Second speaker) Servius ex cōsuētūdine suā certāmen nunc statim intrāre cupit; omnia enim eī facilia videntur. Mārcus autem omnia dēsiderat nōscere. Itaque hic mox parātus erit ad bella administranda. Ars enim milītāris duplex est. Bonus dux et gladiō pugnat et cōsiliō.

306.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Mark and Publius, studying the art of-war, are watching the soldiers every-day when they exercise in-front-of the camp. 2. I myself am often present² and see them. 3. They are exceedingly eager to⁴ learn everything that pertains to managing a war properly. 4. Servius, neglecting everything, according to his custom, desires to enter the contest at once. 5. Nothing holds him. 6. So today he proceeded in-front-of the town, displaying his sword and shield. 7. The greatest mob of little boys, fierce but unarmed, preceded (him). 8. On account of his zeal and strong (say "good") lungs, many favor him.

¹ Bearing in front of himself, displaying.² Being present saw, = was present and saw.³ Neglecting, = careless.⁴ Use alacer ad, as above.

LESSON XLIII

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

307. Specimen Sentences:

Mārcō imperante, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark commanding, everything is managed well.*

Mārcō duce, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark as leader (or Mark being leader), everything is managed well.*

Mārcō praesente, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark present (or Mark being present), everything is managed well.*

Hōc factō, puerī discesserunt, *with this done (or this having been done), the boys departed.*

a. The Ablative is here used like the "Nominative Absolute" in English, in a loose connection with the rest of the sentence; and it is accordingly called the *Ablative Absolute* (i. e., *free Ablative*). As you see, it expresses the existing *Situation*, the *State of Affairs*.

b. The second word in each case forms a kind of *Predicate* for the first. Thus in our first example, *Mark commands*; in the second, *he is leader*; in the third, *he is present*; in the fourth, *the thing had been done*.

We may accordingly describe the construction as follows:

308. *An Ablative Noun or Pronoun, with a Predicate word in the same case, may be used in loose connection with the rest of the sentence.*¹

a. The Ablative Absolute may be translated in a variety of ways,—by an English Nominative Absolute, by a *with*-phrase, or by a Clause introduced by *when*, *since*, *although*, or *if*. Thus:

$$\text{hōc factō} = \begin{cases} \text{with this done} \\ \text{this having been done} \\ \text{when this had been done, etc.} \end{cases}$$

¹ In origin, the construction is simply a Sociative Ablative, precisely like the English construction in "with this done," "with Mark as leader," etc. The English Nominative Absolute is itself probably an old Sociative construction from which the case-ending has been lost, so that what is left seems to be a Nominative.

PERFECT TENSES WITH THE MEANING OF THE PRESENT, ETC.

309. In several verbs the tenses of completed action have come to express a present, past, or future state. Thus *nōvī*, originally *I have become acquainted with* (from *nōscō*, *I become acquainted with*) practically means *I know*. Similarly, *nōveram* means *I knew*, and *nōverō*, *I shall know*.

310. A few verbs have wholly lost the forms made from the Present stem and are confined to the Perfect system. Thus *meminī*, *I remember* (originally *I have called to mind*). Such verbs are called *Defective*, because they lack many forms.

MIDDLE, OR REFLEXIVE, VERBS

311. Middle, or Reflexive, Verbs are those which express an act as done by the subject *to or for himself*. The terminations are the same as those of the Passive. Thus to express the idea "I exercise (myself)," one may use either the Active *exerceō* with an Object *mē* (*mē exerceō*), or the Reflexive *exerceor*.

DEPONENT VERBS

312. A number of verbs which originally were reflexive have come to be practically Active in meaning. Thus *revertor*, *I return*, from *re-*, *back*, and *vertor*, *I turn myself*; *vēscor*, *I eat*, originally *I feed myself*, from *vēscō*, *feed*. But in many verbs we can no longer trace the rise of the use of the Passive form.

These verbs are called Deponents, because they have "laid aside" their Active forms. We may then say that:

313. *Deponents are verbs with Passive Form but Active Meaning.*

314. The Principal Parts are of course those of the Passive. Thus:

- Conjugation* I *Vagor*, *vagārī*, *vagātus sum*, *roam*, *wander about*.
 II *Vereor*, *verērī*, *veritus sum*, *fear*, *respect*.
 III *Sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*, *follow*.
 IV *Orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus sum*, *rise*, *arise*.

315. *Transitive Deponents* have the four Participles, all but the Future Passive being ordinarily of Active meaning. Thus:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>verēns</i> , <i>fearing</i> | <i>veritus</i> , <i>having feared</i> |
| <i>veritūrus</i> , <i>about to fear</i> | <i>verendus</i> , <i>to be feared</i> |

316.

VOCABULARY

(Add the Deponent Verbs in 314.)

altus, -a, -um, *high, lofty*.
 contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
 2 (con- + teneō, hold together),
hold in, hem in, keep.
 dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1 (dē +
 certō, strive it out), *settle the
 war, fight it out*.
 dum, Conj., *while*.
 flūmen, -inis, N. 3, *river*.
 interim, Adv., *meanwhile*.
 mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3, *moun-
 tain*.
 meminī, -isse, Defect., *remember*.
 nātūra, -ae, F. 1, *nature*.
 ob, *against, before; on account
 of*¹ (like propter). Prep. of
 Space-Relation, taking Acc.
 pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3,
place.

pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3, *bridge*.
 regiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *region*.
 revertor, revertī (Infinitive), reverti
 (Perf.), reversum, 3, *return*.
 Not Deponent in Perf.
 rūs, rūris, N. 3, *country*.
 undique, Adv., *on all sides*.
 urbs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *city*.
 uterque, utraque, utrumque (de-
 clined like uter, 130, + -que),
each (of two), either.
 vallis, -is, -ium, F. 3, *valley*.
 versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf.
 vertō), *keep turning, hover;
 be busy, be engaged*.
 vēscor, vēscī, —, 3, *feed one-
 self with, live on; eat*. Takes
 Ablative (originally expressing
 the idea of Means).

317.

READING MATTER

(Mark Writes to a Friend)

Tū dē pugnā quae mox pugnābitur iam audīvistī. Sed cīvī-
 tātem nostram nōn nōvistī. Ego tibi dīcam nātūram locī.

Oppidum in quō habitō positum est in valle, quae monti-
 bus altīs undique continētur. Hōs montīs bene nōvī; nam in
 iīs ferē cotīdiē, dum exerceor, vagor. Tū forte, haec cum legēs,
 mihi verēberis; sed nihil in eā regiōne umquam vīdī periculōsī.

Ad hōs montīs explōrāndōs herī iterum prōcessī, aliquot par-
 vīs amicīs praecēdentibus aut sequentibus. Flūmen parvum
 secūtus sum, quod ab hīs montibus oritur.² In³ eō flūmine ali-

¹ Prepositions originally expressed space-relations. But they all gained figurative forces in addition, as we have now seen in the case of *ab, dē, ex, cum, in; ad, contrā, ob, post, propter*, etc.

² Orior, though of the 4th Conj., has several 3d Conj. forms. ³ On, over.

quot sunt pontēs. Ex utrāque parte¹ loca castrīs idōnea invēnī.

Hōc factō² revertī. Dum revertor, Servium vīdī, quī ex oppidō prōcesserat, turbā amīcōrum sequente. Omnīs condiscipulōs ad certāmen vocābat. Ego, quia inermis eram, mē continū, eumque neglēxī. Itaque is sibi melior miles vīsus est. Haec omnia, cum dēcertābimus, mihi ob oculōs versābuntur.³ Bene meminerō. Interim Servius sibi magnopere placet, atque glōriā vēscitur. Sed ea quae ad artem militārem pertinent nōn nōvit.

Venī ab istā tuā urbe ad nostram pugnam videndam.⁴ Tū rūs amās, et tibi nunc ōtium est.

¹ From each side. In English, *ON each side*.

² Ablative Absolute ("with this done," "this being done," "after doing this").

³ Will hover before the eyes for me (= before my eyes).

⁴ Notice that *ad* with the Gerundive can express the idea of *Purpose*.



SUBIACO IN THE SABINE MOUNTAINS, EAST OF ROME

LESSON XLIV

SUMMARY OF POINTS OF DIFFICULTY IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

(For Review and Reference)

318. We have now finished the Third Declension (except for a few irregular words), and may sum up its points of difficulty.

319. *Nouns* of the Third Declension are divided into Consonant Stems, *i*-Stems, and Mixed Stems, with characteristics as follows:

1. Consonant Stems have the Ablative Singular in *-e*, the Genitive Plural in *-um*, and the Accusative Plural in *-ēs* for the Masculine-Feminine, and *-a* for the Neuter.

2. Most Masculine or Feminine *i*-Stems, together with Mixed Stems, are declined like Consonant Stems in the Singular and *i*-Stems in the Plural (that is, with the Genitive in *-ium* and the Accusative in *-īs* or *-ēs*).

3. But a *few* Masculine or Feminine *i*-Stems preserve the characteristic marks of the *i*-Declension in the Singular also, showing it in an Accusative *-im* (sometimes alongside of *-em*) or an Ablative *-ī* (sometimes alongside of *-e*), or in both cases.

4. Neuter *i*-Stems have *-ī* in the Ablative Singular, and an *-i-* in every Plural termination.

320. *Adjectives and Participles* of the Third Declension are likewise divided into Consonant Stems, *i*-Stems, and Mixed Stems, with characteristics as follows:

1. Only Comparatives and a few Adjectives of one ending are Consonant Stems.

2. All other Third-Declension Adjectives are *i*-Stems, and these have the *-i* in the Ablative Singular (*-ī*), as well as in the regular places in the Plural.

3. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (Abl. Sing. -e); but when used as Adjectives, they are i-Stems (Abl. Sing. -ī). Thus:

Marcō praesente, with *Mark present* (Mark being-present),
but in **praesentī negōtiō**, in the *present business*.

HELPS IN DISTINGUISHING i-STEMS OR MIXED STEMS

321. The only sure general sign is **-ium** in the Genitive Plural. But a few other signs will be helpful, namely:

322. I-Stems are:

1. All Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**, with long penult in the Genitive. Thus **animal**, **animālis**.

2. Masculine or Feminine Nouns in **-is** or **-ēs**, with the same number of syllables in the Genitive.¹ Thus **finis**, Genitive **finis**, **caedēs**, Genitive **caedis**.

323. Mixed Stems are:

1. Nouns in **-ns**, **-rs**, **-rx**, **-lx**, and some in **-x**. Thus **mōns**, **pars**, **nox**.

2. Most monosyllables in **-ps** or **-bs**. Thus **urbs**.

GENDERS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

324. A few general statements may be made about Third-Declension Genders:

1. Neuter are:

a. Nouns in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**. Thus **animal**.

b. Most nouns in **-en**. Thus **nōmen**.

c. Most s-Stems. Thus **corpus**, **corporis**.

2. Masculine are:

a. Most Mute Stems.² Thus **pēs**, **pedis**.

b. Most Stems in **l** and **r**. Thus **victor**, **victōris**. (But most with short **o** in the Genitive are Neuter. Thus **rōbur**, **rōboris**.)

c. N-Stems in **-ō**, **-ōnis** (not in **-iō**, **-iōnis**). Thus **sermō**, **sermōnis**.

¹ But **miles**, Genitive **militis** (*longer* here) is a Consonant Stem.

² The Mutes are consonants making complete stops: **c**, **k**, **q**, **g**, **t**, **d**, **p**, **b**.

3. Feminine are:

a. All Nouns in -iō, -iōnis, and most of those in -ō, -inis. Thus *regiō, regiōnis, and multitūdō, multitūdinis*.

b. Nouns in -tās, -tātis, or -tūs, -tūtis. Thus *cīvitās, cīvitātis, virtūs, virtūtis*.

c. Nouns in -ēs with the same number of syllables in the Genitive, the majority of those in -is, and most of the Mixed Stems. Thus *caedēs, turris, nox*. (But several Mixed Stems in -ns are Masculine, as *mōns, pōns*.)

325.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

(The Friend's Answer to Mark's Letter)

1. I have been in your state. 2. I know well the nature of the place where you are going to fight-it-out. 3. I know the little valley in which your town is placed. 4. I know the lofty mountains by which that valley is hemmed in on every side. 5. I have seen the little bridges, while¹ following-up the river to the place where² it rises. 6. I have wandered in the forest on³ either side. 7. I remember it⁴ all well. 8. It is a beautiful region.

9. When everything is ready, with⁵ the kings elected and the rules of war established, I shall come to⁶ see the battle. 10. Meanwhile I shall myself study the art of war.

11. *You* will be chosen one of the kings. 12. The⁷ boy who lives on glory will never be chosen. 13. Under⁸ your leadership, your side will conquer. On account of your judgment, I do not fear.

14. When⁹ this is done, I shall return at once to the city. 15. I love the country, but I am busy in school now.

¹ Say "while I follow-up." The *Present* is regular in this use.

² The Roman would say *unde*, "from which," "whence."

³ Look again at p. 123, footnote 1.

⁴ Be more definite in the Latin (say *these things*).

⁵ Use the Ablative Absolute construction.

⁶ Read 302 again. Say "to the battle to-be-seen."

⁷ How do you translate such a "the" as this?

⁸ Say "(with) you leading." What construction?

⁹ Say "(with) this done," "this having been done."

LESSON XLV

IRREGULAR NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

326. DECLENSION OF *vīs*, *force*, F.

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	" <i>vīs</i> (rare)	"	<i>vīrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	" <i>vī</i> (rare)	"	<i>vīribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	" <i>vim</i>	"	<i>vīrīs or -ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	" <i>vīs</i>	"	<i>vīrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	" <i>vī</i>	"	<i>viribus</i>

327. DECLENSION OF *plūs*, *more*, AND *complūrēs*, *a good many*

M. and F.		N.	M. and F.		N.
SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	_____	plūs			
<i>Gen.</i>	_____	plūris			
<i>Dat.</i>	_____	_____			
<i>Acc.</i>	_____	plūs			
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____			
<i>Abl.</i>	_____	plūre			
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	plūrēs	plūra	<i>Nom.</i>	complūrēs	complūria or -a
<i>Gen.</i>	plūrium	plūrium	<i>Gen.</i>	complūrium	complūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	plūribus	plūribus	<i>Dat.</i>	complūribus	complūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	plūrīs or -ēs	plūra	<i>Acc.</i>	complūrīs or -ēs	complūria or -a
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	plūribus	plūribus	<i>Abl.</i>	complūribus	complūribus

a. In the Singular, *plūs* is used only as a neuter *Substantive*, often with a Genitive of the Whole.

328. DECLENSION OF *duo*, *two* (SIMILARLY *ambō*, *both*)

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs or duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

TWO ACCUSATIVES

329. Specimen Sentences:

Mārcum rēgem faciēmus, *we shall make Mark king.*

Mārcum rēgem eligēmus, *we shall elect Mark (as) king.*

Mārcus omnis discipulōs alacris ad bellum faciet, *Mark will make all the schoolboys eager for the war.*

a. In the above examples, there are, in each sentence, *two Accusatives*, a Direct Object (thus **Mārcum**), and another word (thus **rēgem**) standing in a *Predicate* relation to the verb.

b. In the first two examples, the Predicate Accusative is a Noun (**rēgem**); in the last one, it is an Adjective (**alacris**).

c. Several other verbs have similar power. We may then say that:

330. *Verbs of Making, Choosing, Having, Regarding, Calling, or Showing may take, in addition to a Direct Object, a Predicate Accusative. This may be either a Noun or an Adjective.*

a. In the Passive construction, the Direct Object of the Active Voice becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative. Thus:

Mārcus rēx eligētur, *Mark will be chosen king.*

TWO NEW CONSTRUCTIONS ARISING OUT OF THE
ABLATIVE OF MEANS

ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

331. Specimen Sentences:

Lucius capite altior est quam Cornēlius, *Lucius is taller by a head than Cornelius.*

Lucius multō altior est quam Cornēlius, *Lucius is taller by much (= much taller) than Cornelius.*

a. In these sentences, the Ablative is a rough expression of *Means*,—that is, it expresses that *by which* the things compared differ (just as English “by” does in “taller by a head”). But that by which the things compared differ is the *measure* of the difference.

We may accordingly lay down the rule that:

332. *The Measure of Difference is expressed by the Ablative.*

ABLATIVE WITH ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, AND vēscor

333. Several deponent verbs take an Ablative which was originally one of Means.

a. Thus, as we saw in **312** and **316**, vēscor originally meant *feed oneself with*, the thing with which the feeding was done being expressed by the Ablative of Means. But the practical meaning of *feed oneself with* is *eat*. Hence in time the Ablative must have seemed to express simply the Direct Object.

The same is true of fruor, *profit-one's-self-by*, i. e., *enjoy*; potior, *make oneself powerful by*, i. e., *gain possession of, get*; ūtor, *help oneself with*, i. e., *use*; fungor, *busy oneself with*, i. e., *perform*. Hence we may lay down the rule that:

334. Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor take their Object in the Ablative.

Scūtō et gladiō ūtor, *I use a shield and a sword.*

Hostēs oppidō potiuntur, *the enemy get-possession-of the town.*

a. Ūtor may take a Second Ablative, in Predicate relation.

Mārcō amīcō ūtor, *I use Mark (as) a friend.*

335.

VOCABULARY

ambō (Declension **328**), *both*.

commodē (as before), *conveniently, properly*, Compar. commodius, Superl. commodissimē.

complūrēs (**327**), *a good many*.

diligēns, -ēns, Gen. -entis, *diligent*. Compar. diligentior, Superl. diligentissimus.

diligenter, Adv., *diligently*, Compar. diligentius, Superl. diligentissimē.

duo (**328**), *two*.

fruor, fruī, fructus sum, 3, *profit-by, enjoy*.

fungor, fungī, functus sum, 3, *perform, discharge*.

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus, 1 (ob+stō, stand against), *oppose, prevent*. Takes Dat.

officium, -i, N. 2, *office, duty*.

ops, opis, F. 3, *help*; in Pl., *resources, means*.

plūs (**327**), Gen. pluris, *more*. Compar. of multum, *much*.

potēns, -ēns, Gen. potentis, *having power, influential*. Compar. potentior, Superl. potentissimus.

potestās, -ātis, F. 3, *power, control, opportunity*.

potior, potiri, potitus sum, 4, *gain possession-of, get*. (Cf. potēns.)

rēgnum, -i, N. 2, *kingship, kingdom*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *use*.

vīs, vīs, F. 3, *force, violence*; Pl.

vīrēs, vīrium, *strength*.

336.

READING MATTER

1. Mārcus ex cōsuētūdine suā tōtam regiōnem dīligenter¹ iam explōrāvit. Vallem, montīs, flūmen, pontīs, silvās nōvit. Haec omnia omnēs nunc explōrābimus. Mārcō duce commodē¹ ūtēmur. Nēmō nōs commodius² aut dīligentius dūcet.

2. Quī vestrum rēgnō potentur? (Ans.) Mārcum rēgem faciēmus. Nēmō eī obstābit. (First speaker) Nōne duo ex vōbīs aptī sunt ad vōs dūcendōs? Nōne Lūcius quoque potēns est? (Ans.) Ita; ambō potentēs sunt; sed Mārcus nōn solum potentior² est quam Lūcius, sed omnium est potentissimus. Ille plūs vīrium corporis quam Lūcius nōn habet, sed in omnibus officiīs servandīs multō dīligentior est. Itaque complūrēs potestātī favent Lūcī, ferē omnēs Mārcī. Huius cōsiliō et ope saepe iam fructī sumus. Hic nunc, omnibus rēgnī officiīs dīligentissimē³ fungēns, nōs dīligentissimōs³ faciet militēs.

337.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Do you know this region? 2. (Ans.) Yes. I have explored it with Mark, whom I used as a guide. 3. (First speaker) So you have profited by Mark's diligence. 4. (Ans.) Yes, he knows everything; no one discharges his duties more diligently or more properly. 5. He even makes all his friends more diligent. No one has more (of) power among the boys.

6. Who are the two most influential boys of the school? 7. (Ans.) Mark and Lucius are (by) much the most influential. 8. A-good-many oppose Mark, but more favor him. 9. Lucius will also get a kingship. 10. Both are strong in body. But Mark will conquer Lucius; for he will fight not only with strength of body but with judgment. 11. He will use *all* his resources.

¹Notice how Adverbs are made,—from Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, in *-ē* (thus *certus*, *certē*; *aeger*, *aegrē*), from Adjectives of the Third Declension, in *-ter* (*dīligens*, *dīligenter*).

²Notice also how you compare,—Adjectives in *-ior*, *-issimus*, and Adverbs in *-ius*, *-issimē*.

³*Most diligently = very diligently.* The Superlative often means *very*.

LESSON XLVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

338. Beside the Indicative and Imperative Moods, which we have been using above, Latin has another Mood, called the Subjunctive. These three make up what are called the *Finite Moods*.

339. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

CONJ.	I	II	III		IV
			ACTIVE		
1st Sing.	amem	moneam	tegā	capiam	audiam
2d "	amēs	moneās	tegās	capiās	audiās
3d "	amet	moneat	tegat	capiat	audiat
1st Pl.	amēmus	moneāmus	tegāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
2d "	amētis	moneātis	tegātis	capiātis	audiātis
3d "	ament	moneant	tegant	capiant	audiant
			PASSIVE		
1st Sing.	amer	monear	tegar	capiar	audiar
2d "	amēris	moneāris	tegāris	capiāris	audiāris
	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re
3d "	amētur	moneātur	tegātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st Pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	tegāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2d "	amēminī	moneāminī	tegāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
3d "	amentur	moneantur	tegantur	capiantur	audiantur

a. In the formation of the Present Subjunctive, the four Conjugations divide after the first, the mood-sign being *-ē-* in the First Conjugation, and *-ā-* in the other three (with shortening in the regular places; 100, 2).

b. The Passive corresponds to the Active, just as in the Indicative.

340. The Present Subjunctive of the Irregular Verb *sum* is:

1st Sing.	sim	1st Pl.	sīmus
2d "	sīs	2d "	sītis
3d "	sit	3d "	sint

ORIGIN AND MEANINGS OF THE LATIN SUBJUNCTIVE

341. The Latin Subjunctive is a *mixed* mood, just as the Latin Ablative is a mixed case. It is made up of the remains of *two* moods which originally were entirely distinct, in form as well as in meaning: an old Subjunctive, and an old Optative. The Latin Mood takes its name from the first.

a. Just as the Ablative Case has inherited the powers of the cases that compose it, though bearing the name of only one of them, so the Subjunctive Mood has inherited the powers of the moods that compose it, though bearing the name of only one of them.

342. The Latin Subjunctive has a variety of forces. We will begin with those that were inherited from the old Subjunctive.

SUBJUNCTIVE USES INHERITED FROM THE OLD SUBJUNCTIVE

343. The old Subjunctive probably originally expressed Will, and later gained the power of expressing Anticipation. Both forces will be seen in the following:

Priusquam pugnēmus, artī militārī studeāmus, *before we fight* (Anticipation), *let us study the art of war* (Will).

a. The *fighting* (*pugnēmus*) is here expressed as merely *anticipated, expected, looked forward to, counted upon*; while the *studying* (*studeāmus*) is expressed as *wanted, willed, urged, intended*.

b. In place of saying *Subjunctive of Will* and *Subjunctive of Anticipation*, it is convenient to use the shorter phrases *Volitive Subjunctive* (compare the English word "volition"), and *Anticipatory Subjunctive* (compare English "anticipate" and "anticipation").

c. Notice that the Volitive Subjunctive is close to the Imperative in meaning, the Anticipatory close to the Future Indicative.

d. The Volitive Subjunctive is generally best translated by the emphatic auxiliary *will* of the first person and *shall* of the second and third (*I will, you shall, he shall*), or by *let* (*let me, let him, etc.*), or by *is to, are to, etc.* All these express that which the speaker *WANTS*, and *means to have*.—The Anticipatory Subjunctive is best translated by *shall* in all persons.

344. The negative for the Volitive Subjunctive is *nē*; for the Anticipatory, *nōn*.

345.

VOCABULARY

cautus, -a, -um, *cautious*.
cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *strengthen, establish*.
decem, indeclinable Adj., *ten*.
dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *deliberate*.
iungō, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iunctum*, 3, *join*.
adiungō, -*iungere*, -*iūnxī*, -*iunctum*, 3 (ad + *iungō*), *join (to)*.
nē, Adv., *not*.
optimus, -a, -um, *best*. Superl. Adj. for *bonus*, *good*.
optimē, *in the best way, best*. Superl. Adv. for *bene*, *well*.

potius, Adv., *preferably, rather*.
prior, *prius*, Compar. Adj., *former, first; in front*.
prius, Compar. Adv. (cf. *prior*), *before, first, sooner*.
prius quam, or *priusquam*, Conj., *sooner than, before*.
suādeō, *suādēre*, *suāsī*, *suāsum*, 2, *advise, urge*. Takes Dat., because originally meant *make agreeable to*. (Cf. *suāvis*.)
suāvis, -e, *sweet, agreeable*. Word of Quality, taking Dat.
trēs, *tria*, Gen. *trium*, *three*.
tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

346.

READING MATTER

(Different boys want different things and propose them)

Nunc rēgēs duōs ēligāmus. (Second boy) Quōs ēligāmus?¹ (First boy) Mārcus certē prior ēligētur. Tum Lūcium ēligāmus. (A third) Priusquam rēgēs omnīnō ēligāmus, lēgēs pugnae cōstituāmus. Id nunc commodius faciēmus. (A fourth) Minimē. Id nunc nē faciāmus. ēligāmus potius rēgēs duōs. Hīs duōbus tertium adiungāmus puerum, tribusque sic ēlēctīs omnem dēmus potestātem lēgum cōstituendārum. Potentissimī et optimī ēlēctī erunt. Illī cautī erunt, atque optimē omnia administrābunt. (A fifth) Ego aliter sentiō. Ambōbus, quī rēgnīs potitī erunt, potestās suāvis erit. Officiō suō fruentur, nōn fungentur. Virēs suās iungent, atque omnibus opibus ūtentur ad illam potestātem cōfirmandam. Etiam plūs cupient habēre potestātis. Hoc ego vōbīs potius suādeō: Ex tōtā scholā puerōs ēligāmus decem, quī² lēgēs dent. Nam decem diligentius dēliberābunt quam aut duo aut complūrēs.

¹ Whom shall we choose? ² . . . who shall give us rules (Purpose).

LESSON XLVII

VARIOUS USES THAT MAY BE MADE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF WILL AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ANTICIPATION

347. The feeling of Will may of course exist in different degrees of intensity, varying from a mere proposal or suggestion,¹ as in "now let us choose two kings," with which our last Reading Matter began, to a strong urgency, or insistency, ending even in an absolute command or prohibition (i. e., a command *not* to do a thing).

348. In using the Volitive Subjunctive in any of these ways you are *telling* somebody what you want (*declaring* your will).

349. But you may of course, on the other hand, *ask* yourself what you want, or ask somebody else what *he* wants. That is, you may *deliberate with yourself*, or *you may ask another for instructions*. Such questions may best be called *Questions of the Will*, or *Volitive Questions*.²

a. Thus you may say to yourself, *quid faciam? what shall I do?* or you may ask another person, *quid faciam? what shall I do?*

b. The negative for *all questions* in Latin, volitive as well as any other, is *nōn*. Thus *quid faciam, quid nōn faciam? what shall I do, what shall I not do?*

350. Thus far, we have been speaking of independent sentences. But we may also, of course, do these same things in *dependent clauses*,—telling what we or somebody else wants, or asking what we or somebody else wants.

¹ Often called "Exhortation."

² Often called "Deliberative Questions."

351. Thus, as we have already seen in the last Reading Matter, we can put the act wanted into a dependent clause introduced by a relative, and can thereby express our *Plan* or *Purpose*, as in *puerōs eligāmus decem, quī lēgēs dent* *let us select ten boys, who shall give us rules* (i. e., for the *purpose* of giving us rules). And we shall presently find in other Reading Matter that we may do the same thing by a clause introduced by *ut*, *in which way*, by *which*, as in *artī militārī studeāmus, ut commodē pugnēmus*, *let us study the art of war, by which* (i. e., by which studying) *let us fight properly* (in English, *in order that we may fight properly, or that we may fight properly*).¹ Or, if a comparative is used, we may express our purpose by a clause introduced by *quō* (Ablative, expressing both Means and the Measure of Difference), as in *artī militārī studeāmus, quō commodius pugnēmus*, *let us study the art of war, by which means (and by which amount) let us fight more properly* (in English, *in order that we may fight more properly*).¹ Or, if we don't want the act to take place, we may express our purpose by a clause, introduced by *nē*, *not*, as in *artī militārī studeāmus, nē male pugnēmus*, *let us study the art of war, let us not fight badly* (in English,¹ *that we may not fight badly, or lest we fight badly*).

a. Notice that *ut* and *nē* make a pair of natural opposites, *ut* introducing an act *wanted*, and *nē* an act *not wanted*.

352. Or, again, we may attach the act wanted or not wanted (1) to another verb, which in itself expresses or suggests wanting, as in *suādeō exspectētis* (or *ut expec-*

¹ The English expression has arisen from a *different* mood-feeling from that of the Latin. But of course, in our final translating, it is the English way that we must use.

tētis),¹ *I advise that you wait*, or *suādeō nē exspectētis*, *I advise that you do not wait* (= *I advise you not to wait*); or (2) to a verb that expresses *not wanting* (a verb of *hindrance, prevention, or check*). In the latter case we must of course use a *negative*. The negatives found are *nē*, *quōminus*,² and *quīn*,³ *that not*.

Obstō nē pugnētis, *I oppose your fighting* (originally, *I oppose: you shall not fight*).

Obstō quōminus pugnētis, *I oppose your fighting* (originally, *I oppose: by which you shall fight the less*).

Nōn obstō quīn pugnētis, *I do not oppose your fighting*.⁴

a. This last connective, *quīn*, is used only after a negative, expressed or implied (here *nōn*).

353. Or, again, we may attach the expression of what we want or do not want to a verb or phrase of *fear or anxiety*, as in *timeō ut⁵ cautī sint*, *I am afraid: I want them to be cautious* (in English, *I am afraid that they MAY NOT be cautious*), or *timeō nē vulnerentur*, *I am afraid: I do not want them to be wounded* (in English, *I am afraid they MAY be wounded*). Such clauses are conveniently called *Clauses of Fear or Anxiety*.

a. These last clauses, after verbs of *Wanting, Hindering, Fearing* and the like, **352, 353**, since they stand in a sort of *case-relation* to the main verb, are called *Substantive Clauses*.

¹There is no connective in this use originally. None was needed for the positive idea. The unnecessary *ut* has come in, as the natural opposite of *nē* (**351, a**), from the purpose clause. In this use, we may call it *formal ut*. In most constructions of the kind shown, *formal ut* may be used or not, as the speaker pleases. We will indicate this by parentheses.

²*Quōminus* = *quō* + *minus*, and meant originally *by which the less*.

³*Quīn* originally meant *by which . . . not*. It is made up of a relative adverb *quī*, *by which*, and *-ne*, *not* (with loss of the final *e*).

⁴*Nōn* here modifies the *whole combination* of the main verb and dependent clause. The meaning is *I do NOT—oppose-by-which-you-shall-not-fight*.

⁵This *ut* is likewise purely *formal*, having come in as the opposite of *nē*.

354. The dependent clauses which we have been looking at *tell* what is wanted or not wanted. But we may of course also hang a *question* of what is wanted or not wanted upon some verb expressing or suggesting the idea of a question, as in *dēlībērāmus quōs ēligāmus*, *we are deliberating whom we shall choose* (or, *whom to choose*).

355. You will soon get to recognize easily, as you read, what these various Subjunctive sentences or clauses do in particular. The important thing, for the present, is to feel *the volitive force* common to them all (the idea of *wanting* something, *expecting* something), and to distinguish it from the *anticipatory* force (the force of merely *looking forward* to something), which you will find in other examples. It will help you, too, if you will constantly keep in mind that, in dependent clauses, the positive conjunction *ut* is used if the act is wanted (or *quō*, if a comparative follows), and one of the negative conjunctions, *nē*, *quōminus*, or *quīn*, if the act is *not* wanted.

356. The Anticipatory Subjunctive has not so large a range as the Volitive. It had ceased to be used in independent sentences (and also in most dependent clauses), before the Romans began to write books, being driven out by the Future Indicative. It remained, however, in steady use in *a few kinds* of dependent clauses, especially those introduced by conjunctions meaning "before" or "until," which naturally (if the act has not yet taken place) suggest the idea of *looking forward* (Anticipation).

357. The next two Lessons are for practice in getting the feeling of the Volitive Subjunctive and the Anticipatory Subjunctive as you read your Latin, and of recognizing the corresponding ideas where they occur in your English exercises.

LESSON XLVIII

358.

VOCABULARY

celeriter, Adv., *swiftly, quickly*.
dum (same word as before), *while*;
until.

fortasse, Adv., *perhaps*.

iter, itineris, N. 3, *way, road*;
journey; march.

māturus, -a, -um, *ripe*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1,
make ripe; hasten, make
haste.

melius, Adv., *better*; cf. *melior*.

mora, -ae, F. 1, *delay*.

nē, Adv., *not*; as Conj., *that not*,
lest.

pervenio, -venire, -vēni, -ven-
tum, 4 (per + venio, come
through), *arrive*.

pīlum, -i, N. 2, *javelin*. A heavy
missile, about six feet long.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus
sum, 3 (make off), *set out, de-*
part.

quō, *by which, in order that*. Conj.
used with Comparatives.

ut or uti, Conj., *in which way*,
as; whereby, in order that;
that; so that.

saltem, Adv., *at least*.

359.

READING MATTER

(Remember that every Subjunctive you meet for the present will express either Will or Anticipation.)

1. (A boy says) Pugnēmus priusquam patrēs nostrī hunc lūdum prohibeant. Saltem mox pugnēmus, ut bellum celeriter cōficiātur. Quid obstat? Hāc morā dēfatigātus sum. (Another says) Minimē. Cum pugnāverimus, bellum, ita ut tū dicis,¹ cōfectum erit. At hic lūdus optimus inter omnīs lūdōs est. Ego suādēō potius expectēmus² dum³ cōsilia nostra mātūra sint. Id optimum est. Saltem expectēmus dum amicus Mārci perveniat; quī ex urbe mātūrat proficisci, atque etiam nunc fortasse in itinere est.

Interim Mārcō et Lūciō potestās dētur lēgum cōstituen-
dārum. Haec iīs suāvis erit, atque ambō diligentissimē et

¹ Ut with Indicative means *as*. Ita ut dicis means, *so as you say* = *just as you say*.

² I advise rather let us wait, = I advise that we wait.

³ Wait until . . . What follows must be an act anticipated.

optimē dēliberābunt. Vel hīs duōbus tertius adiungātur. Hi dum dēliberābunt, nōs cotidiē exerceāmur, quō¹ commodius armīs ūtāmur, utque yirēs nostrae cōnfirmētur. Sic multō melius pugnābimus.

2. (A boy, to his father) Nōnnūllī puerī pīla complūria fēcērunt. (The father) Ego suādeō, pīlis nē² ūtāminī. Periculōsa sunt.

360.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (A boy reports to the teacher) Some of the boys are tired-out with the delay, and wish to finish the war quickly. 2. Isn't this best? What prevents? 3. (Ans.) I advise that they at least wait until Mark's friend shall arrive. 4. Perhaps he has already set out from the city and is on the way. 5. Meanwhile let them drill³ every-day, in-order-that⁴ they may (say "shall") fight more properly, and that⁴ they may (say "shall") get⁵ into condition.⁵ 6. This will be much better.

7. (A father says) I give⁶ you the same advice. The plans for (say "of") the fight are not mature. 8. Let two boys be elected, who shall⁷ make-haste to establish the rules. 9. Or let these two join a third boy to themselves, to assist⁸ them.

10. Shall⁹ the boys⁹ use javelins? 11. (Ans.) I advise them not to use javelins.¹⁰

¹ In order that the more properly. Why is quō used?

² I advise don't use , I advise you not to use

³ Use the reflexive voice.

⁴ Purpose. Do you want quō or ut here? What decides the question?

⁵ Say "establish (cōnfirmō) their strength."

⁶ Say "I advise the same (thing) to you."

⁷ You see that this also expresses purpose. Notice carefully that purpose closely associated with a person will be expressed by a quī-clause, with an act by a quō- or ut-clause (as in the English sentence 5 above).

⁸ This expresses the purpose of appointing the third boy. Say therefore "who shall assist." You must never use the Latin Infinitive to express purpose.

⁹ Called a "Deliberative Question." It is, as you see, merely a Question of the Will (it asks what the person spoken to wants done); and this name, or the name Volitive Question, would be simpler and better.

¹⁰ Say "I advise them they shall not use javelins."

LESSON XLIX

361.

VOCABULARY

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, 3,
cut, kill. (Cf. caedēs, slaughter.)

currō, currere, cucurri, cursum,
3, run.

dōnec, Conj., until (same mean-
ing as dum).

frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3, fore-
head; front.

gravis, -e, heavy; serious.

insequor, -sequi, -secutus sum,
3 (in + sequor, follow against),
follow up, pursue.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum, 3,
send.

nūntius, -i, M. 2, messenger; mes-
sage. (Cf. nūntiō.)

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, wish,
hope.

orō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, beg, en-
treat.

periculōsior, more dangerous.

Compar. of periculōsus, dan-
gerous.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1 (prō
+ nūntiō), proclaim.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, think.
quīn, Conj., by which not, that
not.

quōminus, Conj., by which the
less, that not.

secundum, along. Prep., taking
Acc. of Space-Relation.

362.

READING MATTER

(The Anxious Father)

1. Timeō nē puerī, temerē pugnantes, vulnerentur. Aliud quoque timeō. Nōne aliqui, secundum flūmen currentēs aut aliōs insequentēs, in id cadent? Tē orō, mē adiuuā. Prōnūntiēmus nē omnīnō pugnent puerī. (Ans.) Minimē. Tū, putō, filiō tuō timēs. Nihil obstat quīn¹ tū eum ā pugnā prohibeās. Meum nōn prohibebō.

2. Puerī nunc dēliberant, pilisne² ūtantur. Hoc sī facient, timeō nē in ōra vulnerentur. Gladii etiam ex rōbore facti facile frontēs aut oculōs aut ōra caedent. (Another father) Dē gladiis nōn timeō; nam puerī hī³ capita nōn petent. Sed certē eis imperēmus pilis³ nē ūtantur; idque statim prōnūntiēmus. Pila

¹ Why does quīn have to be used here?

² Pilisne = pilis plus interrogative -ne. Translate by whether.

³ What is the force of the position?

gravia sunt, ac multō periculōsiōra quam gladii. Optimum est (ut) ad puerōs sine morā nūntium mittāmus, quī haec nūntiet. (First speaker) Timeō ut hic nūntius iīs placeat.

3. Nōndum, crēdō, Mārci amīcus ille ab urbe profectus est. Nōs exspectēmus dōnec (or dum) perveniat? (Ans.) Ab urbe, crēdō, iam proficīscī mātūrāvit, moxque ad nōs perveniet. (First speaker) Id optō.

363.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Sextus will be a bad soldier. He cries for nothing.¹ 2. (Another) His father fears that Sextus' forehead or eyes or mouth may be cut. 3. He also fears that, pursuing others swiftly and rashly along the river, he may fall into it. 4. He will order him² not to fight. 5. (First speaker) I hope so. I beg you, advise him to do³ this.

6. Many fathers oppose our using javelins. 7. I'm afraid that they may send a messenger to announce⁴ this. 8. (Another boy) I myself am afraid that in the fight we may not be cautious. 9. Javelins are heavy, and will easily hurt faces. 10. It is best that we shall not use them. 11. (Another) *I* think so, too. Let us proclaim this at once. 12. What⁵ prevents us from doing it?

¹ Say "without any cause."

² Say "that he fight not."

³ Of course you must use a Conjunction and Finite Verb, not an Infinitive.

⁴ Evidently Purpose. Do you want connective *qui*, *ut*, or *quō*, and why?

⁵ Implies "nothing prevents." What Conjunction, then?



GLADIATORS' HELMETS FROM POMPEII

LESSON L

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

USES INHERITED FROM THE OLD OPTATIVE

364. We have learned to recognize the two forces inherited by the Latin Subjunctive from the old Subjunctive, and are ready to learn those that were inherited from the old *Optative*.

365. The Optative probably expressed Wish or Desire originally, and gained at a later time the other powers which we find it to possess, namely those of Obligation or Propriety, Natural Likelihood, Possibility, and Mental Certainty in an imagined case.

a. **Utinam**, *would that*, is often added to the expression of a Wish.

366. Examples of the Leading Forces inherited from the Old Optative:

Utinam filiī mei bene studeant, *would that my sons would study well!* (Wish).

Ā lēgibus nōn discēdāmus, *we should not depart from the rules* (Obligation or Propriety).

Cūr nōn facile vincāmus? *why shouldn't we win easily?* i. e., *we are likely to win easily* (Natural Likelihood).

Puerōs cotīdiē sē exercentēs videās, *you can see the boys drilling every day* (Possibility).

Mārcō duce certē vincāmus, *with Mark as leader we should certainly win* (Mental Certainty).

a. These forces may appear in dependent clauses as well. Thus:

Nūlla causa est cūr ā lēgibus discēdāmus, *there is no reason why we should depart from the rules.* (Dependent Clause of Obligation or Propriety. This is simply a longer way of saying *we should not depart from the rules.*)

Nūlla causa est cūr nōn facile vincāmus, *there is no reason why we shouldn't win easily.* (Dependent Clause of Natural Likelihood. This is only a longer way of saying *we are likely to win easily.*)

367. We may now put together, in the form of a table, what we have learned about the leading powers which the mixed mood called the Subjunctive inherited from the two originally separate moods of which it is made up. And we may conveniently add a working name for each power, as follows:

368. *The Latin Subjunctive inherited the power of expressing:*

- I. Will (*Volitive Subjunctive*)
- II. Anticipation (*Anticipatory Subjunctive*)
- III. Wish (*Optative¹ Subjunctive*)
- IV. Obligation or Propriety (*Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety*)
- V. Natural Likelihood (*Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood*)
- VI. Possibility (*Potential² Subjunctive*)
- VII. Mental Certainty (*Subjunctive of Mental Certainty*)

a. In the independent sentence, the mood-feeling is always that of the speaker himself. In the dependent clause, it may be either that of the speaker or that of the subject (or agent) of the main act. Thus in *pugnēmus*, *let us fight*, it is *I*, the speaker, that want the fighting to be done; but in *dux imperat ut pugnēmus*, *the general orders that we fight*, it is the general that wants it.

b. The negative for Will and Wish is *nē*, for all other mood-forces *nōn*. But remember that for all *questions* the negative is *nōn*.

c. We may now define the moods as expressions of *Attitudes of Mind*, i.e., of *ways of looking at* an act. Thus (Subjunctive) the *wanting* attitude, the *expecting* attitude, the *wishing* attitude, etc. The Indicative looks at an act as a *fact*.

¹ From *optō*, meaning *I wish*. It is from this particular use of the mood that the old Optative receives its name.

² From Latin *potēns*, *having power*. The Potential Subjunctive, like the corresponding English "can" or "may" with the Infinitive, expresses what one *can* do, or *may* do.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

369. In the Fourth Declension the Stem ends in -ū-.

cāsus, *chance*, M. cornū, *horn*, N.

Stem	cāsu-	cornu-	Endings	
			M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsuī, -ū	cornū	-uī, -ū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

370. Nouns of the Fourth Declension in -us are mostly Masculine. Those in -ū are Neuter.

a. Masculines and Feminines are declined alike in this Declension.

371.

VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>address; call, name.</i>	exercitus, -ūs, M. 4, <i>army.</i>
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, <i>arm.</i>	gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (take heavily; cf. <i>gravis</i>), <i>be annoyed.</i>
cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, <i>chance; accident; case.</i>	laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf. <i>laetus</i>), <i>be delighted, rejoice.</i>
cōnātus, -ūs, M. 4, <i>attempt, undertaking.</i>	praeter, Prep., <i>beside, along, past; besides.</i> Takes Acc. of Space-Relation.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, <i>attempt, undertake.</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first.</i> Superl. of prior, <i>former.</i>
cornū, -ūs, N. 4, <i>horn; wing (of an army).</i>	prīmō, Adv., <i>at first.</i>
cupidē, Adv., <i>eagerly.</i>	quī? Adv., <i>how?</i>
dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (dē + capiō, <i>catch away</i>), <i>catch, deceive.</i>	strepitus, -ūs, M. 4, <i>noise.</i>
	utinam, <i>would that.</i>

372.

READING MATTER

(Be ready to state the mood-feeling of each Indicative or Subjunctive in this dialogue. You will find every kind that you have learned, except one.)

Quis¹ est ille cornuum sonus? (Another boy, impatient)
 Quī ego sciam? Hīc, nōn ibi, sum. (First speaker) Cūr sic gravēris? Quid cōnāris? Pugnam cupidē petis? (A third boy, entering) Quid vōs facitis? Nōn obstō quīn pugnētis, sed suādeō expectētis dōnec vērū bellum incipiat. (First speaker) Tūne cornua audivistī? (The newcomer) Audīvī, et cāsū hīs oculīs causam strepitūs vidī. Servius amīcōs suōs armātōs iterum praeter oppidum dūcit. Prīmus inter nōs esse cupit. Videās magnum exercitum puerōrum parvōrum, quī eum sequuntur. (Ans.) Utinam hōc cōnātū dēsistat. Ad eum nūntium mittāmus, quī eum dēcipiat, rēgem appellāns. (The newcomer) Lūdus optimus hic sit; sed timeō nē caedat nūntium Servius. Nam prīmō, omnia temerē crēdēns, laetētur, postea autem maximē gravētur. (Ans.) Nullum sit perīculum. Ego nūntius erō.

373.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. O great king,—for so you have been named by your school-mates,—would that I might be chosen among your first soldiers!
2. (Servius) I have been chosen king? I am greatly delighted.
3. But how have you heard this? 4. (Ans.) It isn't true! You are prepared to believe anything² good² about yourself. 5. You would never be chosen king. 6. Why do you so eagerly attempt it? 7. Now are you still going to lead your army past the town, wearying everybody with the noise of horns, or shall you desist from your undertaking? 8. (Servius) I am awfully³ mad.³ 9. (The tease) What are you going to do (about it)? Are you going to kill me? 10. (Ans.) You deceived me at first. Now, however, I see. 11. But I shall do nothing.
12. Sextus happens to be⁴ sick now, and is not going to fight.
13. (Ans.) Why *shouldn't* he be sick? He never exercises.

¹ Agrees in gender with its noun.

² Say "all things good."

³ = "am greatly annoyed."

⁴ = "by chance is."

LESSON LI

374.

VOCABULARY

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think, plan.*

deinceps, Adv., *in succession, one after the other.*

forsitan, Adv., *perhaps.* Always with the Subjunctive of Possibility.

genus, generis, N. 3, *race, kin; kind, class.*

grātia, -ae, F. 1 (cf. grātus), *popularity, favor.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *exhort, urge.*

necesse, N., indecl., *necessity.* In predicate, = *necessary.*

opus, operis, N. 3, *work, task.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few, a few (only).*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 (per + suādeō, thoroughly advise), *persuade.*

ratio, -ōnis, F. 3 (thinking; hence) *theory, science; manner.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *single, one at a time; one each.*

vix, Adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

voluntās, -ātis, F. 3, *will.*

375.

READING MATTER

(Electioneering)

1. Nōs cōgitās cornuum strepitū terrēre? Arma eius generis¹ nōn periculōsa sunt. Gladiis, nōn cornibus, nōs pugnābimus.

2. (Two plotters. One says) Cūr nōn uterque² exercitus complūrēs eligat ducēs, quī singuli deinceps imperent? (Ans.) Bene. Forsitan nōs ipsī eligāmur. Paucī tam idōneī sunt.

3. Apud omnēs primō Mārcus magnā in grātiā erat. Nunc complūrēs ei diligentissimē obstant, quia optant ut ipsī eligantur.

4. (A boy comes up to electioneer) Optō ut Mārcus eligātur.³ Ego saltem laeter. Sed aliquis dicat: "Is etiam nunc dē studiis, nōn dē operibus bellī faciendis cōgitat. Cūr ei faveāmus? Alium vel complūrēs eligāmus." Id sī aliquis dicet, vix quicquam contrā eum dicāmus. (Ans.) Mārcus nōn dē studiis sed dē bellō nunc cōgitat. Bellī studet ratiōnī. Proelia magnōrum ducum

¹ Arms belonging to this class. Possessive Genitive, but suggests the idea of Description (arms of this kind, SUCH arms).

² Each (of the two).

³ Substantive Clause of Wish.

legit.¹ Nēmō praeter mē id vīdit, sed omnēs facile videant. Praeter Mārcum et Lūcium, nūllī sunt ā quibus exercitūs nostrī commodē dūcantur.² Necesse est ut iī ēligantur,³ quamquam tua obstat voluntās. Tē hortor, Mārcō nē obstēs.

376.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Two friends of Mark discuss the situation.) This⁴ is a great task. What is Mark planning? 2. Why should⁵ he read (up) old battles? Let us urge him to desist. 3. (Ans.) He is studying the theory of war most-diligently, in order that he may conquer the enemy by brains.⁶ 4. But let us not say this to anybody. 5. We are all friends to-one-another⁷ now; but we are about-to fight. 6. In battles it is necessary to deceive an enemy.

7. (Second speaker) What do you think about the plan of choosing several leaders, who shall command one-at-a-time in succession? 8. (Ans.) At first that boy persuaded me, but now I do not approve. 9. Several leaders could⁸ hardly lead well. 10. And few of us are fit.

11. I hope that Lucius may not choose us by chance among his soldiers. 12. I should hate⁹ to be of his army. 13. (Ans.) That is not his will. 14. We are not of that kind. 15. We are not in great favor with¹⁰ him.

¹ *Is reading (up).*

² *By whom . . . can.* What is the idea of the Subjunctive?

³ Substantive Volitive Clause. Comes from a use with two separate sentences: "let these be chosen: it is necessary."

⁴ Must of course agree with the predicate.

⁵ "Should" here expresses Obligation or Propriety. How may you express this idea in Latin?

⁶ Say "by judgment."

⁷ Say "among ourselves."

⁸ How may you express the "can" or "could" idea in Latin? And what do we call a Subjunctive with this idea?

⁹ = "be annoyed."

¹⁰ Use *apud*.

LESSON LII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

377. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

CONJUGATION	I	II	ACTIVE	III	IV
<i>1st Sing.</i>	amārem	monērem	tegerem	caperem	audīrem
<i>2d " "</i>	amārēs	monērēs	tegerēs	caperēs	audirēs
<i>3d " "</i>	amāret	monēret	tegeret	caperet	audiret
<i>1st Pl.</i>	amārēmus	monērēmus	tegerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
<i>2d " "</i>	amārētis	monērētis	tegerētis	caperētis	audirētis
<i>3d " "</i>	amārent	monērent	tegerent	caperent	audirent
PASSIVE					
<i>1st Sing.</i>	amārer	monērer	tegerer	caperer	audīrer
<i>2d " "</i>	amārēris	monērēris	tegerēris	caperēris	audirēris
	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re
<i>3d " "</i>	amārētur	monērētur	tegerētur	caperētur	audirētur
<i>1st Pl.</i>	amārēmur	monērēmur	tegerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
<i>2d " "</i>	amārēminī	monērēminī	tegerēminī	caperēminī	audirēminī
<i>3d " "</i>	amārentur	monērentur	tegerentur	caperentur	audirentur

a. Noticethat you can form the First Person Singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive Active by adding -m to the Present Infinitive Active.

378. The Imperfect Subjunctive of **sum** is :

<i>1st Sing.</i>	essem	<i>1st Pl.</i>	essēmus
<i>2d " "</i>	essēs	<i>2d " "</i>	essētis
<i>3d " "</i>	esset	<i>3d " "</i>	essent

TENSE-MEANING OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

379. The Imperfect Subjunctive is a tense of the past, just as the Present Subjunctive is a tense of the present or future. In what follows, compare the examples corresponding in number. You will find that the only difference lies in the point of view.

a. The same Subjunctive tenses are used for acts seen with reference to a future point of view as for acts seen with reference to the present point of view, just as in English. (Thus we use *shall* both in "we are waiting until James *shall* come," and in "we shall wait until James *shall* come"). Hence in our examples we shall not need to give separate illustrations for the future point of view.

380. Past Point of View

1. *Quid facerem? What was I to do? (then).*
2. *Trīs ēlīgimus puerōs, quī lēgēs cōstituerent, we chose three boys, who were to (or should) establish the rules. (Past Purpose.)*
3. *Timēbam nē complūrēs puerī vulnerārentur, I was afraid that a number of boys might be wounded. (Past Fear.)*
4. *Vōs monuī nē pīlīs ūterēmini, I advised you (that you should not use, =) not to use javelins. (Past Will.)*
5. *Exspectābāmus dum amīcus pervenīret, we were waiting until our friend should arrive. (Past Anticipation.)*
6. *Optābam ut Mārcus vinceret, I hoped that Mark might conquer. (Past Wish.)*
7. *Magnam vidērēs caedem, you might (then) see a great slaughter. (Past Possibility.)*

Present Point of View

1. *Quid faciam? What am I to do? (now, or in the future).*
2. *Trīs ēlīgimus puerōs, quī lēgēs cōstituant, we are choosing three boys, who are to (or shall) establish the rules. (Present Purpose.)*
3. *Timeō nē complūrēs puerī vulnerentur, I am afraid that a number of boys may be wounded. (Present Fear.)*
4. *Vōs moneō nē pīlīs ūtāmini, I advise you (that you shall not use, =) not to use javelins. (Present Will.)*
5. *Exspectāmus dum amīcus perveniat, we are waiting until our friend shall arrive. (Present Anticipation.)*
6. *Optō ut Mārcus vincat, I hope that Mark may conquer. (Present Wish.)*
7. *Magnam videās caedem, you may (now) see a great slaughter. (Present Possibility.)*

a. The English auxiliaries show precisely the same shift to express the shift of the point of view. Thus (from the above):

Past Point of View

was to
should
might

Present Point of View

am to
shall
may

381. We have learned that there are two ways, in dependent clauses, of expressing the idea of futurity from the present point of view, namely the Future Indicative and the Anticipatory Subjunctive (according to the construction needed). On the other hand, there is only one possible way of expressing futurity to the *past* in a corresponding clause, namely the *Anticipatory Subjunctive*. The Indicative has no single form that can convey the idea.

382. When, then, you want to express any past-future idea by a single verb in a dependent clause, you must use the Anticipatory Subjunctive, even if, from the present point of view, the Future Indicative would be used. Thus:

Past Point of View

Annus aderat cum ex scholā excēderēmus (Anticipatory Subjunctive), *the year was at hand in which we should leave the school.*

Present Point of View

Annus adest cum ex scholā excēdēmus (Future Indicative), *the year is at hand in which we shall leave the school.*

a. Remember now that, in your reading, an Imperfect Subjunctive of Anticipation from a past point of view (i. e., a *Past-Future Subjunctive*) may correspond to *either* a Present Subjunctive or a Future Indicative, from the present point of view.

383.

VOCABULARY

aliquantus, -a, -um, some. Neut. as Substantive = *somewhat*.

cōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, 3 (con + sequor), *follow vigorously, overtake; gain.*

facile, Adv. (as before), *easily*. Compar. **facilius**. Superl. **facillimē**.¹

facilis, -e (as before), *easy*. Compar. **facilior**, Superl. **facillimus**.²

difficilis, -e (dis-³ + facilis), *difficult*. Compar. **difficilior**, Superl. **difficillimus**.

quidem, Adv., indeed, at any rate.
Nē . . . quidem, not even.

¹ Follows **facilis** in its Comparison. See next note.

² A special way of comparing, confined to a few Adjectives in -ilis.

³ **Dis-** means *asunder, apart*, and then *not* (**dis-facilis**, *not-easy*).

384.

READING MATTER

1. (Mark, to a supporter) Sī ēlēctus erō, aliquantō maiōrem numerum puerōrum hostibus dabō. Victōria facilis erit. (Ans.) Utinam quidem vincās; et vincās forsitan. Sed magnopere timeō nē vincāris. Nulla saltem causa est cūr cōnātum tuum difficiliōrem faciās quam necesse est. Id quod nunc cōnārī cōgitās certē difficillimum¹ sit. Cūr maiōrem partem hostibus dēs? (Mark) Quō maiōrem exercitus meus cōsequātur glōriam.²

2. (Mark reports at home) Ego et Lūcius rēgēs ēlēctī sumus. Lūciō aliquantō maiōrem numerum mīlitum dedī. (His father) Cūr id fēcisti? Lūcius tē facillimē vincet. Saltem nūlla causa erat cūr cōnātum tuum difficiliōrem quam necesse erat facerēs.³ (Mark) Id fēcī quō maiōrem exercitus meus cōsequerētur³ glōriam. Victōria facillima erit. Lūcius nē cautus quidem est. Cautum hostem vix ille vincat. Corporis modo⁴ viribus ille pugnābit.

385.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Lucius, to a lieutenant) Does Mark not even *desire* victory? 2. Why did he give me a much larger number of soldiers than was necessary? 3. (Ans.) He did this in order that he might gain somewhat greater glory. 4. He did not fear, indeed, that you would conquer him. 5. But there is no reason why you should not conquer. 6. Victory will be easy enough. 7. But it is very difficult (say "most difficult") to *wait*.

¹ *Very difficult.*

² What two words are emphasized by the order, and how?

³ Why is the tense different from the corresponding one above?

⁴ *Only*, emphasizing the preceding word.

LESSON LIII

THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

386. Examples:

Haec multitudo puerorum, this multitude of boys.

Spatium pedum decem, a space of ten feet.

a. The Genitive in such expressions has come down from an original Genitive of the Whole. Thus, in our first example, out of *boys in general* (the *Whole*), this multitude contains a *Part*. But the feeling naturally comes to be simply that of the Material of which the multitude is composed.¹ We may then lay down the rule that:

387. *Material or Composition may be expressed by a Genitive attached to a Noun.*

THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE

388. Examples:

1. *Homō eius generis, a man of this class.*

2. *Homō magnae virtutis, a man of great courage.*

3. *Spatium decem pedum, a space of ten feet.*

4. *Murus decem pedum, a wall of ten feet.*

a. We have already had *eius generis* (in 375), and have seen that, while it originally is a mere Possessive Genitive (thus, *a man belonging to this class*), it practically amounts to a *Description* (*a man of this class, a man of this kind*). Through this and similar phrases the Genitive comes to be thought of as *having the power of describing*, and it is then used in combinations in which it could not have been used originally, as in *homō magnae virtutis* (example 2). This is *nothing but* descriptive.

¹ Cf. such expressions as "a cup of water," of which the original conception was, "a cup containing (not all the water in the world, but) *some* water." The word "some" here marks distinctly the conception of a *part*,—which, in general, we have lost out of our English speech.

b. We have also had *spatium pedum decem* in 386, under the head of the Genitive of Composition. The original meaning was a *space made up of feet, ten in number*. But this likewise suggests *Description according to size or measurement*; and the case is then used descriptively in combinations in which it could not have been used originally, as in *mīrus decem pedum* (example 4), which is *nothing but* descriptive.

c. You see, then, that a Genitive Noun with a modifier may be used to describe, expressing either the idea of the *Kind* (as in examples 1 and 2) or the idea of *Measure* (as in 3 and 4).

But there is another case which is used in a similar way, and we will look at this before laying down our formal rule.

THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE

389. Examples:

1. *Homō eōdem genere*, a man from the same class.
2. *Homō magnā virtūte*, a man with great courage.
3. *Homō magnīs oculīs*, a man with big eyes.
4. *Homō bonō in nōs animō*, a man with kindly feeling toward us.
5. *Magnō honōre apud nōs es*, you are in great honor among us.

a. Evidently these examples also describe, through the *from*, *with*, and *in* ideas.¹ If the three cases making up the Latin Ablative had remained distinct, we should have had an Ablative of Description, a Sociative of Description, and a Locative of Description.

b. In these examples, we find again the idea of *Kind*, as in the Genitive (cf. *magnae virtutis* and *magnā virtūte*). But we also find the ideas of Physical Characteristics (in 3), of Mental State (in 4), and of Situation (in 5). The last two, though occurring frequently, are confined to a few phrases.

We may now make our general statement for the descriptive use of the two cases, as follows:

390. 1. *Kind or Measure may be expressed by the Genitive of a Noun accompanied by a Modifier.*

2. *Kind or Physical Characteristics may be expressed by the Ablative of a Noun accompanied by a Modifier; also, in a few phrases, Mental State or Situation.*

¹ This is shown by the occasional actual occurrence of *ex*, *cum*, and *in*.

391. In tracing the history of these constructions, we have seen two important principles in the growth of language:

1. We have seen a case-use *gain an entirely new force*, through the chance occurrence of that force in a particular set of phrases. This often happens. We may conveniently make ourselves a formula by which to refer hereafter to the process,—namely, x , $x+y$, y (where x is the original force, $x+y$ the original one plus the new one, and y the new one, now used freely *by and for itself alone*, in phrases where it could not have started).¹

2. We have also seen (both in 388 and in 389) that two or three different constructions may suggest the *same* new idea, and so *all* contribute to the same new construction, which is thus like a river made up of two or three distinct streams.² Constructions thus arising may be called Constructions of *Several* Origins, or, more briefly, *Composite* Constructions.

392.

VOCABULARY

adgredior, adgredi, adgressus
sum, 3 (ad + gradior, go at),
attack.

contrōversia, -ae, F. 1, contro-
versy.

dolus, -i, M. 2, trick, stratagem.

index, indicis, M. 3, judge.

iudicium, -i, N. 2, judgment,
opinion.

iudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
index), judge.

dīiudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (dis-
+iudicō, judge between), de-
cide (between).

paulum, -i, N. 2, a little.

post (same word as before, but
used as Adv.), afterward,
later.

393.

READING MATTER

1. (A friend, to Mark) Cōsilium cēpisti³ ut dolō et ratiōne, nōn vī, vincerēs. Ita saltem iudicō; nam huius generis semper

¹ This rise of new meanings in a construction is precisely like the familiar rise of new meanings in *words*, as we see it in our own language. Very few are confined to their original meaning. Often, too, the original meaning entirely disappears. Thus the word "villain" meant at first merely a "peasant" (person attached to a *villa*), and then, through the prejudice of the upper classes, a "peasant, who is naturally a base person," and then merely a "base person."

² It is mainly *because* of such practical coincidences of forces that the three cases that make up the Latin Ablative came to be thought of as one.

³ Have taken up a plan, have formed a plan.

fuistī. Iūdicium tuum nōn probō. Tū quidem magnae virtūtis magnīque cōnsili es. Sed amīcī Lūcī, quōs tū nōn ēligēs, magnīs sunt corporum vīribus. (Mark) Omnia tibi paulō post dīcam. Nunc autem puerīs suādeāmus ut iūdicēs ēligant, quī, cum in proeliō contrōversiae orientur, inter pugnantīs dīiūdicent.

2. Mārcus discipulīs persuāsit ut iūdicēs ēligerent, quī, cum contrōversiae orīrentur, inter pugnantīs dīiūdicārent.

394.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Lucius, to a friend) What is Mark planning? 2. Will he, in the battle, yield to the larger number? 3. He does not seem to me to be of that kind. 4. He is a boy of great courage, and with great strength of body. 5. (Ans.) He has formed a plan, —so I judge at any rate,—to conquer us by theory. 6. We shall see a little later.

7. (Lucius) Why did he persuade us to elect judges to decide between the fighters? 8. Did he fear that, when the-battle-should-take-place, controversies would arise? 9. None (= no controversies) will arise. This is my judgment. 10. We shall attack him without stratagem, and easily conquer him by force.



VIEW FROM PROBABLE SITE OF HORACE'S FARM
Sabine Mountains, twelve miles above Tivoli

LESSON LIV

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

395. In the Fifth and last Declension, the Stem ends in *-ē-*.

		<i>diēs, day, M. and F.</i>	<i>rēs, thing, F.</i>	
<i>Stem</i>		<i>diē-</i>	<i>rē-</i>	<i>Endings</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>-ēī or -eī</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>-ēī or -eī</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>-em</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

a. Notice that an e-sound appears in every ending.

b. In the Genitive and Dative Singular we find long e (*ē*) after a vowel, but short e after a consonant. Thus *diēī*, but *reī*.

396. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except *diēs, day*, and *merīdiēs, midday*. And *diēs* is usually Feminine when meaning an appointed time, or time in general.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN *quis*

397. *Quis*, the vaguest of the Indefinite Pronouns, means *any one, some one*, and is used chiefly with *sī, nisi, nē*, and with Interrogative or Relative words. It always stands *after* one or more words of its clause.

a. This indefinite *quis* is declined like the second part of *ali-quis*. See 207, and a. Thus *ali-quis, ali-qua, ali-quod*, etc., *any*, and *nē quis, nē qua, nē quod*, etc., *lest any . . .*

ABLATIVE OF THE TIME AT OR WITHIN WHICH

398. Specimen Sentences:

Gaius, Marcī amīcus, tertiō diē perveniet, *Gaius, Mark's friend, will arrive (will come through) on the third day.*

Tribus diēbus perveniet, *he will arrive in (within) three days.*

a. In the first example the Ablative **tertiō diē** evidently expresses the time *at which* Gaius will arrive, while in the second the Ablative **tribus diēbus** expresses the time *within which* he will arrive.

We may accordingly lay down the rule that:

399. *The Time At or Within Which anything is or is done may be expressed by the Ablative.*

a. But once in a while prepositions are used. These are **in**, **at** or **in**, and **cum**, *with*. We may compare our own varying usage. Thus:

"And in the dawn he bade them all farewell" ("Time when" expressed through the *Locative* idea).

"And with the dawn he bade them all farewell" ("Time when" expressed through the *Sociative* idea).

b. This occasional use of the Prepositions **in** and **cum** shows us that the Latin Ablative of Time is of *double* origin, like a river made by two streams that have flowed together,—though it is probable that the *Locative* stream was larger than the *Sociative*, just as, in the corresponding English expressions of time, "in" or "at" is commoner than "with."

THE IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS

400. Specimen Sentences:

Diū pugnātum est, (it was fought for a long time, =) *there was a long battle.*

Mihi nocētur, (it is being injured to me, =) *I am being injured:*

a. These verbs, as you see, have no subject, and represent the mere action as such. They are accordingly called *Impersonal*. It is evident that *any* verb might be used in this way. Notice, too, that:

b. The Dative (**mihi**) of the Active is retained.

We may then state the Roman usage as follows:

401. Any Verb may be used in the Third Singular Passive without a Subject, and is then called Impersonal.

402. Verbs governing a Dative in the Active are used ONLY Impersonally in the Passive. The Dative remains.

403.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F. 5, *sharp edge; line of battle.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *accustom.*

circum, *around, around in.* Prep., taking Acc., or Adv.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (circum + veniō, come around), *surround.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *communicate.*

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3 (con- + vertō, turn thoroughly), *turn about.*

diēs, diēī, M. and F. 5, *day.*

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, 3, *divide.*

extendō, extendere, extendī, extēntum and extēnsū, 3 (ex + tendō), *stretch out, extend.*

gradus, -ūs, M. 4, *step.*

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instructum, 3, *draw up.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M. 3, *order, rank.*

pār, pār, Gen. paris, *equal, even.*

perītus, -a, -um, *having experience of, experienced in.* Takes Objective Genitive.

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3 (prō + gradior), *go forward, advance.*

quis (quī), Indefinite Pronoun, *any.* (See 397, a).

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum, 3 (re + capiō), *take back.*

Mē recipiō, *I return, I retreat.*

rēs, reī, F. 5, *thing, affair, matter.* Rēs militāris, *warfare.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

signum, -ī, N. 2, *sign, signal; standard.* Convertōsigna, *turn the standards, wheel about.*

404.

READING MATTER

(The preparations) Duo exercitūs diem cōstituērunt, quā diē¹ in aciē dēcertārent. Hic diēs dictus est ex eō diē septimus. Interim Mārcus suōs reī militārī adsuēfaciēbat,² ut, cum pugnā-

¹ Latin often repeats the Antecedent in the Relative Clause.

² Was accustoming=was trying to accustom. In this way the Imperfect gets the power of expressing Attempted Action.

rētur,¹ quaecumque necesse essent, haec statim facerent. Cotīdiē aciem instruēbat,² instructam³ circum silvās dūcēbat. Tum exercitum in duōs dividēbat exercitūs quī inter sē⁴ pugnārent. Militēs alterius⁵ exercitūs docēbat pugnantis⁶ ordinēs servāre, paribus gradibus⁷ prōgredi, aut fugā simulātā sē recipere, tum signīs conversīs cornibusque extentīs alterum exercitum circumvenīre, atque omnibus ex partibus eum adgredi. (Ques.) Nōne Lūcium aliquis dē eius cōsiliis docēbit? (Ans.) Prohibitum est nē quis cōsilia ducis suī cum alterō duce commūnicāret.

2. Timeō nē, cum contrōversiae orientur, difficile sit inter pugnantis diiudicāre. (Ans.) Id iudicēs, rei militāris peritī, facile facient. (First speaker) Iudicēs nōn omnia vident.

405.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Mark's army was now studying military theory. 2. Every-day he would-divide⁸ his (men) into two parties. 3. He would-draw-up each party in line-of-battle. 4. He was-trying-to-teach⁹ the soldiers to advance side-by-side,¹⁰ or to retreat, keeping their ranks. 5. One party would-pretend flight, the other would-pursue; then, a little later, the former would-wheel-about and, with its wings extended, would-surround the other and attack it.

6. By (say "on'") the seventh day, when the-battle-will-be-fought,¹¹ Mark's soldiers will have been accustomed to all these matters, and will do at once whatever shall be necessary.

7. Are Lucius' soldiers experienced in these matters? 8. (Ans.) No one knows. 9. It has been forbidden that any-one shall communicate the plans of his army to (Latin *with*) the other army.

¹ What kind of Subjunctive? Of what kind is the next?

² *Every day was drawing up*=*every day would draw up*. The Imperfect, as you see, comes to have the power of expressing *Habitual Action*.

³ *Drawn up*=*when drawn up, after drawing it up*.

⁴ =*with each other*.

⁸ Read footnote 2 again.

⁵ *Of one army* (of the two).

⁹ Read footnote 2, p. 158, again.

⁶ With what agreeing? Be careful.

¹⁰ Say "with equal steps."

⁷ *With equal steps*, =*side by side*.

¹¹ Use Impersonal Verb.

LESSON LV

DECLENSION OF *domus*, F., *house* or *home*

406. *Domus* is declined in full according to the Fourth Declension, but has also a number of forms of the *Second Declension*. Generally speaking, these Second Declension forms are more common than the others.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i> domus	<i>Pl. Nom.</i> domūs
<i>Gen.</i> domūs or domī	<i>Gen.</i> domuū or domōrum
<i>Dat.</i> domuī or domō	<i>Dat.</i> domibus
<i>Acc.</i> domum	<i>Acc.</i> domūs or domōs
<i>Voc.</i> domus	<i>Voc.</i> domūs
<i>Abl.</i> domū or domō	<i>Abl.</i> domibus

THE ORDINARY EXPRESSION OF PLACE

407. As we have repeatedly seen in our reading,
The idea of Place is regularly expressed as follows:

1. *Place From Which* by the Separative Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.
2. *Place To Which* by the Accusative with **ad** or **in**.
3. *Place In Which* by the Locative Ablative with **in**.

Thus:

Ab urbe venit, he comes from the city.

Ad urbem venit, he comes to the city.

In urbe est, he is in the city.

408. But a few classes of words were in such common use in the expression of these ideas that the preposition never came into regular use with them (just as, in English, we say "go home," never "go to home"). These are: Names of Towns and Small Islands, the words for *home* and *the country* (*domus* and *rūs*), and a few others. With these words the Place From Which is expressed by the bare Ablative, the Place To Which by the bare Accusative, and the Place In Which by the bare Locative.—Now in general the Locative case is mixed with the Ablative. But in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions the Locative has a separate case-form, *which happens to end just like the Genitive*. Hence the following usage:

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH NAMES OF TOWNS
AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH *domus* AND *rūs*

409. Special Constructions of the Place From Which, To Which, or In Which.

1. *To express the Place From Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition.*

*Rōmā*¹ *profectus est*, he has set out from Rome.

*Capreīs*² *profectus est*, he has set out from Capri.

a. Similarly *domō*, from home, *rūre*, from the country.

Domō vēnit, he has come from home.

Rūre vēnit, he has come from the country.

2. *To express the Place To Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative without a Preposition.*

Rōmam revertētur, he will return to Rome.

Capreās revertētur, he will return to Capri.

a. Similarly *domum*, home, and *rūs*, to the country.

Domum revertētur, he will return home.

Rūs revertētur, he will return to the country.

3. *To express the Place In Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative,—which in the Singular Number of the First or Second Declension is identical with the Genitive, and elsewhere with the Ablative.*

Amīcus meus Rōmae est, my friend is in Rome.

*Amīcus meus Corfinī*³ *est*, my friend is in Corfinium.

*Amīcus meus Tībure*⁴ *est*, my friend is in Tivoli.

Amīcus meus Capreīs est, my friend is in Capri.

a. Similarly *domī*, at home, and *rūrī* or *rūre*, in the country.

Amīcus meus domī est, my friend is at home.

Amīcus meus rūrī est, my friend is in the country.

¹ From Nominative *Rōma*.

³ From Nominative *Corfinium*.

² From Nominative *Caprae* (Pl.).

⁴ From Nominative *Tibur*.

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

410. *With a number of words in very common use, the Place In Which (literal or figurative) may be expressed by the Ablative either with or without in.*

a. So for example with *locō*, *parte*, *regiōne*, *cornū* (*wing*), and with Adjectives meaning *middle* or *all*. Thus:

eō locō or *in eō locō*, *in that place*.

eā regiōne or *in eā regiōne*, *in that region*.

tōtā Italiā or *tōtā in Italiā*, *in all Italy, throughout Italy*.

ABLATIVE OF THE POINT OF VIEW FROM WHICH

411. *The Romans often used the Ablative with ab or ex to express the Point of View From Which something is looked at (where our conception is that of the Place Where).*

Hostēs nōn ā fronte adgrediēmur, *we shall not attack the enemy on the front* (in Latin, *from the front*).

Prope ā meā domō habitat, *he lives near my house* (near, reckoned from my house).

a. Among the commonest examples are *ā fronte*, *on the front*, *ā tergō*, *on the rear*, *ā latere*, *on the side*, *ab* or *ex utrāque parte*, *on either side*, *omnibus ex partibus*, *on all sides*, etc.

412.

VOCABULARY

aestās, -ātis, F. 3, *summer*.

agmen, *agminis*, N. 3 (cf. *agō*, drive, lead), *army* (on a march).

agō, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctum*, 3, *drive*, *lead*; *carry on*, *do*; *pass*, *spend* (of time).

Capreae, -ārum, F. 1, *Capri*.

Corfinium, -ī, N. 2, *Corfinium*.

deinde, Adv. *afterward*, *next*; *in the second place*.

domus, -ūs and -ī, F. 4 and 2, *house*, *home*.

hiems, *hiemis*, F. 3, *storm*; *winter*.

impetus, -ūs, M. 4 (cf. *in* and *petō*), *attack*.

Italia, -ae, F. 1, *Italy*.

Pompeī (pronounce Pompei'-yī), -ōrum, M. 2, *Pompeii*.

prīmum, Adv. (the first thing), *first*, *in the first place*.

Rōma, -ae, F. 1, *Rome*.

simul, *simultaneously*, *at the same time*, *together*.

tardē, Adv., *slowly*, *late*.

tergum, -ī, *back*, *rear* (of an army).

Tībur, *Tīburis*, N. 3, *Tivoli*.

READING MATTER

413. 1. Quā (in)¹ regiōne Italiae, Mārce, iste amīcus tuus habitat? (Ans.) Hieme Rōmae habitat, aestāte aut Tibure aut Pompeiis aut Capreis. Etiam rūri prope ā Rōmā villam parvam habet, et ibi saepe, domō Rōmā² profectus, reliquā partem diēi agit. (Ques.) Nuncne domi est, aut iam hīc Corfini? (Ans.) Domō, crēdō, profectus est, sed Corfinium nōndum pervēnit. Tardē certē venit.

2. Quid Mārcus hīs diēbus faciēbat? (Ans.) Suōs rei mīlitari adsuēfaciēbat; nam magnā ille est diligentia. Nōnumquam agmen, aut paribus gradibus, aut nullis ordinibus, circum silvās agēbat, ut corpora suōrum labōre cōfirmārentur. Nōnumquam exercitum in duās dividēbat partēs, quārum altera, cornibus extētis, alteram circumveniēbat, in eamque simul ā fronte, ab latere, ā tergō impetum faciēbat.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

414. 1. What was Lucius doing in these days? 2. (Ans.) Sometimes he would lead his army around-in the woods, sometimes he would draw up a line-of-battle. 3. (Ques.) Did he teach his men to retreat, then to wheel-about and make an attack simultaneously on the front, on the side, and on the rear? 4. (Ans.) No, Lucius did none³ of these things. He is not (a boy) of great diligence of mind. 5. He did not fear that he would be beaten. 6. And so he will effect nothing.

7. In what part of Italy do you live? 8. (Ans.) In winter I live in Pompeii or Rome, the summer I pass in Corfinium among the mountains. 9. I love to be in the country, and so I am⁴ never slow⁴ to set-out⁴ from home. Neither am I ever slow to return home; for I enjoy life at home also.

¹ Parentheses mean that the preposition may be used or not, at will.

² From home from Rome (English, less exactly, from his home in Rome).

³ Use nihil (nothing).

⁴ Say "I never set out slowly."

LESSON LVI

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

415. The Perfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-erim**, etc., to the Perfect Stem, and the Passive by the Perfect Passive Participle plus **sim**, etc. When, then, you have learned it for one verb, you can form it for any other from the last two Principal Parts.

ACTIVE					
CONJUGATION	I	II	III		
<i>1st Sing.</i>	amāverim	monuerim	tēxerim		
<i>2d “</i>	amāverīs	monuerīs	tēxerīs		
<i>3d “</i>	amāverit	monuerit	tēxerit	Similarly cēperim, etc.	
<i>1st Pl.</i>	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	tēxerīmus	audīverim, etc.	
<i>2d “</i>	amāverītis	monuerītis	tēxerītis		
<i>3d “</i>	amāverint	monuerint	tēxerint		
PASSIVE					
<i>1st Sing.</i>	amātus sim	monitus sim	tēctus sim	Similarly	
<i>2d “</i>	“ sīs	“ sīs	“ sīs	captus sim, etc.	
<i>3d “</i>	“ sit	“ sit	“ sit	audītus sim, etc.	
<i>1st Pl.</i>	amātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	tēctī sīmus		
<i>2d “</i>	“ sītis	“ sītis	“ sītis		
<i>3d “</i>	“ sint	“ sint	“ sint		

a. Notice that, in the Active, every ending contains an i-sound.

b. Notice also that (except in the First Person Singular) the Perfect Subjunctive is exactly like the Future Perfect Indicative in spelling; but the *-i-* of the *Subjunctive* is long, except in the places of regular shortening (100, 2).

416. The Perfect Subjunctive of **sum** is:

1st Sing.	fuerim	1st Pl.	fuerīmus
2d "	fuerīs	2d "	fuerītis
3d "	fuerit	3d "	fuerint

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS (i. e., Verbs *Half-Deponent*)

417. Semi-Deponents are verbs of which the *Perfect System* is Passive in form but Active in meaning. Thus:

audeo	audere	ausus sum, dare
gaudeo	gaudere	gāvisus sum, rejoice, be glad of
soleo	solere	solitus sum, be accustomed
fido	fidere	fisus sum, trust

THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF FACT

(Existing in Dependent Clauses only)

418. Specimen Sentences:

1. *Mārcus tālis est puer quī labōrāre amet, Mark is such a boy that loves to work* (in English, *such a boy that he loves, or simply a boy that loves*).
2. *Ita rūs amō, ut maximam partem aestātis ibi semper agam, I so love the country that I always spend most of the summer there.*
3. *Numquam in nostrā scholā tam male est, quā aliquis puerōs parvōs dēfendat, it is never so bad in our school that some one does not defend the little boys* (quā=that . . . not).
4. *Effēcimus ut in hāc scholā parvī puerī ā magnīs nōn lacessantur, we have brought-it-about that in this school the little boys are not worried by the big ones.*

Study of the Above Sentences

419. In all four examples, notice the following points of likeness:

1. What is expressed by the Subjunctive is a *fact*. If the clauses were independent, the *Indicative* would be used in all (*Mārcus . . . amat, ego . . . agō, etc.*). Hence we may conveniently say that these Subjunctives are not *true* Subjunctives, but belong to the province of *Fact*. They are usually best translated by the English *Indicative*.

2. The dependent clauses express something that *follows from the nature of something else*, given in the main sentence (*such that he, etc., loves so much that he, etc.*). Such clauses are accordingly called *Consecutive* (from *cōsequor, follow*).

420. The *differences* are as follows:

1. The first clause *describes* the antecedent (Mark is *such a boy that . . .*). Hence we may call it a *Descriptive Clause*.

2. The second and third clauses express *result* (loves so much that . . . , never is so bad that . . .). Hence we should call them *Clauses of Result*.

3. The last clause (*ut nōn lacessantur*) expresses the *Object of effēcimus*, just as an Accusative Noun would (it is *the thing which* we have brought about). Hence we should call it a *Substantive Clause of Fact*.

We may combine these statements in a rule:

421. *In Dependent Clauses of Consecutive nature or origin, the Subjunctive is used to express Facts (negative nōn), as follows:*

1. In Descriptive Clauses of Fact, with a Relative Pronoun.

2. In Result Clauses of Fact, with *ut, ut nōn, or quīn*.

3. In Substantive Clauses of Fact, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, after verbs of *Bringing About* or *Existence*.¹

Is, ille, ETC., WITH DESCRIPTIVE MEANING (= talis)

422. Thus far, we have seen *is, ille, hic, and iste* used only as Determinative Pronouns, telling *who* is meant, etc.

But they are also freely used with *Descriptive* force, telling *what kind of person is meant*,—i. e., with the same meaning as *tālis, such*. Thus:

Mārcus is est quī labōrāre amet, Mark is one that loves to work, or Mark is a boy that loves to work.

a. Note that English "a . . . who" is always descriptive.

b. One may also use a Descriptive Clause *without* any introductory word at all, after expressions of existence or non-existence. Thus:

Sunt quī hoc crēdant, there are (people) who believe this.

c. Summary. *The Descriptive Subjunctive Clause is used after descriptive antecedents not complete in themselves, and after general expressions of existence or non-existence (since these demand a descriptive idea to fill them out).*

¹ An extension from the idea of Effecting. "It has been brought about that" suggests "it is now the case that."

423.

VOCABULARY

(For *audeō*, *gaudeō*, *soleō*, *fidō*, see 417).

communis, -e, *common*.

confidō, -*fidere*, -*fisus sum*, 3 (con- + *fidō*), *trust (to)*, *confide (in)*.

diversus, -a, -um, *different*.

Gāius, -i, M. 2, a name.

intervāllum, -i, N. 2, *interval*.

loquor, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*, 3, *talk*,
converse.

modus, -i, M. 2, *measure*; *method*,
way, *manner*, *fashion*; *kind*.

prōvideō, -*vidēre*, -*vidī*, -*vīsum*, 2
(*prō* + *videō*), *foresee*, *provide*.

quaerō, *quaerere*, *quaesivī*, *quae-*
sītum, 3, *inquire*, *ask*, *seek*.

tālis, -e, *such*.

unā, Adv., *in unison*, *together*.

424.

READING MATTER

(Be ready to explain every Subjunctive in this Lesson. If anywhere you don't see at once, run down the list in the table in 368. If your example does not belong to any of these, it must be some kind of Consecutive Clause of Fact. In that case, see, finally, under *which* of our three kinds in 421 it comes.)

1. (*Gāius*, *amicus Mārci*, *Corfinium pervenit*, *domūque Mārci inventā ex servō ita quaerit*) *Mārcusne domī est?* *Ego Gāius sum.* (*Servus respondet*) *Nunc abest*, *sed domum mox revertētur.* *Dixit ut sē hīc exspectārēs.* *Nōn longum erit intervāllum.*

2. (*Mārcus revertitur.* *Duo amīcī inter sē loquuntur.* *Mārcus*) *Ubi hunc annum ēgisti?* (*Gāius*) *Diversis (in) locīs; sed semper fuī in Italiā.* *Hiemem ēgī Rōmae.* *Rōmā nunc veniō; sed hāc aestāte fuī etiam Capreīs, Pompeīs, Tībure.* *Nunc gaudeō unā tēcum¹ Corfinī esse, et dē communibus studiīs nostrīs loquī.*

3. (*Mārcus ea quae fecit Gāiō dicit.* *Is ita respondet*) *Sī quis est tālis quī perīcula amet, tū certē is es.* *Sī quis est quī semper omnia ausus sit, tū is es.* *Sed nēmō est quī sē numquam dēcipiat.* *In hāc rē, putō, vincēris.* *Ipsē effēcistī ut hostis multitūdine² militum multō validior sit.* *Iūdicium tuum nōn laudō.*

¹ With Personal, Rel., and Interrog. Pronouns, *cum*, *with*, is enclitic.

² "Much stronger by means of" suggests the idea "much stronger in," i.e., the idea of *the Respect in Which* the enemy is stronger (x+y).

LESSON LVII

DETERMINATIVE CLAUSES

425. Specimen Sentence (from last Reading Matter):

Mārcus *ea* quae fēcit **Gāio** dīcit, *Mark tells Gaius the things which he has done.*

a. In this sentence, **ea** is evidently Determinative. It means "the things." But it isn't, by itself, determinative enough. We should still have to ask, "*what* things do you mean?" To this, the answer is given by the fact stated in the Relative Clause, "(the things) *which he has done.*" The clause here *pieces out* an incomplete Determinative word. We should accordingly name it a *Determinative Clause*.

Such clauses are extremely common. You have repeatedly read them, and have written Latin examples of them yourself.

b. The idea is in strong contrast with that of the *Descriptive Clause*. The Determinative Clause, with its Antecedent word (e. g., **is**), is like a big Determinative Pronoun (*pointing* at something). The Descriptive Clause, with its Antecedent word, is like a big Adjective (*describing* something).

c. Of course *anything* may be determined, by the mention of some fact that fixes it,—thus a person, a thing, a time, as in the following:

(From 204) **Solus** erat cum iīs puerīs quī eum lacessēbant, *he was alone with the boys who were worrying him.* Determinative quī-Clause (fixing the boys meant).

(From the same passage) **Tum** cum tū **Sextum** audiēbās, nōs nōn aderāmus, *at the time when you heard Sextus, we were not present.* Determinative cum-Clause (fixing the time meant).

We may then lay down our rule as follows:

426. *An Indicative Clause, with an appropriate Relative or Conjunction, may be used to determine an antecedent of any kind (a person, a thing, a time; etc., etc.).*

THE DATIVE OF TENDENCY, PURPOSE, OR RESULT¹

427. Specimen Sentences:

Cui hoc bellum bonō erit? *to whom will this war be (for) a good thing*
(i. e., *whom will it tend to benefit*)?

Hī milītēs nobīs auxiliō venient, *these soldiers will come for an aid*
to us (i. e., *to-aid us*).

Hoc bellum puerōrum magnae mihi cūrae est, *this war of the boys*
is (for) a great anxiety to me.

a. In each of these sentences, besides a Dative of the Person Concerned (*cui, nobīs, mihi*; 260), there is another Dative (*bonō, auxiliō, cūrae*) with the idea of *Direction* ("to" or "for"). It expresses that *toward which* something tends (Tendency; thus *bonō*); or something which it is meant to reach (Purpose; thus *auxiliō*); or something which it *does* reach (Result; thus *cūrae*).

b. The nouns so used are all Abstract,² and Singular.

We may then lay down the rule that:

428. *The Dative of many Abstract Nouns may be used to express Tendency, Purpose, or Result.*

DATIVE OF THE CONCRETE OBJECT FOR WHICH

429. Specimen Sentences:

Locum castrīs cēpistis? *have you taken a place for a camp?*

Diem proeliō cōstituistis? *have you appointed a day for the battle?*

a. Here the Dative is again one of Figurative Direction, expressing that for which something is intended. But the *nouns* used are *Concrete*.³ The verbs with which they are employed express *Choosing* or *Appointing*. Hence we may lay down the rule that:

430. *A Dative of the Concrete Object For Which something is intended may be used with phrases containing verbs of Choosing or Appointing.*

¹ Also called the *Predicate Dative* (it is regularly predicative).—The name "Two Datives" is also given to the combination (see a).

² Denoting things that cannot be perceived by the senses, as "care."

³ Denoting things that can be perceived by the senses, as "camp."

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE WITH *fīdō* AND *cōnfīdō*

431. Specimen Sentences:

Tibi cōnfīdō, I trust (to) you.

Multitudinī suae cōnfīdunt, they trust (to) their numbers.

Multitudine suā cōnfīdunt, they trust in their numbers.

As you see from these sentences,

432. *Fīdō* and *cōnfīdō*, *trust*, may take the *Ablative*. But they may also take the *Dative* (so regularly of a person).¹

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT, DURATION, OR DEGREE

433. Specimen Sentences:

Mūrus multōs pedēs longus est, the wall is many feet long.

Duās hōrās cotīdiē ambulō, I walk two hours every day.

Multum cotīdiē ambulō, I walk much (a good deal) every day.

a. As you see, the Accusatives in these examples all indicate *Extent*,—of space, of time, or of the amount of activity. Hence, distinguishing by appropriate names, we may say that:

434. *Extent of Space, Duration of Time, and Degree are expressed by the Accusative.*²

435.

READING MATTER

(Continue to study the Subjunctives with especial care.)

(*Mārcus respondet*) *Mihi nōn multum cōnfīdis. Sed nōn effīcis ut verear.*³ *Mē nōn nōvistī. Sunt quī perīcula semper timeant. Ego eius modī*⁴ *nōn sum. Sunt quī omnia audeant. Neque eius sum generis. Is*⁵ *sum quī, cōnsiliō fidēs, semper solitus*

¹They take the *Dative* as verbs of Attitude (cf. English "trust to"). The *Ablative* construction is Locative (cf. English "trust in").

²This Accusative is like the one with *per*. It expressed originally the idea of continuous contact.

³"You do not make that I fear." In English, *you do not make me fear*. What kind of clause?

⁴*Of this fashion, of this kind.*

⁵*Is* is here descriptive, = *tālis*. Translate by *I am one who*.

sim omnis cāsūs prōvidēre. Quod¹ nunc fēcī. Nam primum militēs optimi generis elēgī, et quī mihi cōnfīderent. Deinde hōs rei militārī adsuēfēcī, ita ut omnia facere didicerint. Inter alia didicērunt fugam primō simulāre, tum signa convertere, inque hostēs omnibus ex partibus simul impetum facere. Cōgitō Lūcium hōc modō² dēcipere. Nam iī quōs ille elēgit,³ multitūdine suā cōnfisī, temerē nostrōs cōnsequentur, neque ūllum timēbunt cāsum. (Gāius) Nōnne Lūcius quoque hōc intervāllō aliquot diērum ūtitur? (Mārcus) Forsitan is agmen suum aliquot hōrās per silvās ēgerit, et militēs eius inter sē gladiīs et scūtīs pugnaverint; sed certē nihil aliud (=else) ēgērunt.

436.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Let us talk together (= between ourselves). You have inquired about my plans. 2. In-the-first-place, Lucius is not of-a-kind⁴ to have foreseen that⁵ which I am planning. 3. There are boys who work with brains. 4. He is not of this class. 5. He is one⁶ who has been accustomed to conquer; and so he trusts himself. 6. He has always profited-by the carefulness⁷ of his friends in all things, so that he has never been careful⁷ himself. 7. In-the-second-place, by⁸ giving him a much larger army, I have made him not fear⁹ any danger. 8. He trusts much in his strength. (Gaius) I shall rejoice if you conquer him by this method.

¹And this. Quod fēcī is not dependent, but goes right on. (Call it a Forward-Moving Relative Clause or Sentence).

²By this method. Means suggesting a new force, that of Way or Manner (x+y). We shall see this force in its full and separate power later. It starts up from several sources.

³Is this clause Determinative or Descriptive?

⁴Say "such who has foreseen," using tālis or is (it makes no difference which).

⁵Use is (Neut. Pl.). Is it Determinative or Descriptive here?

⁶Use is. Is it Determinative or Descriptive here?

⁷Use diligētia and diligēns for "carefulness" and "careful."

⁸Use the Ablative Absolute (a much larger army having been given him).

⁹Say "have made that he does not fear."

LESSON LVIII

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

437. The Past Perfect Subjunctive is formed in the Active by adding *-issem*, etc., to the Perfect Stem, and in the Passive by combining the Perfect Passive Participle with *essem*, etc. When, then, you have learned it for one verb, you can form it for any other from the last two Principal Parts.

ACTIVE

CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>amāvissem</i>	<i>monuisssem</i>		Similarly
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāvissēs</i>	<i>monuissēs</i>		
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāvisset</i>	<i>monuisset</i>	<i>tēxissem</i> , etc.	
<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>	<i>monuissēmus</i>	<i>cēpissem</i> , etc.	
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>	<i>monuissētis</i>	<i>audīvissem</i> , etc.	
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>amāvissent</i>	<i>monuissent</i>		

PASSIVE

<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>amātus essem</i>	<i>monitus essem</i>	
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>" essēs</i>	<i>" essēs</i>	Similarly
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>" esset</i>	<i>" esset</i>	<i>tēctus essem</i> , etc.
<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>amātī essēmus</i>	<i>monitī essēmus</i>	<i>captus essem</i> , etc.
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>" essētis</i>	<i>" essētis</i>	<i>audītus essem</i> , etc.
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>" essent</i>	<i>" essent</i>	

438. The Past Perfect Subjunctive of the Irregular Verb *sum* is:

<i>1st Sing.</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>1st Pl.</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>2d " "</i>	<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>2d " "</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>3d " "</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>3d " "</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON

439. Specimen Sentences:

Vulnere aeger sum, I am ill from (or with) a wound.

Glōriā tuā gaudeō, I rejoice in your glory.

a. In both these sentences the Ablative expresses *Cause* or *Reason* (English *from, with, in, on account of, because of*). No preposition appears.

Our rule will then be:

440. *Cause or Reason may be expressed by the Ablative.*¹

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

441. Specimen Sentences:

Lucius multitudine suōrum valet, Lucius is strong in the number of his soldiers.

Mārcus et Lucius virtūte parēs sunt: ingenio nōn sunt parēs, Mark and Lucius are equal in courage: in intellect they are not equal.

a. In these sentences the Ablative answers the question, *In what respect? Wherein?*

We may then lay down the rule that:

442. *The Respect in Which the meaning of a Verb or Adjective is to be taken may be expressed by the Ablative.*²

¹The construction is of composite origin, the idea having been expressed originally by three entirely distinct cases, the Ablative, the Sociative, and the Locative. Our English ways of expressing the idea correspond (thus "desperate from his trouble," "desperate with his trouble," "desperate in his trouble"); only, in English the use of the differing *Prepositions* has kept the three constructions from coming to be thought of as one.

²The construction is of composite origin, having come from three distinct sources, the true Ablative of the Point of View from Which (thus "equal from the Point of View of courage"), the Sociative (thus "strong with the number of his soldiers," "by means of the number of his soldiers"), and the Locative (thus "equal in courage"). We have the same ways of expressing the idea in English, but the use of differing *Prepositions* keeps them from becoming one in our thought.

THE SUBSTANTIVE quod-CLAUSE OF FACT

443. Specimen Sentences:

Id mihi placet, quod puerī pīlis nōn utuntur, this pleases me, (namely) that the boys do not use javelins.

Mihi placet quod puerī pīlis nōn utuntur, it pleases me that the boys do not use javelins.

Quod puerī pīlis nōn utuntur laudō, I praise (the fact) that the boys do not use javelins.

a. In the first sentence the quod-Clause explains *id*, standing in a sort of Apposition to it. In the second and third sentences, the use is the same, except that the clause stands *by itself*, as the Subject or Object of the verb.

b. In all three examples the quod-Clause is like a Noun or Pronoun,—i. e., it is *Substantive*. And, in all, it states a *fact*.

We may then lay down the rule that:

444. *A Substantive quod-Clause of Fact (Indicative) may be used in explanation of some antecedent word; or it may itself form the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

a. **Quod-Clause of Respect.** The Substantive quod-Clause may be used in loose connection with the main sentence, meaning *with respect to the fact that, as to the fact that, as for . . .* Thus:

Quod tū victōriam exspectās, vidēbimus cum pugnābimus, as for the fact that you expect victory (= as for your expecting victory), we shall see when we fight.

445.

VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, equal; fair; favorable.

aēquē, Adv., equally.

auctōritās, -ātis, F. 3, authority.

concedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (con- + cēdō, yield thoroughly), yield, grant, concede.

cōpia, -ae, F. 1, abundance, supply. In Pl., resources; (military) forces.

disciplīna, -ae, F. 1, discipline.

imperium, -ī, N. 2, command, empire.

libenter, Adv., willingly.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, move.

opus (same word as before), with *est* and *Abl.* = *there is need of*. Originally this *Abl.* was one of Means (thus *there is work to be done with . . .*)

saepe (as before), *often*. Compar. *saepius*, Superl. *saepissimē*.

tempus, temporis, N. 3, time.

universus, -a, -um, all (without exception).

446.

READING MATTER

(Note that *times*, as well as persons, are here described.)

1. Mārcus tālis erat quī, cōnsiliō fīdēns, semper solitus esset omnis cāsūs prōvidēre. Lūcius is erat quī, vīribus suis cōnfisus, nihil umquam timuisset. In eius modī certāminibus saepe vīcerat, nōnumquam cāsū, saepius vīribus magnīs suis, saepissimē autem cōnsiliīs et opibus Mārcī in omnibus rēbus fructus.¹ Sed nōn unā² nunc cōnsilia capiēbant. Hoc autem tempus tāle erat quō (*or cum*) cōnsiliō ac iūdictiō magis quam vīribus opus esset. Quā rē³ is quī omnia perīcula prōviderat⁴ meliōre (in) locō erat quam is quī nihil timuerat.⁴

2. Grātiā aequē valēbant Mārcus et Lūcius, auctōritāte plūs⁵ valēbat⁵ Mārcus. Hic et dūrus et aequus erat. Quā rē cōpiāe eius per hōs diēs semper in opere versātae sunt; neque ūllum fuerat tempus cum is meliōre (in) locō apud condiscipulōs fuisset. Placēbat⁶ hīs quod tam multa discēbant, et movēbantur periculō in quō erant. Itaque ūniversī eī auctōritātem atque imperiū libenter concēdēbant, disciplīnamque servābant.

447.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. There were many in Mark's forces who at first had not trusted his judgment; for Mark was the one⁴ who had brought it about that they were less strong in number than the enemy. 2. But *all* were moved now by the danger; and there was need of discipline. 3. So they yielded everything to Mark's authority and command. 4. Their leader was both stern and fair. 5. It also pleased them that they were very-often learning new things together. 6. For which reason all were engaged equally willingly in doing work; nor had there ever been a time when Mark had been in greater popularity, or had been more powerful.⁵

¹ Having enjoyed, i. e., because he had enjoyed.

² Together.

³ Abl. of Cause, because of which thing, wherefore, for which reason.

⁴ Is this idea primarily Determinative, or primarily Descriptive?

⁵ More powerful. Plūs is an Acc. of Degree.

⁶ Impersonal (it pleased).

LESSON LIX

448. THE IMPERATIVE (Finished)

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
I.	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	amā	amāte	amāre	amāminī
	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	amātō	amātōte	amātor	
	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	amātō	amantō	amātor	amantor
II.	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	monētō	monētōte	monētor	
	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor
III.	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	tege	tegite	tegere	teginī
	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	tegitō	tegitōte	tegitōr	
	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	tegitō	tegunto	tegitōr	teguntor
	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor
IV.	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	audītō	audītōte	audītor	
	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor
Irreg.	<i>Pres. 2d</i>	es	este		
Verb	<i>Fut. 2d</i>	estō	estōte		
sum	<i>Fut. 3d</i>	estō	suntō		

449. The (so-called) Present Imperative refers to the *immediate* future, the Future to a more *distinctly* future time, or to future time in general (hence especially used in laws, treaties, and maxims). The negative is *nē*.

THE SUPINE

450. The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension. It has two cases only in ordinary use, an Accusative in *-um* and an Ablative in *-ū*. The Accusative is identical *in form* with the Perfect Passive Participle Neuter (though of a different Declension).

451.

SUPINES

CONJUGATION	I	II	III		IV
Acc.	amātum	monitum	tēctum	captum	audītum
Abl.	amātū	monitū	tēctū	captū	auditū

452. Specimen Sentences:

Tē monitum veniō, I come to warn you.

Hoc facile factū est, (this is easy in-the-doing, =) this is easy to do.

As you see from these examples,

453. 1. *The Supine in -um is used to express Purpose after Verbs of Motion.*¹

2. *The Supine in -ū is used to express Respect with Adjectives.*

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCORDANCE

454. Specimen Sentences:

Mōre suō, in accordance with his custom.

Ex cōsuētūdine suā, in accordance with his custom.

Cōsuētūdine suā, in accordance with his custom.

Voluntāte eius, (in accordance with his will, =) with his good-will, with his approval.

a. Each of these examples expresses that *in accordance with which* something is done. With *cōsuētūdine*, one may use the Preposition or omit it. With the others it is not commonly used in prose. Hence we may lay down the rule that:

455. *That in Accordance with which one acts or judges may be expressed by the Ablative of certain words, regularly without a Preposition.*²

a. So especially *mōre* and *cōsuētūdine*, *iudiciō*, *exemplō*, *voluntāte*.

b. With *most* words, *dē* or *ex* must be used to express the idea.

¹ In origin, the Accusative Supine in *-um* is simply an old Accusative of the end of motion. *Monitum veniō* is like *domum veniō*.

² The frequent use of *ex* with *cōsuētūdine*, and the *regular* use of *dē* or *ex* with all but a small list of words, show the construction to be of true Ablative (i. e., *Separative*) origin. It expressed the idea of that *from which* the act proceeded (thus *mōre suō*, "proceeding from his custom").

ABLATIVE, ETC., WITH A COMPARATIVE

456. Specimen Sentences:

Tū fortior frātre es, *you are braver than your brother.*

Tū fortior es quam frāter, *you are braver than your brother.*

Scūtum habēs meō melius, *you have a better shield than mine.*

Sextī scūtum longius est quam Mārcī, *Sextus' shield is longer than Mark's.*

a. You see that the idea *than* after a comparative may be expressed either by the Ablative,¹ or by *quam*, the second word then being in the same case as the first. But you also find *only quam*, if the first word is in any case but Nominative or Accusative.²

The examples represent regular usage. Our rules will then be:

457. *A Comparative Adjective is often followed by the Ablative meaning "than." But quam may generally be used instead, and MUST be used if the first of the words compared is in any case but Nominative or Accusative.*

458.

VOCABULARY

apertus, -a, -um, *open.*

citrā, *this side.* Prep., taking Acc.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right; dex-*
tra, -ae, as Noun, right hand.

ēducō, ēducere, ēdūxī, ēductum,
3 (ē + dūcō), *lead out.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3,
die. Partic. mortuus, = *dead.*

passus, -ūs, 4, *pace* (with both
feet; = about five English feet).

prō (as before), *in front of; hence*
as a representative of, in be-
half of, for; hence further,
in place of, as.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *four hun-*
dred.

septem, indecl. Adj., *seven.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left; si-*
nistra, -ae, as Noun, left hand.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum,
3, *touch.*

tempestās, -ātis, F. 3, *weather;*
bad weather, storm.

transgredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, 3 (trāns + gradior, step
across), *cross.*

ultrā, *beyond, on the other side of.*
Prep., taking Acc.

usus, -ūs, M. 4, *use; experience.*

¹ The idea is of the thing *reckoned from* as a standard.

² Because then the second word does not itself depend upon the *Com-*
parative idea (thus the shield is *not* longer than *Mark*).

459.

READING MATTER

(Watch for *is* describing persons and things, including *times*.)

1. Magnae secūtae sunt tempestātēs, quae et puerōs et multōs ex patribus eōrum domī continērent.¹

2. Eō tempore cum (*or quō*) bonam exspectābant² tempestātem, ferē sic dē commūnī studiō loquēbantur: (Talk of some fathers) Hoc tempus id est cum opus sit³ bonīs et aequīs iūdicibus. Magnāne sunt auctōritāte et grātiā iī quōs puerī ēlēgērunt?⁴ (Ans.) Ita; iī sunt quī magnum rei militāris ūsum habuerint.¹ Hīs ambō exercitūs aequē cōfidunt. Nēminī quidem plūs quam hīs cōfidunt; nam nēmō hīs peritior (comparative) est. Hās lēgēs iam prōnūntiāvērunt:

3. (Lēgēs pugnae) Intervāllum septem diērum estō. Hīs diēbus nēmō finīs alteriūs exercitūs trāsgreditor. In apertā valle ab utrāque parte flūminis ante diem pugnae dictum nēmō versātor. Nēmō cōsilia ducis suī cum militibus alteriūs ducis commūnicātō.

4. Locum castris Mārcus ad dextram, Lūcius ad sinistram capitō. Haec castra aequō spatiō ā flūmine absuntō. Hoc spatium quadringentōrum passuum estō.

5. Septimō diē dēcertantō. Eius diēi decimā hōrā⁴ ūnus ex iūdicibus signum cornū datō. Tum ducēs suum quisque exercitum ēducuntō vel citrā vel ultrā flūmen pugnātum.

6. Scūtis et gladiīs modo in proeliō ūtuntor. Pilis nē ūtuntor. Alia omnia Rōmānō faciuntō mōre.

7. Quī gladiō tactus erit,⁵ prō mortuō habētor, exque exercitū suō ā tergō excēditō.

8. (Comment of a listener) Haec facilia dictū sunt, factū erunt difficillima. Quī pugnātum vēnerint, iī nōn libenter discēdent.

¹ Does this clause determine or describe?

² At the time when. A Determinative cum-Clause (425, c).

³ The present time is one when, = is such that. What kind of clause?

⁴ The Romans reckoned twelve hours, from sunrise to sunset.

⁵ Who shall be touched, he . . . = he who, etc.

LESSON LX

THE INFINITIVES (Finished)

460. 1. We have seen how to form the Present Infinitives (92, 179).

2. The Perfect Infinitives correspond in form to the Perfect Indicatives. Thus Active Indicative *amāvī*, *I have loved*, Infinitive *amāv-isse*, *to have loved*; Passive Indicative *amātus sum*, *I have been loved*, Infinitive *amātus esse*,¹ *to have been loved*.

3. The Future Infinitive Active is formed by the Future Active Participle with *esse*. Thus *amātūrus esse*,¹ *to be going to love*. The Future Passive is peculiarly formed, namely by the Supine in *-um*, coupled with *īrī*. Thus *amātum īrī*, *to be going to be loved*.

461. The Infinitives for our specimen verbs are thus:

I		II	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>amāre</i>	<i>amārī</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>monērī</i>
<i>amāvisse</i>	<i>amātus esse</i>	<i>monuisse</i>	<i>monitus esse</i>
<i>amātūrus esse</i>	<i>amātum īrī</i>	<i>monitūrus esse</i>	<i>monitum īrī</i>
III			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>tegere</i>	<i>tegi</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>capī</i>
<i>tēxisse</i>	<i>tēctus esse</i>	<i>cēpisse</i>	<i>captus esse</i>
<i>tēctūrus esse</i>	<i>tēctum īrī</i>	<i>captūrus esse</i>	<i>captum īrī</i>
IV			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	IRREGULAR VERB <i>sum</i>	
<i>audīre</i>	<i>audīrī</i>	<i>esse</i>	
<i>audīvisse</i>	<i>audītus esse</i>	<i>fuisse</i>	
<i>audītūrus esse</i>	<i>audītum īrī</i>	<i>futūrus esse</i> or <i>fore</i>	

¹Esse is very frequently omitted in the Perfect Passive Infinitive, and almost always so in the Future Active Infinitive. In our reading, this freedom of choice will be shown by parentheses.

THE MEANINGS OF THE INFINITIVE TENSES¹

462. The tenses of the Infinitive express an act as, at the time of the verb on which they depend, *completed* (Perfect Infinitive), *in progress* (Present Infinitive), or *yet to come* (Future Infinitive). They are thus purely *relative* tenses, like those of the Participle. Thus:

Dicitur labōrāvisse, *he is said to have worked* (Perfect Infinitive).

Dicitur labōrāre, *he is said to be working* (Present Infinitive).

Dicitur labōrātūrus esse, *he is said to be going to work* (Future Infinitive).

USE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

463. When, instead of being put directly (Direct Discourse), one's words or thoughts are made to depend upon a verb of saying, thinking, or the like, they are said to be in *Indirect Discourse*.

a. Thus in "I think (or *know*, or *believe*) him to be honest," the words "him to be honest" are an *indirect* expression of the thought, "he is honest." In "he says that he shall be present," the words "that he shall be present" are an *indirect* expression of the words, "I shall be present."

b. English can use the Infinitive with such verbs as *think*, *believe*, *know*, etc. (as above). Latin, by a striking usage, can employ it also with such verbs as *say* (*dīco*), where *we* have to use a *clause*, commonly introduced by *that*,—which may, however, be omitted.

¹The Latin Present Infinitive was at first merely a verbal noun, in two cases,—a Dative in *-ī*, and a Locative in *-e*. These were used like the cases of any other nouns in the same period. Thus "I drive the slave to work" (Dative of Direction), "I see the slave at work,—in the act of working" (Locative). As the *verb-feeling* grew, the case-endings became meaningless, and were then used to express voice; and *forms also then sprang up to express the other two tense-ideas* (Perfect and Future).

The English "to-Infinitive" has had in part exactly the same history. It was originally a Dative Noun, helped out by the Preposition "to." The original Dative forces still remain in common use, as in "he went out to play," and "I drove him to work." But all consciousness of the *case* has passed away, so that the Infinitive may to day be used also as *Subject* (thus in "to play is easier than to work") or *Object* (thus in "I love to play").

c. Thus the ideas of the three statements, *ego audīvī*, *I have heard*, *ego audiō*, *I hear*, and *ego audiam*, *I shall hear*, may be expressed in dependence upon a verb of saying in any tense, becoming *Infinitive*, as in the following:

464. Specimen Sentences:

• Dīcit sē audīvisse, <i>he says (that) he has heard</i>	(he says audīvī).
Dīcit sē audīre, <i>he says (that) he hears</i>	(“ “ audiō).
Dīcit sē audītūrum (esse), <i>he says (that) he shall hear</i>	(“ “ audiam).
Dīxit sē audīvisse, <i>he said (that) he had heard</i>	(he said audīvī).
Dīxit sē audīre, <i>he said (that) he heard</i>	(“ “ audiō).
Dīxit sē audītūrum (esse), <i>he said (that) he should hear</i>	(“ “ audiam).

a. You see that in each of these sentences the Infinitive makes an indirect Statement, and that its Subject is in the Accusative.

Our rule will then be:

465. *The Infinitive is used to express an indirect Statement after verbs of Saying, Thinking, Perceiving, Knowing, and the like. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative.*¹

a. The Subject is sometimes omitted, when perfectly clear. Thus:

Dīcit parātum esse, *he says that he is ready.*

Dīxit audīvisse, *he said that he had heard.*

466. For verbs having no participial stem (thus *studeō*, *studēre*, *studuī*,—) the Future Infinitive is replaced by *fore* or *futūrum esse* with *ut* and the Subjunctive (of expected future fact; 421, 3); and the same equivalent may be used for the Future Infinitive of any verb. Thus:

Nōn crēdō fore ut ille studeat, *I don't believe that it will be (the case) that he will study*, = *I don't believe that he will study.*

¹ This use of the Infinitive has grown out of case-uses (see last footnote), as in “I drive him to work” (Dative of Direction), and “I see him at work” (Locative), which last easily suggests, “I see that he *is working*.” From verbs of perceiving, the use probably first extended itself to verbs of knowing or thinking, and then to verbs of saying. The Accusative, originally the object of the main verb, came to be felt as the *Subject* of the *Infinitive*.

467.

VOCABULARY

collis, -is, M. 3, *hill*.

committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -misum, 3 (con- + mittō, bring together), *join; commit*.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, 3 (con- + tendō, stretch thoroughly), *strain; strive, hasten*.

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3 (dē + ducō), *lead off*.

exterus, -a, -um, *outside*, Compar. exterior, *outer*, Superl. extrēmus or extimus, *outermost, extreme* (or the edge of). impedimentum, -ī, N. 2, *hindrance*.

medius, -a, -um, *middle* or the middle-of.

sub, *under*. Prep., taking Acc. of motion, and Abl. of rest.

468.

READING MATTER

1. (A judge) Multi venient pugnam spectātum. Hī pugnantibus impedimentō erunt. Quō modō hoc prohibeāmus? (Another) Id facillimum erit factū. Hōs ūniversōs ante pugnam in extrēmam vallem sub collēs dēducēmus. Prō certō habēō¹ ambōs exercitūs, signō datō, in mediam vallem contentūrōs (esse), ibique proelium commissum irī. (The third) Facile erit eōs qui aderunt sub collēs dēducere; sed manēbunt sub collibus?

2. (One asks) Quem vōs putātis victūrum (esse)? Lūcī exercitus aliquantō maior est quam Mārcī. (Another) Mārcus multo diligentior Lūciō est. Prō certō habēō eum suō mōre omnēs dolōs cōgitāvisse, atque etiam nunc rei militārī domī studēre.

3. Ūnus ē iūdicibus crēdebāt Mārcum victūrum (esse). Prō certō habēbat omnēs dolōs ab eō cōgitātōs (esse).

469.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I feel sure that Mark has formed plans, is drilling his men, and will conquer. 2. But I believe that those who come to witness the battle will be a great hindrance² to the fighters. 3. (Ans.) The judges say that they shall lead-off³ all these (people) under⁴ the different hills on⁴ the edge-of-the valley. 4. The armies will hasten toward the middle-of-the valley, and the battle will be joined there.

¹ Hold for certain, = feel sure.

² Be careful about the case.

³ Idea of rest, or of motion?

⁴ See the *Latin* idea, in 468, 1.

LESSON LXI

INFLECTION OF THE REGULAR VERB (Finished)

THE GERUND

470. 1. We have seen that, in many combinations, the Future Passive Participle has gained the power of expressing the *leading idea* in its phrase, as in **cupidus bellī gerendī**, *desirous of war to be waged*, which amounts to saying *desirous OF WAGING war*. The Gerundive is thus nearly the equivalent of a Verbal Noun. It is in *thought* the leading and governing word, but not yet *grammatically* so.

2. It naturally came in time to take this one step further, and became a *complete* Verbal Noun, in the Neuter Gender and Singular Number. It is then called the *Gerund*. Thus in:

Cupidus bellum gerendī, *desirous of waging war*.

We may then define the Gerund as follows:

471. The Gerund is a Complete Verbal Noun. As Verbal, it has the power of governing a Substantive. As a Noun, it is itself governed in case.

The Gerund exists only in four cases. Thus, for **amō**,

Gen. amandī

Dat. amandō

Acc. amandum

Abl. amandō

472. Since the Gerundive and Gerund are closely corresponding constructions, we may conveniently sum up their uses together, as follows:

473. The Gerundive and Gerund exist only in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases. The case-uses are in general the same as those of Nouns. Thus:

474.

GERUNDIVE

GERUND

Gen. cupidus pugnae videndae, *desirous of seeing the fight.*

Dat. diem constituērunt operi faciendō, *they have appointed a day for doing the work.*

Acc. alacer ad pugnam videndam, *eager for seeing the battle.*

Abl. diligentia in bellis legendis, *diligence in reading-up wars.*

cupidus pugnam videndī, *desirous of seeing the fight.*

diem constituērunt pugnandō, *they have appointed a day for fighting.*

alacer ad pugnandum, *eager for fighting.*

diligentia in legendō, *diligence in reading.*

a. In the Dative, or after a Preposition, the Gerundive is necessary if a Substantive is used. Otherwise the choice is free.

THE NATURAL HARMONY OF TENSES ("Sequence of Tenses")

475. 1. If you are thinking of two acts as connected (main and subordinate), they (1) are likely to be in the same division of time; and (2) the subordinate act is likely to be seen in its temporal relation to the main act (which makes *the point of view*). Thus "I watched" (yesterday) "a man who was stealing" (*then*, of course).

2. In the Subjunctive, as you already know and feel, the tenses of the present or future point of view are the Present and Perfect, of the past point of view the Imperfect and Past Perfect.

Hence, in combinations of verbs and dependent clauses:

476. *A verb of the present or future is generally accompanied by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, a verb of the past by an Imperfect or Past Perfect Subjunctive.*

477. Table of the Natural Harmony of Tenses ("Sequence").

IN THE PAST	IN THE PRESENT	IN THE FUTURE
Past Act and Past Point of View	Present Act and Present Point of View	Future Act and Future Point of View
Thus Quaesivī quidagerem, <i>I asked (then) what I was (then) to do.</i>	Thus Quaerō quid agam, <i>I ask (now) what I am (now) to do.</i>	Thus Quaeram quid agam, <i>I shall ask (then) what I am (then) to do.</i>
Dux erat quī nihil prōvidisset, <i>he was a leader who had foreseen nothing.</i>	Dux est quī nihil prōviderit, <i>he is a leader who has foreseen nothing.</i>	Dux erit quī nihil prōviderit, <i>he will be a leader who will have foreseen nothing.</i>

NEW FORCE GAINED BY THE CONSECUTIVE quī-CLAUSE

The Causal or Adversative quī¹-Clause

478. Specimen Sentences:

1. *Magnae secūtae sunt tempestātēs, quae puerōs domī continērent*, *great storms followed, which kept the boys at home.*
(From the Reading Matter in 459, 1.)
2. *Magnae hae sunt tempestātēs, quae hōs puerōs, pugnandī cupidōs, domī continuerint*, *great storms are these which (and since they) have kept these boys, eager for fighting, at home.*
3. *Dolet Lūcius, quī pugnāre magnopere cupiat*, *Lucius grieves, who (= since he) is very eager to fight.*
4. *Mārcus, quī pugnāre magnopere cupiat, tamen dē hīs tempestātibz nōn dolet.* *Mark, who (= although he) is very eager to fight, nevertheless doesn't grieve about these storms.*

a. In the first sentence the quī-Clause is a consecutive clause, such as we have already had a number of times.

b. In the second sentence the quī-Clause is consecutive, and very like the one in the first; but it *also, in consequence of the nature of the combination*, suggests an additional idea of *Cause or Reason*; i. e., you feel that it not only expresses the result of the greatness of the storms, but the reason why the speaker *says* "great."—In this way the Subjunctive quī-Clause gets a new power, that of expressing *Cause or Reason*; and it is then naturally employed to express *Cause or Reason alone*, as in the third example.²

c. The Adversative use (i. e., to express *Opposition*, as in the fourth example) grows out of the Causal use.

We may then lay down the rule that:

479. *A Relative Clause in the Subjunctive may be used to express Cause or Opposition (Causal or Adversative quī-Clause).*

¹This is to be understood as meaning any form of the Relative,—any case, gender, or number, or any relative *Adverb* (as *ubi* or *unde*).

²Another instance of the rise of a new force in a construction, illustrated by our formula (force originally consecutive [x], then consecutive plus causal [x + y], then causal only [y]).

480.

VOCABULARY

acer (as before), *fierce*. Compar. acrior, Superl. acerrimus.¹
acriter, Adv. for acer, *keenly, fiercely*. Compar. acrius, Superl. acerrimē.
patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *suffer, allow, permit*.

quārē (cf. 446, 1, and footnote 3), Rel. and Interrog. Adv., *for which reason, wherefore, why*.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hope*.
tardus, -a, -um, *slow, tardy; disinclined*.
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much*.

481.

READING MATTER

1. (A timid mother) Tū scīs mē ex hōc bellō aliquid semper exspectāvisse incommodī. Quārē hīs tantīs tempestātibus gaudeō. Diem puerī cōstituērunt dēcertandō. Sed spērō fore ut ipsā morā ūniversī tardiōrēs ad pugnandum sint. (Another mother) Tū gaudēs, quae timeās nē filiō tuō noceātur. Sed nōn est timendum.² Iūdicēs perītī sunt tālēs rēs administrandī, nec patientur quemquam cuiquam nocēre. (First speaker) Quod tū dicis³ iūdicēs hominēs perītōs esse, id mē nōn tantum movet. Hī puerī acriōrēs⁴ sunt, acriusque⁴ contendunt.

482.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. One mother says that she is-glad-of these (so-)great storms. 2. She feels sure that her son will be injured in the fighting. 3. This does not move me much. 4. (Same ideas, in past.) A certain mother said yesterday that she was-glad-of these storms; that she felt sure that her son would be injured. 5. I think that she will not allow him to fight. 6. Why don't *you* practice? Are you slow for fighting? 7. (Ans.) The boys formed their plans at a time when I was ill (*descriptive idea*); for-which-reason I was not chosen. 8. (First speaker) I am desirous of witnessing⁵ the battle, but I hope⁶ the boys will not fight too fiercely.

¹As you see, Adjectives in -er have a peculiar way of forming the Superlative,—namely, in -errimus, as if by adding -rimus to the -er. Adverbs formed from them follow (Adj. acerrimus, Adv. acerrimē).

²Impersonal, *it is not to be feared*, = *one should not fear*.

³See 444, a.

⁵Gerund, for practice.

⁴The Comparative often means "too."

⁶Note omission of "that."

LESSON LXII

IRREGULAR VERBS

483. In the last Lesson, we finished the inflection of the regular verbs.

484. There are a few verbs left, which present a little irregularity. *This irregularity is confined, so far as the endings are concerned, to the forms made from the Present Stem.*

a. Hence if you merely know the Principal Parts of a given irregular verb, all the forms from the *Perfect Stem* will follow with certainty.

b. Further, in the forms belonging to the Present Stem, you can always make the Imperfect Subjunctive Active, as in Regular Verbs, by adding *-m* to the Present Infinitive Active.

c. In most cases, the irregularity of ending is confined to the Present Indicative Active, as in the first verb to be given.

485. CONJUGATION OF *possum, am able, can*
Principal Parts: *possum, posse, potuī, —*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum</i> ¹	<i>possim</i>
	<i>potes</i>	<i>possis</i>
	<i>potest</i>	<i>possit</i>
	<i>possumus</i>	<i>possimus</i>
	<i>potestis</i>	<i>possitis</i>
	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possint</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>poteram, -ās, -at, etc.</i>	<i>possem, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō, -is, -it, etc.</i>	

¹ Old Latin has an Adjective meaning *able*, in two forms, *potis* and *pote*. These forms were originally of different genders, but came to be used for any gender. Among other uses, they were compounded with *sum*. The forms above arose from these compounds. Thus *potis-sum* (*possum*), *I am-able*; *pote-es* (*potes*), *you are-able*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī, -istī, -it, etc. ¹	potuerim, -īs, -it, etc.
<i>Past Perf.</i>	potueram, -ās, -at, etc.	potuissem, -ēs, -et, etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō, -is, -it, etc.	
	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	potēns (which has be-
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse	come an Adjective)

NEW FORCES GAINED BY THE CONSECUTIVE cum-CLAUSE

486. Specimen Sentences:

Puerī cōsilia eō tempore (or tum) cēpērunt cum ego aeger essem.
 Postea, cum mē habērem melius, ā Mārcō accipī cupiēbam.
 Sed, cum mē in armīs nōn exercuissem, is mē nōn accēpit.
The boys formed their plans at a time when I was ill. Later, when I was feeling better (had myself better), I wished to be accepted by Mark. But, since I had not drilled, he did not take me.

a. In the first sentence (you yourself wrote it in translating 482, 7), the cum-Clause is a simple descriptive clause, like those which we have several times had. It describes its antecedent, namely, **eō tempore**. The boys formed their plans *at a time when I was ill,—at a time of illness on my part*. This was the Situation, the State of Affairs, the Circumstances. Hence we may call such a clause a *Descriptive cum-Clause of Situation*.

b. In the second sentence, the cum-Clause, which is in itself precisely like the first one, similarly gives the situation for the main verb, **cupiēbam**.—But it was *because* of this situation (namely, my feeling better) that I wished to be accepted. Hence an additional idea of *Cause* or *Reason* comes into the construction ("when" and "because;" **x+y**).

c. The natural consequence was that the construction was next used to express the idea of Cause or Reason alone (**y**), with the original idea of time wholly gone out of it, as in the third sentence in the passage above ("*since* I had not practiced").

¹The forms of the Perfect Stem, together with the Present Participle **potēns**, are from an old Second Conjugation verb **poteō**, **potēre**, **potuī**, which has otherwise disappeared.

d. But the main act *may* be performed, not *because* of the character of the situation, but *in spite of it*, as in the following:

Cum mē omnīnō nōn exercuissem, Lūcius mē accēpit, when (or although) I had not practiced at all, Lucius accepted me.

Here the additional idea is that of Opposition ("when" and "although"). The clause then comes also to be used with this new idea alone ("although").

We may sum up these uses in the following rules:

487. A Subjunctive cum-Clause may be used to describe the Situation under which the main act took place (Descriptive cum-Clause of Situation).

488. A Descriptive cum-Clause of Situation may be used with an additional idea of Cause or Opposition (Descriptive cum-Clause, with additional Causal or Adversative Idea).

489. A Subjunctive cum-Clause may be used to express Cause or Opposition alone (Causal or Adversative cum-Clause).

490.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, M. 3, *centurion* (commander of a company).

cohors, cohortis, -ium, F. 3, *cohort* (tenth part of a legion).

cōsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, 3 (con- + sistō, cf. stō; stand firmly), *take position; halt*.

cum (same word as before), Conj., *when, as; since; although*.

ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred*.

inferus, below. Compar. inferior, lower, Superl. infimus or imus, lowest.

lēgātus, -ī, M. 2, *ambassador; lieutenant* (high officer).

legiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *legion*.

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, 2, Impers., *be permitted*.

mille, indecl. Adj. or Noun, *a thousand*. Pl. as Noun, milia, -ium, N. 3. Mille passuum = 5,000 feet, or a Roman mile.

multus (as before), *much*, Compar. plūs, *more*, Superl. plurimus, *most* (or a great deal, Pl., a great many).

possum, posse, potuī, —, irr., *be able, can*. With plūs, etc., *be more able, can do more, etc*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3 (prō + currō), *run forward, charge*.

superus, -a, -um, *above*. Compar. superior, *higher*, Superl. suprēmus or summus, *highest*.

tribūnus, -ī, M. 2, *tribune*.

491.

READING MATTER

1. (At Mark's house. Mark, to his father) Omnia mōre et exemplō Rōmānō fecī. Exercitum in legiōnēs et cohortēs divīsī. Hōs lēgātōs, tribūnōs, centuriōnēs ēlēgī. Summī sunt cōsiliī. Plūrimōs dolōs sciunt, et plūrimum¹ auctōritāte valent.

2. (The father) Lūcius multitūdine plūs² potest. Quid vōs in pugnandō potestis? (One answers) Multum² nōs possumus.

3. (Mark) Prīmō nihil² poterant meī, atque disciplīna eōrum mala erat; imperium autem cum mihi concessissent, mox multa didicērunt. Nunc eōs exercuī, ita ut summī³ et infimī³ aliquot hōrās atque multa milia passuum ambulāre possint; ut ducentōs vel quadringentōs passūs celeriter currere possint; ut servātis ordinibus vel prōcurrere vel sē recipere possint; ut, unā fugientēs, vel simul vel deinceps cōsistere possint.

4. (The father) Numquam crēdidī fore ut tuī tantum possent. Ō magna vīs disciplīnae, quae ex puerīs militēs perītissimōs faciat! 5. Nunc, cum haec didicerītis, mihi liceat omnia bona vōbīs optāre. Vincat Mārcī exercitus!

492.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The father) But when Lucius had chosen his army,⁴ didn't he also, according to the Roman custom, divide it into legions and cohorts, and choose lieutenants, tribunes and centurions?

2. Don't his soldiers concede command to him? 3. Can't *they* also walk many miles, and run two hundred or four hundred paces? 4. Haven't they learned a-great-many stratagems?

5. Hasn't Lucius also drilled the highest and the lowest, so that they can run forward together, and then halt one-after-another or retreat keeping their ranks? 6. Your men can (do) very-much. 7. Can they (do) more than Lucius's soldiers (can)?

8. (Mark) Since Lucius has never been diligent, it is permitted to think that he has not been diligent in drilling his men.

¹ Acc. of Degree. Adjectives so used (cf. *multō*, etc.) are much like Adverbs. Translate *are very strong*.

² Like *plūrimum* above.

³ = *the greatest and the least*.

⁴ Clause of Situation.

LESSON LXIII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

493. CONJUGATION OF volō, nōlō, mālō

Principal Parts { volō, velle, voluī, —, *will, want*
 nōlō, nolle, noluī, —, *be unwilling*¹
 mālō, malle, māluī, —, *prefer*¹

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim
	vīs	velis	nōn vīs	nōlis
	vult	velit	nōn vult	nōlit
	volūmus	velimus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
	vultis	velitis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem
<i>Fut.</i>	volam		nōlam	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	volueram	voluissē	nōlueram	nōluissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō		nōluerō	

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	mālō	mālim	<i>Pres.</i> nōlī	nōlīte
	māvis	mālis	<i>Fut.</i> nōlitō	nōlitōte
	māvult	mālit		
	mālūmus	mālīmus		
	māvultis	mālītis		
	mālunt	mālint		
<i>Imperf.</i>	mālēbam	māllem		
<i>Fut.</i>	mālam			
<i>Perf.</i>	māluī	māluerim		
<i>Past Perf.</i>	mālueram	māluissem		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	māluerō			

	INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i> velle		nōlle	mälle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse		nōluisse	māluisse

	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i> volēns		nōlēns

¹ Nōlō is from nōn and volō, *don't want*, mālō from magis volō, *want more*.

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

494. A Conclusion is a statement, the truth or realization of which depends upon the truth or realization of something else called a Condition (*if*-clause, or an equivalent). Thus "if he has come" (Condition), "we are safe" (Conclusion). The negative for both is *nōn*.

a. Conditions are introduced by *sī*, *if*, *nisi*, *unless*, Relatives, or Conjunctions (thus *quī* or *quicumque*, *whoever*, *cum*, *whenever*, etc.).

b. Conditions and Conclusions may deal with a single case (Individual), or *any number* of cases of a kind (General). Thus:

"If he has come, he brings presents." (Individual.)

"If ever he comes, he brings presents." (Generalizing.)

"When he comes, he brings presents." (Generalizing Conjunction.)

"Whoever comes, brings presents." (Generalizing Relative.)

NEUTRAL CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS, PRESENT OR PAST

495. Specimen Sentences:

Id sī fēcistī, bene fēcistī, if you have done this, you have done well.

Id sī facis, bene facis, if you are doing this, you are doing well.

a. As you see, these conditions imply nothing as regards the truth or falsity of the condition and conclusion. We may then call them *neutral*, and may state the usage as follows:

496. *Neutral Conditions and Conclusions in the Present or Past are expressed by the Indicative.*

FUTURE CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

497. Specimen Sentences:

Id sī faciēs, bene faciēs, if you (shall) do this, you will do well.

Id sī faciās, bene faciās, if you should do this, you would do well.

a. Both examples refer to the Future. The difference is merely one of greater or less *vividness*. The Indicative (*if . . . shall*) is more vivid, the Subjunctive (*if . . . should*) less vivid.

b. The Present Subjunctive, as we call it, clearly here refers to the *Future*. Similarly the Perfect Subjunctive may be employed as a *Future Perfect*, as in *id modo sī fēcerīs, bene fēcerīs, if you should have done merely this, you would have done well.*

We may then lay down our rules as follows:

498. 1. More Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Indicative tenses of Future time (the Future and Future Perfect).

2. Less Vivid Future Conditions¹ and Conclusions² are expressed by Subjunctive tenses of Future time (the so-called Present and Perfect).

499.

VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, ample, large.
amplius, Compar. Neut., as
Substantive, more; as Acc. of
Degree, more, further.

dignus, -a, -um, worthy, and
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.

Take Abl. (Construction of doubtful origin.)

fidēs, -eī, F. 5, faith, loyalty;
promise, word.

honestus, -a, -um, honorable.

imperātor, -ōris, M. 3, general.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, 2,
bid, order. Takes Infinitive.

mālō, mālle, mālūī, —, irr.,
want more, prefer.

malus (as before), bad, Compar.

peior, worse, Superl. pessimus,
worst.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, —, irr., not
want, be unwilling.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -ter-
ritum, 2 (per + terreō), thor-
oughly frighten, terrify.

quandō, Conj., since, as.

quoniam, Conj., since.

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum,
3, break.

sive or seu, Conj., or if, or; sive
. . . . sive (seu seu
. . . .), whether or

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
superus, above, over), over-
come, defeat, conquer.

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, 1,
forbid. Takes Infinitive.

volō, velle, volūī, —, irr.,
want, will.

¹ Formed by the coming-together of four kinds of independent conditions. Thus:

	CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Volitive:	let him come (veniat):	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ should (in that case) be} \\ \text{glad (gaudeam).} \end{array} \right.$
Anticipatory:	I expect him to come (veniat):	
Optative:	I hope he may come (veniat):	
Potential:	he may perhaps come (veniat):	

When these constructions were used *dependently* (with **sī**, etc.), the differences of feeling of course disappeared, leaving only the idea common to all the forms, namely that of a *Condition*.

² The Subjunctive *Conclusion* is simply a statement of Mental Certainty.

500.

READING MATTER

(A soldier to Mark) Tēcum, imperātor, licetne mihi loquī? (Ans.) Tē dicere iubeō. (Soldier) Hāc rē perterritus sum, quod malā tempestāte tam multōs diēs proelium exspectāvimus. For-sitan aliquis iam Lūcium dē tuis cōsiliis certiōrem¹ fēcerit.¹ Etiam nunc, si quis eum certiōrem fēcerit, facile victor sit. (Ans.) Quandō tū dixistī, respondēbō; sed irātus sum quod omnīnō timuistī. Pessimum est exemplum. Num tū Lūcium certiōrem facere vīs? (Soldier) Ego certē nōlō; numquam voluī fidem rumpere; sed nōn volō ut alius id faciat. (Ans.) Quem tū putās velle? Id quod tū facere nōn vīs, omnēs nostrī facere nōlint, quoniam honesta volumus omnēs.

Et honesta aequē vult Lūcius. Dignus est fidē nostrā. Sive nōs vincēmus sive ille vincet, nihil sē indignum fēcerit.² Etiam si quis nostrum cum eō dē cōsiliis nostris loquī velit, nōn liceat; vetet illum Lūcius omnīnō dicere. Is est hostis noster quī superārī mālīt quam hōc modō vincere. Summā ille est fidē. Quārē nōlī³ amplius dē hāc rē vel mēcum vel cum aliis loquī.

501.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Another repeats the scolding outside.) If we should make you general, should you want to talk with any one who should want⁴ to inform you about the plans of the enemy? 2. (Ans.) I should not want (to). 3. (The other) Why should you think that Lucius wants (to)? 4. The boys of our school are all honorable. 5. It is not permitted to believe anything unworthy of them.

6. You said that you were terrified lest some one should break faith. 7. Whether we shall fight now or after many days, no one will do this, since all would prefer to be defeated. 8. But as you have thought the worst, we order you to say nothing further. 9. If you talk about this again, we shall forbid you to fight along (unā) with the rest. 10. You will not be worthy.

¹ Make more certain, inform.

³ Be unwilling (to), = do not.

² What difference from fēcerit above? ⁴ Really a condition, = if he.

LESSON LXIV

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

CONJUGATION OF **fīō**, *become*

502. **Fīō**, *become*, serves as the Passive of **faciō**, *make*, in the Present System. The Perfect System and the Future Passive Participle are formed regularly from **faciō**.

Principal Parts: fīō ¹			fieri	factus sum
INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fīō	———	fiam	fiāmus
	fīs	———	fiās	fiātis
	fit	fiunt	fiat	fiant
<i>Imperf.</i>	fiēbam		fierem	
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam			
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum		factus sim	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	factus eram		factus essem	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō			
IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	fī	fite	<i>Pres.</i> fieri	<i>Perf.</i> factus
			<i>Perf.</i> factus esse	<i>Fut.</i> faciendus
			<i>Fut.</i> factum iri	
GERUND			GERUNDIVE	
	faciendī		faciendī, -ae, -ī	
	faciendō		faciendō, -ae, -ō	
	faciendum		faciendum, -am, -um	
	faciendō		faciendō, -ā, -ō	
SUPINE				
			factum, -ū	

a. Compounds of **faciō** with Prepositions usually have the regular Passive. Thus the Principal Parts of **cōnficiō** are:

Active: **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.**

Passive: **cōnficior, cōnfici, cōnfectus sum.**

¹The *i* is long throughout, except in *fit* and before short *e* (thus *fieri, fierem*).

503.

CONJUGATION OF eō, go

(Note the contracted forms.)

Principal Parts: eō ire īī (or īvī) itum

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
<i>Imperf.</i>	ībam		īrem	
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō			
<i>Perf.</i>	īī (or īvī)	iimus	īerim	
	īstī (or iistī)	īstis (or iistis)		
	īit (or īt)	īērunt (or iēre)		
<i>Past Perf.</i>	ieram		īsem	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ierō			

IMPERATIVE

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ī	īte	<i>Pres.</i>	īre	<i>Pres.</i>	īēns, iēns, Gen. euntis
<i>Fut.</i>	ītō	ītōte	<i>Perf.</i>	īsse (or iisse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus
	ītō	euntō				
			<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	eundum (est, Impersonal)

GERUND

eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō

PICTURESQUE USES OF THE TENSES: HISTORICAL PRESENT, etc.

504. By the use of tenses properly belonging to the present point of view, a past scene may be vividly brought before the mind, and its events pictured as *now taking place*. The dependent clauses may be made picturesque, by the same means, or they may be put in the sober tenses of the past. Thus:

Dux militī imperat ut eat, }
 Dux militī imperat ut iret, } *the leader orders the soldier to go.*

a. A Present Tense so used is called an *Historical Present*.¹

¹ Our best English uses the picturesque tenses very little. And we regularly use them in *all* parts of the sentence, if in any.

THE AORISTIC NARRATIVE CLAUSE WITH *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, OR *simul* (*atque*)

505. Specimen Sentences:

<i>Ubi</i>	}	<i>hostis vīdit, cōsilium mūtāvit.</i>
<i>Ut</i>		
<i>Postquam</i>		
<i>Simul</i> (<i>atque</i>)		
<i>when</i>	}	<i>he saw the enemy, he changed his plan.</i>
<i>when or as</i>		
<i>after</i>		
<i>as soon as</i>		

a. You notice that the four conjunctions of time here employed introduce a clause in *narration*, i. e., they *tell* you something (*vīdit*), in the progress of a story, as a preparation for the main event (*mūtāvit*). And you notice also that the tense used is an *aorist* (not “when he *had seen*,” which would be situation, but merely “when he *saw*”). This is the regular usage. We may then lay down the rule that:

506. *An Aoristic Indicative Clause with ubi, ut, postquam, or simul (atque), may be used in narration to introduce the main event.*

The tense is the Perfect or the Historical Present.

a. The Aoristic Narrative Clause is interchangeable with the Descriptive *cum*-Clause of Situation (487). Thus you may say:

(either) <i>ubi hostis vīdit,</i>	}	<i>cōsilium mūtāvit,</i>
<i>when he saw the enemy,</i>		
(or) <i>cum hostis vīdisset,</i>		
<i>when he had seen the enemy,</i>		
		<i>he changed his plan.</i>

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

507. As we have repeatedly seen,

Accompaniment is expressed by cum and the Ablative.

Cum amīcō profectus sum, I set out with a friend.

a. But in military language *cum* may be omitted, if the noun has a modifier, and this is not a numeral. Thus:

Omnibus cōpiis profectus sum, I set out with all my forces.

(but) *Cum unā legiōne profectus sum, I set out with one legion.*

508.

VOCABULARY

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1,
approach. Word of Relation.
 conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
 con- and locus), *place, station*.
 decēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3
 (dē+cēdō), *go away, withdraw*.
 eō, īre, īī (or īvī), itum, irr., *go*.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, irr., *become*.

Used also as Passive of faciō.

intrā, *within*. Prep., taking Acc.

meridiēs, -ēī, M. 5, *midday*.

palūs, -udis, F. 3, *swamp*.

posterus, -a, -um (cf. post, after),
following. Compar. posterior,
 later, Superl. postrēmus or
 postumus, *latest*.

suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1,
suspect.

triplex, -ex, Gen. -icis, *triple*.

ubi (as before) *where*; also
when.

ut (as before), *as*; also *when*.

509.

READING MATTER

(Fair weather. The battle) Posterō diē post merīdiem duo exercitūs ad sua quisque castra eunt. Omnia mōre Rōmānō fiunt. Lūcius aciem triplicem īnstruit. Mārcus, quia minōrem habēbat numerum, maiōrem partem suōrum in duplicī aciē cōstituit; reliquōs intrā silvam prope palūdem quandam conlocat. Haec autem palūs ā silvā ad flūmen pertinēbat.

Paulō ante decimam hōram, iūdicēs eōs quī pugnam spectātum vēnerant certiōrēs fēcērunt tempus pugnandī adesse; ipsī sub collēs in extrēmam vallem decēderent;¹ quī ex eō locō excessissent² priusquam decertātum esset,² eōs ex valle pulsum īrī.

Ubi signum pugnae datum est, Lūcī exercitus ad flūmen contendit. Mārcī autem milītēs, ita ut iussī erant, minus celeriter pontī adpropinquāvērunt. Lūcius eum prior trānsgressus in milītēs Mārcī omnibus cōpiīs impetum ācerrimē fēcit. Hī, sē perterritōs esse simulantēs, terga vertērunt atque secundum flūmen cucurrērunt. Insecūtī sunt hostēs.

Etiam tum, sī Lūcius dē dolīs suspicātus esset,³ facile propter numerum suōrum victor esset.³ Sed nihil est suspicātus.

¹ Command of judges (Vol. Subj.). ² Past Fut.-Perf. (English "should").

³ A Future Condition and Conclusion from a *past* point of view: *Even then, if Lucius should suspect stratagems, he would easily be victor.*

LESSON LXV

COMPARISON

510. Introductory. You have already become familiar with the common types of regular comparison, both for Adjectives and for Adverbs, and with the comparison of nearly all the more important irregular words also; but the whole will now be put together for review, distributed among three Lessons.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

511. 1. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior**, the Superlative by adding **-issimus**, to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel, if it has one. Thus:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
certus	certior	certissimus
diligēns	diligentior	diligentissimus

2. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative in **-errimus**, as if by adding **-rimus** to the **-er**. Thus:

acer	acrior	acerrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus

3. Certain Adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative in **-illimus**, as if by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel. Thus:

facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus

4. But many Adjectives form the Comparative and Superlative by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, to the Positive. This is true of most Adjectives in which the vowel of the stem is itself preceded by another vowel. Thus:

idōneus	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus
---------	---------------	----------------

THE ABLATIVE OF WAY OR MANNER

512. Specimen Sentences:

Cāsū eum vīdī, I saw him by chance.

Hōc modō vincō, I conquer by this method (=in this way).

Pedibus ibō, I shall go (with the feet =) on foot.

Cum cūrā omnia explōrās, you explore everything with care.

Magnā cum cūrā omnia explōrās, you explore everything with great care.

a. You see that Way or Manner may be expressed by the Ablative.¹

b. The construction, being very common, in the main resisted the coming-in of prepositions.²

The usage may then be stated thus:

513. *Way or Manner may be expressed by the Ablative, regularly without a Preposition.*

But Abstract Nouns in less frequent use take cum if there is no Modifier, and MAY take it even if there is one.

THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

514. Specimen Sentences:

Duo exercitūs prōcurrērunt, proelium commīsērunt. Subito hostēs fugere, the two armies rushed forward, and joined battle. Suddenly the enemy fled.

a. Such constructions occur in lively passages.—As you see, the Infinitive here makes a *statement*, just as an Indicative would do.³ And you notice that, like an Indicative, it has its Subject in the Nominative. We may then lay down the rule that:

515. *In lively narration, the Infinitive may be used in place of an Indicative. Its Subject is then in the Nominative.*

¹The construction is of composite origin, formed from the coming-together of Ablative, Sociative, and Locative uses. Cf. English "from design," "with design," "in haste" (all expressing Manner). But in English the Prepositions keep the three constructions from coming to seem like one.

²In the oldest stage of language there were no prepositions.

³This construction probably originated in a Locative use of the Infinitive, when the two forms (-e and -i) still had their case-forces. Thus, *lo! the enemy in flight!*

CLAUSE OF CAUSE OR REASON WITH *quod, quia, quoniam,*
OR *quando*

516. Specimen Sentences:

Gaudeō quod tū valēs, I am glad that (= because) you are well.

Quia valeō, pugnābō, because I am well, I shall fight.

Quoniam otium habēs, venī, since you have leisure, come.

Quando puerī pugnātūrī sunt, ego certē aderō, since the boys are going to fight, I shall certainly be present.

a. In these examples, as you see, the Indicative clause states a fact, as the *Cause* or *Reason* for something given in the main sentence.

We may then lay down the rule that:

517. *Cause or Reason may be expressed by an Indicative Clause with quod, quia, quoniam, or quando.*¹

ABLATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION

518. Specimen Sentences:

Castrīs suōs ēdūcit, he leads his men out of the camp.

Ex castrīs suōs ēdūcit, he leads his men out of the camp.

Pugnā dēsistunt, they cease from fighting.

a. Verbs of separation are mostly compounds containing one of the separative prepositions, *ab, dē, ex*. The three examples illustrate the general usage of nouns depending upon them. In the first two, literal separation in place is expressed, and either with or without a preposition. In the last, figurative separation is expressed, and no preposition is used. This corresponds to the regular usage.

We may then lay down the rule that:

519. *Verbs of Separation take the Ablative, with or without a Preposition. But verbs expressing Figurative Separation only regularly omit the Preposition.*

¹ You can easily see how the force of Cause or Reason came into the clause with *quod*. "I am glad that" naturally suggests "I am glad because." *Quia* (which is an old Neuter Pl. of *quī*, just as *quod* is a Neuter Sing.) got its causal force in the same way. *Quoniam* and *quando*, which were originally conjunctions of time meaning *when*, have gained their causal force in the same way as English "since."

520.

VOCABULARY

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 1 (circum + dō), *throw around, surround.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, M. 3, *shout.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded.*

cōnfestim, Adv., *immediately.*

cursus, -ūs, M. 4, *running, run.*

dēmum, Adv., *at last, finally.*

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, 3 (ē + iaciō), *throw out.* Mē ēiciō, *I rush out.*

insidiae, -ārum, F. 1, *ambush, ambushade.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, 3 (inter + clūdō, shut), *shut in, hem in, block.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, 3, *slip.*

manus, -ūs, F. 4, *hand; band.*

subsidiū, -ī, N. 2, *reserve, reinforcement, help.*

trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itum, irr. (trāns + eō), *go across, cross over, go over.*

521.

READING MATTER

(The End of the Battle)

Ubi autem priōrēs militēs Lūcī magnō cursū euntēs palūdi adpropinquāvērunt, ex exercitū Mārcī īī quī (in) extrēmō dextrō cornū cōnstitērant restitērunt, hostibusque obstābant. Idem ab aliis deinceps factum est, ita ut tōta mox aciēs contrā militēs Lūcī cōstitissent. Hī autem, cum maximē temerē essent cōnsecūtī, nunc inter flūmen et Mārcī exercitum interclūsī erant; nam ā sinistrō latere palūs prōgredi vetābat.

Tum īī quōs Mārcus in insidiis conlocāverat magnō (cum) clāmōre sē ex silvīs ēiciunt, suisque subsidiō veniunt; simulque tertia aciēs, cum ad sinistram cōnfestim trānsisset, hostēs etiam ab hōc latere circumvenit. Sic Mārcus, flūmine et palūde ūsus, minōre exercitū exercitum maiōrem undique circumdederat. Tum dēmum vērū commissum est proelium. Lūcius suis clāmāre¹ ut omnibus vīribus pugnārent. Hī autem, ut² in tālī rē fit,² ita inter sē cōnfertī erant ut manibus armisque nōn possent commodē ūtī; et quīdam etiam, ex īferiōre locō in flūmen lāpsī, magnō in periculō erant. Itaque iūdicēs imperāvērunt ut omnēs pugnā dēsisterent; Mārcum³ enim superāvisse.³

¹ Historical Infinitive.

² As happens in such a case.

³ The Accusative-with-Infinitive betrays Indirect Discourse.

LESSON LXVI

IRREGULAR VERBS (Finished)

522. CONJUGATION OF ferō, bear

Principal Parts: ferō ferre tulī lātum

	Active		Passive	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris or -e
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	ferimini	ferāmini
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	tuleram	tulisse	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer ¹	ferre	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus (esse)
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus (esse)	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus

SUPINE

lātum, -ū

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

GERUNDIVE

ferendī, ferendae, ferendī, etc.

¹ Dicō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō have Imperatives dic, dūc, fac, fer.

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

(New Force Gained by the Subjunctive Tenses of the Past)

523. In the Reading Matter of 509 we had the sentence:

Etiam tum, si Lūcius dē dolīs suspicātus esset, facile propter numerum suōrum victor esset, even then, if Lucius should suspect stratagems, he would easily be victor on account of the number of his men.

a. The mind of the teller of the story was here fixed upon a point in the past, at which the outcome of the battle was still in the future. *Si suspicātus esset* is a *past future-perfect* and *victor esset* is a *past future* (i. e., the expression of a mental certainty about something which *at this past time was sure to come*).

b. But as we look back from the *present* point of view, we see that both condition and conclusion express something which we know to be *contrary to the actual fact*. Lucius *did not* suspect, and *is not* victor. Practically, then, the meaning suggested becomes "if Lucius *had* suspected, he *would* now be the victor." In this way, the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive get the new power of expressing conditions and conclusions contrary to fact, the Imperfect dealing with Present time, and the Past Perfect with finished action at any time in the past up to the present moment.

We may then lay down the rule that:

524. *Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact are expressed by the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperfect refers to the Present, the Past Perfect to the Past.*

a. We may now present all Conditions and Conclusions together:

525. Table of Conditions and Conclusions (Summary)

Future	<div> <div>{</div> <div>More Vivid: Indicative, Future or Future Perfect.</div> <div>Less Vivid: Subjunctive, Present or Perfect.</div> </div>
Present or Past	<div> <div>{</div> <div>Neutral: Indicative, Present or Past Tenses.</div> <div>Contrary to Fact: Subjunctive, Imperfect or Past Perfect.</div> </div>

DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS

526. Specimen Sentences:

Disciplīna animum exercitui adfert (ad + fert), discipline brings spirit to an army.

Ponti adpropinquant, they approach (draw near to) the bridge.

Mārcus exercitui praeest, Mark (is in front for the army, =) is in command of the army.

a. The Dative in the first example is the Dative of Direction, just as it would be after *ferō* without *ad*. In the second it is the Dative of Relation (after *adpropinquō*, *draw near to*, just as after *propinquus*, *near to*). In the third, it is the Dative of the Persons Concerned. Now a great many instances of the kind occurred with verbs thus compounded with Prepositions. The result was that it seemed natural to use the Dative with verbs compounded with *any* Preposition, unless the idea of space-relation was too prominent.

We may then lay down the rule that:

527. *The Dative is used after many Verbs compounded with certain Prepositions.* (These are *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*).

528.

VOCABULARY

adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum, irr. (ad + ferō), bring (to).

citerior, -ius, on this side, hither (a Compar. form). Superl. citimus, hithermost.

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, fight.

facultās, -ātis, F. 3 (cf. facilis), facility; opportunity.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr., bear, bring, carry.

fortūna, -ae, F. 1, fortune.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, admire.

noctū, Adv., at night, by night.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, take possession of, occupy.

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum, 4, share.

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, promise.

propior, -ius, nearer (a Compar. form). Superl. proximus, nearest, close by.

quoad (quō + ad, up to what time), Conj., until (like dum).

super, above. Prep., taking Acc. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,

3 (trāns + dūcō), lead across.

tumulus, -ī, M. 2, mound, low hill.

ulterior, -ius, on the other side, farther (a Compar. form).

Superl. ultimus, farthest.

529.

READING MATTER

Omnēs nunc Mārci mīrābantur ingenium. Lūcius autem, quī vellet hanc glōriam partīrī saltem, aegrē pugnam¹ adversam¹ ferēbat. Itaque cum domum Mārci noctū vēnisset, ōrat² ut iterum liceat² dīmīcāre; sēsē enim dē·dolīs atque īnsīdiīs nihil prōvīdisse. “Sī,” inquit, “eōdem nōs modō pugnāvissēmus,³ ego nunc victor essem.”³ “Ita vērō,” inquit Mārcus; “sed, nisi ego prōvīdissem³ dīversō nōs modō pugnātūrōs, tibi maiōrem exercitum numquam dedissem.”³ Sī tū autem fortūnam tuam aegrē fers, facultātem quam petis dabō.³ Ut tū vīs, fiat. Concēdō ut iterum dēcertētur.” Itaque prōnūntiātum est exercitūs posterō diē iterum dīmīcātūrōs. Iūdicēs īdem quī⁴ antea⁴ sē proeliō adfore polliciti sunt.

Hōrā pugnae cōstitutā signō datō, Mārcus suōs trāns pontem magnō cursū trādūcit. Lūcius autem, quī dolīs iterum superārī nōllet,⁵ omniaque nunc timēret, tumultum silvae proximum occupat, superque eum īnstrūctīs suīs, exspectābat quoad sē Mārcus adgrederētur.⁶ Id fēcīt, nē quod auxilium huic in pugnā adferrētur. Mārcus autem, quia putāverat in ulteriōre parte vallis, nōn in ceteriōre, pugnātum īrī, omnia prōvīderat. Itaque suīs copiīs prōgressus est quoad sub tumultum vēnit,⁷ ubi eas cōsistere iubet.

¹ *Adverse battle*, = *defeat*.

² *Ōrat* expresses neither exactly Will nor exactly Wish, but rather Request or Entreaty; and the Substantive Clause that follows of course expresses the same idea. Some grammarians put this with the Volitive Subjunctive, others with the Optative. But the languages that keep the two moods distinct show that *both* were used to express the idea; and the Latin usage has thus probably come down from both. Compare English “I beg that he shall be forgiven” (Volitive form) and “I beg that he may be forgiven” (Optative form).—The same is true of the corresponding idea of Consent, seen in *fiat* and in *concēdō ut iterum dēcertētur* (Substantive Clause) below.

³ What kind of Condition and Conclusion?

⁴ *The same* (who had promised) *before*, = *the same as before*.

⁵ Causal quī-Clause,—*because he didn't wish*

⁶ Looked forward to by *Lucius* (Anticipatory Subjunctive). } Both with

⁷ Looked back upon by the narrator (Indicative of Fact). } *quoad*.

LESSON LXVII

IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

530. Several Adjectives show two or three different stems in the three Degrees, or different forms of the same stem. Compare English *good, better, best*. Thus:

bonus, good	melior, better	optimus, best
malus, bad	peior, worse	pessimus, worst
magnus, great	maior, greater	maximus, greatest
multus, much	plūs, more	plūrimus, most
parvus, small	minor, smaller	minimus, smallest

531. For a few Adjectives, the Positive is lacking or rare, or appears only in *Adverbs* or *Prepositions*. Thus:¹

citrā, on this side	citerior, hither	citimus, hithermost
ultrā, beyond	ulterior, farther	ultimus, farthest
in, intrā, within	interior, inner	intimus, innermost
prope, near	propior, nearer	proximus, nearest
prae, prō, before	prior, former	prīmus, first
exterus, outside (and ex)	exterior, outer	{ extrēmus } { extimus } } outermost
inferus, below	inferior, lower	{ infimus } { imus } } lowest
superus, above (and super)	superior, higher	{ suprēmus } { summus } } highest
posterus, following (and post)	posterior, later	{ postrēmus } { postumus } } last late-börn

¹The definitions given in the list represent the simplest meanings. But most of the words have figurative meanings also. For example, you will find *superior* in the Reading Matter of the present Lesson in the sense of *higher-in-point-of-time*, i. e., *former*; and it also often means *superior*, just as the opposite, *inferior*, *lower*, often means *inferior*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Finished)

532. Specimen Sentences (from the Reading Matter of 509):

Paulo ante decimam hōram iudicēs eōs quī pugnam spectātum vēnerant certiōrēs fēcērunt tempus pugnandī adesse; ipsī sub collēs in extrēmam vallem dēcēderent; quī ex eō locō excessissent priusquam dēcertātum esset, eōs ex valle pulsum irī. *A little before four o'clock the judges informed those who had come to see the battle that the time for the fighting was at hand; that they (the spectators) should withdraw under the hills at the edge of the valley; that those who should leave that place before the battle should be finished would be expelled from the valley.*

a. All of the sentence after the words *certiōrēs fēcērunt* reports in substance what the judges said, but it is not in their exact words. It is thus in Indirect Discourse.

b. The first thing said is that the time was at hand (in the original form, *tempus adest*, "the time is at hand"). This, as the Principal Statement, is expressed by the Infinitive, as you have already learned in 465.

c. The next thing is a Command, which in the original form would be expressed by an Imperative, *sub collēs discēdite*, "withdraw under the hills." But the Imperative cannot be used here, because that mood is, by its very nature, the form for *direct* command. Some other mood must therefore be employed, and this must have in effect the same power. Obviously the Volitive Subjunctive has it, and so completely meets the needs. The same holds true similarly in Prohibitions (*negative commands*).

d. The next thing originally said was: "Those who shall leave that place," *quī ex eō locō excēderint* (Future Perfect Indicative), "before the battle shall be over, will be expelled from the valley." The future idea in "who shall leave," being thrown back into the past, becomes a *past-future* idea (just as *priusquam dēcertātum esset*, "before the battle should be finished," is); and you already know (381) that the one and only way which the Romans had for expressing a *past-future* idea in a dependent clause by a single verb is the Anticipatory Subjunctive. In this indirect telling of the story, then, the Future Perfect Indicative must necessarily become a Subjunctive.

e. In other words, the Future or Future Perfect Indicative would necessarily go over into the Subjunctive if the time of the main verb was past; and the Imperative would necessarily do so, no matter what the time was. *But the two things happened so often that it seemed natural to put ALL clauses in Indirect Discourse (except the Principal Statement) into the same mood; and this became the fixed habit.*

We may then sum up as follows:

THE CONSTRUCTIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Summary)

533. *In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statement is put in the Infinitive, with Subject Accusative (which may be omitted if perfectly clear). All other verbs that would be in the Indicative if in Direct Discourse, and all Commands or Prohibitions, are put in the Subjunctive. Thus:*

Nūntius imperātōrī dicit quid factum sit; sī prōgrediātur, magnō eum in periculō futurum esse, quia itinera interclūsa sint, *the messenger tells the general what has been done; that, if he shall advance, he will be in great danger, because the roads are blocked.*

a. **Quid factum sit** stands for **quid factum est?** a Question of Fact: *what has been done?*

b. **Sī prōgrediātur** stands for **sī prōgrediēris**, a more Vivid Future Condition: *if you shall advance.* (Note the change of Persons.)

c. **Quia itinera interclūsa sint** stands for **quia itinera interclūsa sunt**, a Clause of Cause or Reason with **quia**: *because the roads are blocked.* (Cf. 517.)

534. Table of the Constructions of Indirect Discourse by Kinds

CONSTRUCTION	EXPRESSED BY
Indirect (Principal) Statements of Fact	Infinitive with Subject Accusative
Indirect Questions of Fact	Subjunctive
Indirect Commands or Prohibitions	Subjunctive (ut , nē)
Clauses Subordinate to any of these	Subjunctive

535.

VOCABULARY

conclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1 (con- + clāmō), *shout vigorously, shout out.*

cōnsultō, Adv., *purposely, intentionally.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, 3 (dē + mittō), *send down, let down.* Mē dēmittō, *I descend, come down.*

exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, slight.*

initium, -i, N. 2, *beginning.*

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1 (in + stō, stand on against), *press on.*

interior, *inner.* See 531.

orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *circle.* In orbem cōnsistō, *take position in a circle.*

partim, Adv., *partly.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (prae + faciō, make to be in front), *put in command (of).*

quasi, Adv. (cf. quā and sī), *as if, almost.*

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (re- + ferō), irr., *bring back.* Pedem referō, *I retreat, retire.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, 3, *draw, drag; drag out.*

vōx, vōcis, F. 3, *voice.*

536.

READING MATTER

Tum clāmat Mārcus, "Quid vīs? Cūr rem trahis? Sī cōpiās nostrās exiguās timēs, cūr nōn in intimā silvā mānsistī?" Ad quae quaesivit Lūcius, ubi Mārcus reliquōs in insidiis conlocāvisset, quī sibi subsidium ferrent? Is respondet omnēs adesse omnēsque parātōs esse dīmīcāre. Tum magnā vōce, ut hostēs audire possent, suōs prōgredi iussit; sed lēgātīs quōs cornibus dextrō et sinistrō praefēcērat (ipse mediae aciēi praeerāt) iam ante (*in advance*) docuerat quid in tālī rē facerent.

Conclāmant omnēs. Ācerrimē initiō pugnātum est. Tum Mārcus cum puerīs minōribus, quōs cōnsultō mediā aciē conlocāverat, pedem celeriter referunt; cornua tardius (Compar.) cēdunt. Hostēs, quī sē iam vīcissee crēderent, cupidē īnstāre. Ita fit ut omnēs mox Lūcī mīlītēs dē tumulō sēsē dēmīsissent, atque uterque exercitus quasi in orbem cōstitisset. Tum tertia Mārci aciēs, subitō partim ad dextram partim ad sinistram trāsgressa, hostis adgressa est ā tergō. Sic minor exercitus exercitum maiōrem aequō locō undique circumvēnerat, mīlītēsque Lūcī, ut superiōre pugnā, armīs commodē ūtī nōn poterant. Tum iūdicēs prōnūtiāvērunt Mārcum iterum vīcissee.

LESSON LXVIII

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

537. 1. Adverbs from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions commonly end in *ē*. Thus *tardus*, Adv. *tardē*; *aeger*, Adv. *aegrē*.

2. Adverbs from Adjectives of the Third Declension commonly end in *-ter*. Thus *diligēns* (Gen. *diligentis*), Adv. *diligenter*; *ācer* (Gen. *ācris*), Adv. *ācriter*.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

538. In Comparison the Adverb follows the formation of the Adjective, except that the Comparative ends in *-ius* (like the Neuter Nominative-Accusative of the Comparative Adjective), and the Superlative in *-ē*. Thus:

<i>tardē</i> , slowly	<i>tardius</i> , more slowly	<i>tardissimē</i> , most slowly
<i>diligenter</i> , diligently	<i>diligentius</i> , more diligently	<i>diligentissimē</i> , most diligently
<i>ācriter</i> , fiercely	<i>ācrius</i> , more fiercely	<i>ācerrimē</i> , most fiercely
<i>facile</i> , easily	<i>facilius</i> , more easily	<i>facillimē</i> , most easily

a. *Magis* and *maximē* are often used, as with Adjectives (511, 4).

IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

539. The following show two or three different stems in the three Degrees (like the corresponding Adjectives given in 530), or are otherwise peculiar or defective:

<i>bene</i> , well	<i>melius</i> , better	<i>optimē</i> , best
<i>male</i> , ill	<i>peius</i> , worse	<i>pessimē</i> , worst
<i>magnopere</i> , } greatly	<i>magis</i> , more	<i>maximē</i> , most
<i>multum</i> , } much		
<i>multum</i> , much	<i>plūs</i> , more	<i>plūrimum</i> , most
<i>parum</i> , little	<i>minus</i> , less	<i>minimē</i> , least
—	<i>prius</i> , before	<i>primum</i> , first
<i>prope</i> , near	<i>propius</i> , nearer	<i>proximē</i> , nearest, next
<i>saepe</i> , often	<i>saepius</i> , oftener	<i>saepissimē</i> , oftenest

SPECIAL USES OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES

540. The Comparative Degree sometimes has the force of *rather* . . . or *too* . . . , and the Superlative of *very* . . . Thus:

cupidus, <i>eager</i>	cupidior, <i>too eager</i>	cupidissimus, <i>very eager</i>
cupidē, <i>eagerly</i>	cupidius, <i>too eagerly</i>	cupidissimē, <i>very eagerly</i>

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

(More General Construction)

541. Specimen Sentences:

Optimum est nōs ire, *It is best (for us to go, =) that we go.*
 Volō tē ire, *I want you to go.*

So in a variety of uses. Hence, we may say that:

542. *The Infinitive with Subject Accusative may be used in dependence upon many Verbs and Phrases.¹*

543. You will note that this construction comes into a sort of *rivalry* with the Subjunctive construction. Compare the following:

Volō tē ire, *I want you to go.*

Volō ut tū eās, *I want (that you go, =) you to go.*

a. Some verbs and phrases admit either construction (as **volō**) others the Subjunctive only (as **imperō**), others the Infinitive only (as **iubeō** and **vetō**). You should note as you read, and remember.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION IN CLAUSES DEPENDING UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE OR INFINITIVE

544. Specimen Sentences:

Mōs est ut rēgēs quī victī sint in triumphō dūcantur, *it is the custom that kings who have been conquered should be led in triumph.*
 Mōs est rēgēs quī victī sint in triumphō dūci, *it is the custom for kings who have been conquered to be led in triumph.*

¹Another instance of the general development seen in the footnotes on pages 181, 182,—due to the influence of the Infinitive with Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse, and of such natural constructions of Accusative and Infinitive as in “compel him to . . .,” “urge him to . . .,” where the Infinitive was originally a Dative of Direction.

a. The Subjunctive Clauses in these sentences have no reason in themselves for being in that mood. If attached to Indicatives, *they* would *also* be Indicative (thus *rēgēs quī victī sunt in triumphō dūcuntur*, *kings who are conquered are led in triumph*). The reason for the mood here must therefore be that the clauses are *influenced* by the Subjunctive and Infinitive.

We may then lay down the rule that :

545. *A Dependent Clause attached to a Subjunctive or Infinitive Clause, and expressing an essential part of the thought conveyed by it, is put in the Subjunctive.*¹

546.

VOCABULARY

accurrō, -currere, -currī and -currī, —, 3 (ad+currō), *run up*.

Baculus, -ī, M. 2, a Roman name.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3 (con+gnōscō, earlier form gnōscō), *learn thoroughly, find out; recognize*.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (con+mūtō) *completely change*.

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3 (con+legō), *gather, collect*.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (dē+faciō, make away), *fail*.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3 (ē+rumpō), *break out, sally out*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *sally*.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (ex+capiō, take from some one), *receive, pick up*.

experiō, -experīrī, expertus sum, 4, *try*.

Galba, -ae, M. 1, a Roman name.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *kill*.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (inter+mittō, send between), *intermit, stop*.

porta, -ae, F. 1, *gate*.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, 3 (cf. reliquus), *leave*.

salus, -ūtis, F. 3, *salvation, safety*.

sex, indecl. Adj., *six*.

Sextius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

spēs, -eī, F. 4, *hope*.

tantummodo, Adv. (tantum+modo, so much only), *merely*.

tēlum, -ī, N. 2, *missile*.

Volusēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

¹This usage came about especially through the frequent occurrence (1) of dependent Subjunctive clauses which really owed their Mood to Indirect Discourse, but happened to be dependent upon other Subjunctive Clauses; (2) of past-future Subjunctives in dependence upon other Subjunctives; and (3) of Subjunctive clauses with real but not obvious mood-force, in dependence upon other Subjunctives (cf. 501, 1, footnote 4). The use with the Infinitive is a still further extension.

547.

READING MATTER

(An Incident from Real Warfare: Victory in a Desperate Situation)

Cum iam amplius hōris sex pugnārētur¹ ac nōn solum vīres sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, centuriō, et Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse² spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum³ auxilium³ experirentur.⁴ Itaque celeriter milites certiōres facit paulisper intermitterent⁵ proelium ac tantummodo tēla quae missa essent⁶ exciperent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subito omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret⁷ neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Itaque commūtātā fortunā eōs quī in spem⁸ potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs⁹ interficiunt.⁹

548.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. They had now been fighting more than six hours and not only strength but missiles were failing. 2. Then a centurion and a tribune showed Galba that, unless they should try a desperate remedy, there was no hope of safety; (that) if, however, stopping¹⁰ the battle¹⁰ for a little, and merely picking up the missiles that should be sent, they should sally out by all the gates, they would leave the enemy no opportunity for collecting themselves or for knowing what was going on;¹¹ and would surround and kill those who had come to hope to possess the camp. And this¹² was done.

¹ Must mean HAD now BEEN.
Note hōris sex.

² Indirect Principal Statement.

³ = a desperate remedy.

⁴ Indirect Future Condition.

⁵ Indirect Command.

⁶ Past-Future Subj., also in Indir. Disc., and also suggesting Attraction.
Of. footnote on opposite page.

⁷ Indirect Question of Fact. Translate *what was going on*.

⁸ Had come INTO the hope (notice the case), = *had come to hope*.

⁹ Kill those . . . , surrounded.
In English, *surround and kill*.

¹⁰ Use the Ablative Absolute.

¹¹ = "was being done."

¹² Use the connecting pronoun.

PART III: SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE GALLIC UPRISING OF 54 B. C.¹

CHAPTER I

549. Disposition of the Roman Army in Belgium for the Winter

Eō annō propter frumentī inopiam coāctus est Caesar legiōnēs in plūris cīvitātis distribuere; ex quibus ūnam in² Morinōs dūcendam³ C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervīos Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō. Quārtam in⁴ Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō ad finēs Trēvirōrum hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Mūnātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam legiōnem et cohortīs quinque in Eburōnēs, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsīt. Hīs militibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

¹ You have finished your study of forms and constructions, and are now to see how effectively you can use your knowledge, to understand what a Roman writer has to say. The Lessons from this point on tell the story of a dramatic chain of events in one of the Gallic campaigns of Julius Caesar. Five years before, Rome had possessed, of what we now know as France, a small territory in the southeast. Caesar, the Roman governor of this province and also of North Italy and a strip of country further east, checked an attempted westward migration of the Swiss, which threatened the province. From this beginning, he became involved (not unwillingly) in a series of wars; and, when our story opens, he had practically conquered France and Belgium, and had even made a tentative invasion of Britain. In all this, he was spreading the civilization which we have inherited.

In the autumn of 54 before Christ, his work was nearly undone by a sudden uprising, and the bad error of judgment of two of his lieutenants. Fortunately, he had not yet gone back to North Italy for the winter. These Chapters tell, in his own narrative (condensed), what happened.

² *Into* (note the Accusative) *the country of*.

³ You see that the Future Passive Participle can serve to express *Purpose*.

⁴ *In* (note the Ablative) *the country of*.

550.

VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactum, 3 (con-+agō, drive together), gather; compel.	hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. hiems), <i>winter</i> .
distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tri- būtum, 3, <i>distribute</i> .	inopia, -ae, F. 1, <i>want, lack,</i> <i>scarcity</i> . (Opposite of cōpia.)
frumentum, -ī, N. 2, <i>grain</i> .	quārtus, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i> . quīnque, indecl. Adj., <i>five</i> .

ROMAN NAMES	ROMAN NAMES (CONT'D)	GALLIC NATIONS
Aurunculeius, -ī.	Rōscius, -ī.	Bellovacī, -ōrum.
Caesar, Caesaris.	Sabīnus, -ī.	Eburōnēs, -uū.
Cicerō, -ōnis.	Titūrius, -ī.	Esuvīi, -ōrum.
Cotta, -ae.	Titus, -ī.	Morinī, -ōrum.
Crassus, -ī.	Trebōnius, -ī.	Nervīi, -ōrum. Also Sing. Nervius, a Ner- vian.
Fabius, -ī.		
Labiēnus, -ī.	GALLIC KINGS	
Mūnātius, -ī.	Ambiorīx, -īgis.	Rēmī, -ōrum.
Plancus, -ī.	Catuvolcus, -ī.	Trēverī, -ōrum.
Abbreviations: C., Gāius; L., Lūcius; M., Mārcus; Q., Quīntus; T., Titus.		

551.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION¹

1. There was a scarcity of grain this year. 2. If² the legions should winter² together, the supply³ from the neighboring⁴ country would fail.² 3. Caesar therefore distributed them among several states.

4. He gave one legion and five cohorts to Sabinus and Cotta to lead⁵ into the country of the Eburones; (and) another legion to Labienus to lead into the country of the Remi. 5. Another legion he placed in the country of the Esuvii; (and) this he ordered Cicero to command. 6. Others he sent to different regions, with different lieutenants.

¹ The notes will now leave you more largely to your own power of thinking out Latin ways of expression, both for choice of words and for constructions.

² A Future Condition and Conclusion from a *past* point of view.

³ Use *cōpia*.

⁴ Use *propinquus* and *loca*.

⁵ Purpose. Express it as Caesar did in the Latin opposite.

CHAPTER II

552. Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus

Atque hārum omnium legiōnum hiberna milibus passuum centum continēbantur.¹ Caesar intereā, quoad² legiōnēs conlocātās mūnitaque hiberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

Ab omnibus, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque esse mūnitum.

Diēbus quīndecim quibus³ in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī,⁴ Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī, ad castra oppugnātum vēnērunt.⁴ Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque, equitibus ēmissis, equestri proeliō superiōrēs⁵ fuissent,⁶ dēspērātā rē⁶ hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōrē conclāmāvērunt, utī⁷ aliquī⁸ ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: habēre⁹ sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent.¹⁰

¹ Tense of the Situation, the State of Affairs.

² Summary of ideas with words meaning *until* (dum, dōnec, and quoad):

{ Actual Act looked back upon,	Indicative.
{ Act looked forward to (Anticipated),	Subjunctive.

³ *Within which.* In English we say *after*.

⁴ Really independent. A Forward-Moving Relative Clause.

⁵ *Higher* in what sense? If you cannot see, consult p. 208, footnote 1.

⁶ Note *two* ways of introduction used together, the *cum*-Clause and the Ablative Absolute.

⁷ At once, you see that a Volitive Substantive Clause is coming.

⁸ Unusual use of *aliquī* as Substantive, in place of *aliquis*.

⁹ This must be a Principal Statement in Indirect Discourse. Now look back at *utī . . . prōdīret*, and you will find that the two fill out the meaning of the same verb, *conclāmāvērunt*. The *whole* is thus clearly in Indirect Discourse. This shows us once more that there is no real difference between a Volitive Clause after a verb of saying, and a Command in Indirect Discourse. The latter is only one particular instance of the former.

¹⁰ Why is *vellent* Subjunctive, and what does it stand for?

553.

VOCABULARY

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum, 3, *ascend, mount*.
 centum, indecl. Adj., *a hundred*.
 conloquium, -ī, N. 2, *colloquy*.
 dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (dē + spērō, hope), *despair (of)*.
 ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmisī, ēmissum, 3 (ē + mittō), *send out*.
 eques, equitis, M. 3, *horseman, cavalryman*. In Pl., *cavalry*.
 equestris, -e, *cavalry* (as Adj.).
 Gallia, -ae, F. 1, *Gaul*.
 hiberna, -ōrum, N. 2, *a winter camp, winter quarters*.
 impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, 3 (in + pellō, drive on), *impel*.
 Indutiomārus, -ī, M. 2, *name of a Gallic king*.
 intereā, Adv. (inter + eā), *meanwhile*.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *delay*.
 mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, *construct, fortify*.
 oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege*.
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ob + pugnō), *besiege, attack (a fortified place)*.
 prōdeō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, irr. (prōd-, oldest form of prō, + eō), *come forth*.
 quīndecim, indecl. Adj. (cf. quīnque and decem), *fifteen*.
 redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (re + dūcō), *lead back*.
 repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden*.
 trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditum, 3 (trāns + dō), *hand over*.
 tumultus, -ūs, M. 4, *disturbance, uprising*.
 vāllum, -ī, N. 2, *wall, rampart*.

554.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Caesar waited until he was informed¹ that the legions had come into winter-quarters. 2. And, even then, he by chance delayed, which fact² was the salvation of the Roman power³ in Gaul. 3. For when Cotta and Sabinus had constructed a camp, Ambiorix and Catuvoleus suddenly attacked it.

4. Our men, however, defended themselves fiercely, and the cavalry, being sent out from the camp, were⁴ superior in a cavalry battle. 5. The barbarians then shouted-out that⁵ some one of our men should⁵ be sent to them for a conference, (saying) that they wished to talk about the common interest.²

¹Is this an actual act looked back upon, or an act looked forward to?

²Use *rēs*,—a convenient general word. See two places in the Latin opposite.

³Say "for salvation to . . ." (428).

⁴Be careful of the tense. This will test your feeling.

⁵What kind of a clause, in English as in Latin?

CHAPTER III

555.

The Parley

Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā¹ C. Arpīneius, eques Rōmānus, et Q. Iūnius; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum² locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum eī cōnfiterī dēbere; id quod fēcerit³ dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, nōn aut iūdicīo aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coactū civitātis. Esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse.⁴

Quibus⁵ quoniam⁵ prō pietāte satisfēcērit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem⁶ offici prō beneficiō Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Sabīnum, ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum Rhēnum trānsisse: hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum⁷ esse cōnsilium, velintne,⁸ prius quam finitimī sentiant, militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī, tūtum iter per finēs datūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne⁹ habitā⁹ discēdit Ambiorīx.

¹ (With the cause of, =) *for the sake of, with the purpose of.* Causā or grātiā following a Gerund or Gerundive is a common way of expressing Purpose.

² *After this fashion, or as follows.*

³ *That which he had done.* Evidently a Determinative Clause. Why, then, Subjunctive?

⁴ *Gauls had not been able easily to deny Gauls, i. e., it wouldn't have been easy for him, as a Gaul, to deny Gauls.*

⁵ Double Connective (*whom since . . .*), where English would use but one (*since . . . them*).—What mood have you learned is used with *quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō* (517)? Why then the Subjunctive here?

⁶ *Had reckoning of, took account of, had regard for.*

⁷ *Their own counsel, i. e., a matter for themselves to decide.*

⁸ *Velint-ne, whether they wanted, whether they chose.*

⁹ *Having delivered this address.* What construction?

556.

VOCABULARY

Arpīneius, -ī, M. 2, a name.
 beneficium, -ī, N. 2 (cf. bene and faciō), *well-doing, kindness*.
 bīdium, -ī, N. 2, *two days*.
 coāctus, -ūs, M. 4, *compulsion*.
 cōnfiteor, -fitēri, -fessus sum, 2, *confess*.
 conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3 (con- + loquor), *confer*.
 cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, 3, *consult (for), look out for*.
 dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2 (dē + habeō, have from), *owe; ought*.
 finitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring*.
 Pl. as Subst., *neighbors*.

Iūnius, -ī, M. 2, a name.
 negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *say no, say . . . not, deny, refuse*.
 orātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *speech, argument*.
 pietās, -ātis, F. 3, *loyalty, patriotism*.
 prō (same word as before), *in behalf of; hence, in return for*.
 Prep., taking Abl.
 quīnquāgintā, indecl. Adj., *fifty*.
 Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2, *the Rhine*.
 satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (satis + faciō), *do enough (for), satisfy*.
 tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*.

557.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The argument of Ambiorix was after this fashion: 2. I have not besieged your camp of my own will or judgment, but under the compulsion of the state. 3. The Gauls have formed a common plan to attack¹ all (of) Caesar's winter-camps on the same day. 4. I, a Gaul, could² not² say-no to the Gauls.

5. (But³) since I have now satisfied them, it is permitted to me to have regard for my duty in-return-for Caesar's kindness. 6. I speak for the sake⁴ of warning you. 7. A great band of Germans has crossed the Rhine. 8. Before they shall⁵ be present, I beg you to lead off your soldiers to (the camp of) Cicero or Labienus. 9. I will give you a safe conduct⁶ through our territory.

¹Of course you will not use the Infinitive in *Latin*.

²= "Was not able" (nōn potuī).

³Omit, and use double connective.

⁴Use *causā*.

⁵Is this looked back upon (Fact), or forward to (Anticipation)?

⁶Say "a safe journey."

CHAPTER IV

558. Difference of Opinion. The Wrong Plan Prevails

Arpineius et Iūnius quae audierant¹ ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi, etsi ab hoste ea dicēbantur,² tamen nōn neglegenda³ existimābant.² Itaque ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt, magnaue⁴ inter eōs existit contrōversia.⁴ Cotta complūrēque tribūnī militum nihil temerē agendum³ neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant.² Contrā ea Sabīnus sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctis Germānīs convēnissent.⁵ Magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ardēre Galliam; brevem cōsulendī⁶ esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam.

Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat⁷ Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-nūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis. Primā lūce ex castris proficiscuntur, longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentis.

¹ What kind of clause is this?

² The tense expresses the *Situation*, the *State of Affairs*.

<p>Tenses in Historical Writing</p>	{	<p>When one is talking about the past, Situation will always be expressed by the Imperfect or Past Perfect (which are the <i>Helping Tenses</i>); while the <i>Leading Events</i> will be expressed by Aorist Perfects or Picturesque Presents. Remember this in your own writing.</p>
---	---	--

³ *Esse* is omitted, as *very frequently* in Indirect Discourse.

⁴ Adjective not only before the Noun (abnormal place), but *at the head of the clause*; while the Noun itself is *suspended*, to heighten curiosity. Write like this yourself.

⁵ This, you see, had not yet occurred. The act was still to be done (future). The tense, then, is not a real Past Perfect, but a Past *Future* Perfect (future to clāmitābat, and finished before, i. e., Perfect to, sērō factūrōs). You will find the English tense by which you translate to correspond exactly.

⁶ *Opportunity* OF, where we say FOR.

⁷ *Dat* manūs = *yields*. Note the emphasis of order. Something finally *done* (dat) by Cotta,—namely, *giving up* (shown by manūs).

559.

VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *think, suppose.*

ardeō, ardēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, 2, *burn, be in a blaze.*

brevis, -e, *short, small.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. clāmō), *keep crying out.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, 3 (con-, intensive, + sūmō, take up), *consume, spend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr. (dē + ferō), *carry off; report.*

disputātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *discussion.*

dolor, -ōris, M. 3, *pain.*

etsī (et + sī), Conj., *even if; although.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *estimate; think.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3 (ex + sistō, cause to stand out), *break out, arise.*

impedīmentum, -ī, N. 2 (as before), *hindrance, in Pl., baggage.*

iniussū, Adv., *without orders.*

lūx, lūcis, F. 3, *light.* Prīma lūx, *daylight.*

occāsio, -ōnis, F. 3, *occasion, opportunity.*

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (per + ducō, lead along), *prolong.*

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 (per + movēō, move), *move deeply.*

sērō, Adv., *late, too late.*

tandem, Adv., *at last.*

vigilia, -ae, F. 1, *watch, vigil.*

560.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Some¹ spoke after this fashion: 2. The things which have been reported² to the council are said, not by a friend, but by an enemy. 3. Why should we trust an enemy? 4. Let us do nothing rashly. 5. We ought not to depart³ from our winter quarters without orders from Caesar.

6. Against this, the argument of others¹ was after this fashion: 7. We shall act⁴ too late when the Germans shall have joined themselves to the Gauls. 8. Before they shall be present in front of our camp, let us lead off our men to the nearest winter quarters. 9. Caesar has set out for Italy. 10. Let us set out without delay for (the camp of) Cicero or Labienus.

¹ Alii alii , in the proper cases.

² What kind of clause?

³ Use Impersonal verb, as opposite ("it ought not to be departed by us").

⁴ Use faciō.

CHAPTER V

561.

Ambuscade

At hostēs posteā quam ex vigiliis dē profectiōne eōrum sēserunt,¹ conlocātis insidiis in silvis Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīssisset,² ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt atque proelium committere coepērunt. Tum dēmum Sabīnus, quī nihil prōvidisset,³ trepidāre et concursāre. At Cotta, quī cōgitāasset⁴ haec posse in itinere accidere, nullā in rē commūni salūtī deerat.

Hī cum⁵ propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē⁶ omnia obīre et quid quōque⁷ locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent,⁸ iussērunt prōnūtiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod⁹ cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit;¹⁰ nam et¹¹ nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostīs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcīt, quod⁹ nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur.

¹ Aoristic Narrative Clause (506). *Posteā quam* = *postquam*.

² Descriptive *cum*-Clause of Situation (487). Practically interchangeable with the Aoristic Narrative Clause with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, etc. (506, *a*).

³ The mood shows that the idea is *Causal* (Causal *quī*-Clause; 479).

⁴ Contracted form (for *cōgitāvisset*). So often from stems in *-āvi*, *-ēvi*, *-ivī*.

⁵ Don't think of a translation for *cum* as you read, but wait to see how the clause turns out. Here are the possibilities for it, if Subjunctive:

Possibilities	{	(Merely) Descriptive; <i>when</i> (487).
of		Descriptive, with additional Causal or Adversative force;
Subjunctive		<i>when</i> (and <i>since</i> , or <i>although</i> ; 488).
cum-Clause	{	(Purely) Causal or Adversative; <i>since</i> , or <i>although</i> (489).

⁶ *Through themselves*, that is, *in person*. The line was too long.

⁷ This is *quōque*, not *quoque*. It is the Ablative of *quisque*, *each*.

⁸ This proves to be a Causal *cum*-Clause (*since*; 489).

⁹ Always be on your guard with *quod* (Relative Pronoun or Conjunction)!

¹⁰ *Fell*, in the sense of *happened*. (Compare English "befell.")

¹¹ After *nam*, *et* cannot mean "and." What then?

562.

VOCABULARY

accidō, accidere, accidī, —, 3
 (ad+cadō), *be fall, happen.*
 adventus, -ūs, M. 4, *arrival.*
 coepī, coepisse, coeptum est, de-
 fective, *began, started.*
 concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
 con- and currō), *run to and fro.*
 convallis, -is, F. 3, *valley, defile.*
 dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *despair.*
 dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus,
 irr. (dē+sum), *be wanting, fail.*
 incommodē, Adv., *disadvanta-
 geously, unfortunately.*

longitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *length.*
 minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum,
 3 (cf. minus), *lessen, diminish.*
 obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum, irr.
 (ob+eō, go to meet), *attend to.*
 ostendō, ostendere, ostendi,
 ostentum, 3, *show.*
 profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *departure.*
 reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi,
 -hēnsūm, 3, *censure.*
 timor, -ōris, M. 3, *fear.*
 trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *be in
 a flutter, lose one's head.*

563.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The Gauls, placing¹ an ambuscade in the woods, waited until the army came-down² into a valley. 2. Then our men saw, too-late, that the enemy had broken faith. 3. They were now in the greatest danger. 4. Their line of march was very long, and a great multitude was attacking it on either side. •

5. Cotta and Sabinus were not able to attend to everything in person. 6. They therefore ordered their men to leave the baggage and take-position in a circle. 7. This³ plan is often to be approved in such a case; but it strengthened⁴ the hope of the enemy, who believed⁵ the Romans to be thoroughly frightened.

¹ The English Present Participle is often inexact in tense. The real tense-fact here is *Perfect* (HAVING placed. They didn't wait *while* placing, but *after* they had placed, *when* they had placed).—But Latin *has* no Perfect Active Participle.

Now, if *cōnlocō, place*, were a *Deponent* verb, you could use the Perfect *Passive* Participle, which has active meaning (315). But it is not. Hence you must express the idea by a clause with a conjunction meaning *after* or *when* (*ubi*, etc., or *cum*), or by the Ablative Absolute, with Perfect *Passive* Participle. This happens often.

² Your translation will show whether you have mastered the *until*-Clauses.

³ How can you tie this sentence neatly to the last one?

⁴ Say "strengthened hope for the enemy," using *cōnfirmō*.

⁵ Use the mood which will add the idea of *since*.

CHAPTER VI

564. A Desperate Battle. Gallic Strategy

Nostrī omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns¹ quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant et, quam² in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint,² cēdant, rūrsus sē³ ad signa recipientis īnsequantur. Quō praeceptō ab iis diligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum undē erant prōgressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis quī cesserant et ab iis quī proximi steterant circumveniēbantur.

Tamen multīs vulneribus acceptis resistēbant; et magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur,⁴ nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committēbant. Tum Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur, L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs ōrdinēs adhortāns in adversum⁵ ōs fundā vulnerātur. Hīs rēbus permōtus⁶ Sabīnus interpretem ad Ambiorigē mittit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat.⁷

¹ This is a good illustration of the *Generalizing Clause*, which is very like a General Condition (494 a and b): *As often as (=if at any time) any cohort charged, a great number of the enemy would fall.*

Note, now, the *equivalency* of several introductory words:

Quotiēns	quaeque	cohors	prōcurrerat,	as often as	any cohort charged.
Cum	quaequam	cohors	prōcurrerat,	when	any cohort charged.
Quaecumque		cohors	prōcurrerat,	whatever	cohort charged.
Si	qua	cohors	prōcurrerat,	if	any cohort charged.

All these are general, and all *assume* something as a fact; whence the Indicative mood (note the two *cum*-Clauses of this kind below).

² *In whatever direction.* General, in *future*, Indirect Discourse.

³ Be careful! *Recipientis* is active, and must have some Object.

⁴ *Adversative cum*-Clause. For the tense-force, see 547, footnote 1.

⁵ *In the opposed face* = full in the face.

⁶ Obviously *Situation*. This is what Participles regularly express.

⁷ You see that the feeling is that of *Request* or *Entreaty* (cf. 529, footnote 2).

565.

VOCABULARY

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *encourage; exhort, urge.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3 (animus+ad+ver-tō, turn the mind to), *notice.*

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (con-+iaciō), *hurl.*

fortiter, Adv., *bravely.* Compar. fortius, Superl. fortissimē.

funda, -ae, F. 1, *sling.*

interpres, -pretis, M. 3, *mediator, interpreter.*

Lūcānius, -ī, M. 2, a Roman name. neu (also nēve), Conj., *and not, nor.* Corresponds to nē, as nec to nōn.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *observe.*

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī or parsī, parsūrus, 3, *spare* (Verb of Attitude).

praeceptum, -ī, N. 2, *direction.*

procul, Adv., *at a distance, from a distance.*

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam (quis-declined as in quis-que, 200), Indef. Adj., *any.*

quotiēns, Adv. and Conj., *how often, as often as.*

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *run back, retreat.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ask, request.*

rūrsus, Adv., *back, again.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (sub+veniō), *come to aid.*

vēlōciter, Adv., *swiftly.*

566.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The enemy hurled their javelins from a distance on all sides into the legion. 2. If any cohort charged, they would give-way. 3. When our men retired¹ again, both (those) who had given-way and those who had stood close-by would surround them. 4. Still they fought most bravely for many hours. 5. Then, when Cotta had been wounded full in the face by a sling, and² was no² longer² able to command his men, Sabinus sent an interpreter to Ambiorix to beg that he should spare those to whom he had promised³ safe conduct.

¹ A Generalizing Clause. Compare the *if*-clause just above.—You remember also the Determinative cum-Clause (Indicative, 426), which defines an individual time, just as a *quī*-Clause does a man, etc. We are ready, then, to put the Indicative cum-Clauses into a Summary, as follows:

Indicative { Determinative, fixing an individual time (426).
cum-Clause { Generalizing, of a repeated action (footnote opposite and 494, a).

² Say "nor now" (nec iam).

³ You see that this is *Indirect*.

CHAPTER VII

567. The Trick. Destruction of the Army

Ambiorix respondit: Si velit¹ secum conloqui, licere; ei nihil² nocitum iri; in eam rem se suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicat, si videatur,³ pugnā ut excēdat et cum Ambiorige unā conloquantur. Cotta se ad armātum hostem itūrum negat, atque in eō perseverat.

Sabinus, quos⁴ tribūnos⁴ militum circum se habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs se sequi iubet, et, cum⁵ propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere⁶ imperātum facit, suisque ut⁶ idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum de condiōnibus inter se agunt,⁷ paulatim circumventus interficitur.

Tum verō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant, impetūque in nostrōs factō⁸ ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi. Aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad unum omnēs dēspērātā salūte se ipsi⁹ interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō elāpsi per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.¹⁰

¹ What kind of Condition would this be in Direct Discourse?

² Accusative of Extent. Translate *no harm AT ALL would be done him*.

³ *If it should seem (best) to him*. What does the clause go with? Clauses in Latin are more likely to belong to something that is coming than to something that has preceded. Keep this constantly in mind in reading: *Most clauses modify FORWARD*.

⁴ *What tribunes he had, = the tribunes whom, etc.* A common arrangement. Call it the **RELATIVE CLAUSE LEADING**.

⁵ This is the *bare cum*-Clause of Situation (no additional idea).

⁶ Note *iubeō* with Infinitive, but *imperō* with Subjunctive (543, a).

⁷ *Agō* here means *deal with, discuss*.

⁸ Translate by the (inexact) English Present Participle.

⁹ They do it *to themselves* (sē), and *they themselves* do it (ipsi).—Our English expression is less full.

¹⁰ Clearly Labienus ought now at once to send word to Caesar and all the other camps. See whether he does so.

568.

VOCABULARY

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3
(ab + iaciō), *throw away; throw
down, throw.*

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
3 (ad + cēdō, move toward), *ap-
proach.*

condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *terms, con-
dition(s).*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum,
3 (ē + gradior, step out), *march
out, go out.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3 (ē +
lābor, slip), *slip out, escape.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
tum, 3 (inter + pōnō), *put be-
tween; with fidem, pledge.*

paulātim, Adv. (cf. paulum), *little
by little, gradually.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
turba), *throw into confusion.*

propius, Compar. of prope, *near.*
Adv., used as Prep.

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
2 (subs, a form of sub, + teneō,
hold up), *sustain.*

569.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. To this Ambiorix said: If Sabinus wishes to talk with me, I pledge my word that no harm will be done him. 2. Sabinus then sent an interpreter to¹ ask Cotta to go with him for the purpose¹ of conferring with Ambiorix. 3. Cotta answered: I will not leave the battle in order¹ to go¹ to an armed enemy.

4. Sabinus, upon (cum; 487) approaching Ambiorix and throwing down his arms, was surrounded and killed. 5. Then the barbarians attacked our men fiercely. 6. A few only escaped from the battle. 7. A small part with difficulty returned to the camp, and here, at night, all killed themselves to a man.

¹ You see here *three* English ways of expressing Purpose, and there are others, as with volitive "shall" and "for . . . -ing" (cf. ad with Gerundive, etc.).—The ways in Latin may be summarized as follows:

Purpose may be expressed by	{	Dative of an Abstract Noun.
		Quī, quō, ut, or nē, with the Subjunctive (volitive).
		The Supine in -um (only after verbs of motion).
		Ad with the Gerundive or Gerund.
		Causā or grātiā with Genitive of the Gerundive or Gerund.
		The Future Passive Participle in agreement with the Object of a verb.

Remember that: *Purpose is never expressed by the Infinitive in Latin prose.*

CHAPTER VIII

570. An Attempt to surprise Cicero's Camp fails. The Siege

Barbari ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant magnaque manū legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt,¹ vāllum ascendunt.¹ Aegrē is diēs sustentātur.

Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant. Ā nostris eādem ratiōne² quā prīdiē resistitur. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Tunc ducēs Nerviōrum cum Cicerōne conloquī sēsē velle dicēbant. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Sabīnō ēgerat,³ commemorant: licēre illis ex hibernis discēdere et sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmāni accipere ab hoste armātō condiціōnem.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē barbari fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt. At tanta militum virtūs fuit atque ea⁴ praesentia animi, ut, cum⁵ undique flammā torrērentur, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet⁶ nēmō,⁶ sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum ācerimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

¹Note the rapid movement of the narration, without connectives.

²By the same theory, = in the same way. An Ablative of Means which has become an Ablative of Manner. This is one of the common expressions of Manner into which a Preposition never came; 512, b.

³Had discussed with Sabīnus, = had urged upon him. What kind of clause?

⁴You see in this passage an easy proof of what you learned in 422; namely that the Pronoun *is* can be used just like an Adjective (= tālis). *Ea* here is actually yoked up (by *et*) with the Adjective *tanta* (so great . . . and such . . . , that).

⁵The Situation in which (and in spite of which) no one left the rampart. Descriptive *cum*-Clause of Situation, with additional adversative idea; 488. Note that English "when" has the same power (example in 572, 7).

⁶Which is changed in position to give emphasis, dēcēderet, or nēmō?

571.

VOCABULARY

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ad + volō, fly), *fly (to), rush (to)*.

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (make to remember), *state, mention*.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, 3, *seize, catch*.

concurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3 (con + currō), *run together, rush*.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *heat red hot*.

flamma, -ae, F. 1, *flame, fire*.

iaculum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin*.

metus, -ūs, M. 4, *fear*.

paene, Adv., *almost*.

populus, -ī, M. 2, *people*.

praesentia, -ae, F. 1, *presence*.

prīdiē, Adv., *the day before*.

respiō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, 3 (re + -spiciō; cf. spectō), *look back, look around*.

strāmentum, -ī, N. 2, *straw*.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. sustineō) *sustain*.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, 2, *scorch, burn*.

tunc, *then*, a stronger tum (from tum + -ce, = *that then*).

572.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION¹

1. The barbarians flew to² attack Cicero's winter-quarters before he should hear of the battle. 2. Our men defended themselves with difficulty. 3. The enemy³ attacked on the following day and on several days in succession. 4. Then, an opportunity for conferring with Cicero being given (them), they warned and begged him to lead⁴ his troops out of their territory. 5. To which he answered: "It is not the custom of the Roman people to receive terms from an armed enemy."

6. On the seventh day of the siege, the presence of mind of our soldiers saved the camp. 7. For even when⁵ their cabins had caught fire, no one left the ramparts.

¹ Use picturesque tenses freely for practice, not only with main verbs, but in subordinate clauses (though *never with cum*).

² Express this purpose by *ad* with Gerundive, for practice.

³ Is "the enemy" really Singular or Plural in meaning?

⁴ Request or Entreaty. In Latin, a Substantive Clause (cf. 529, footnote 2).

⁵ Situation *in spite of which*.

CHAPTER IX

573. A Letter is carried through to Caesar

Erat¹ ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat. Hic servō persuādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne ad Caesarem pervenit.

Caesar acceptis² litteris² hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēi statim³ nūntium ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius hiberna aberant¹ ab eō milia passuum vīgintī quīnque. Iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō⁴ Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit. Scribit⁵ Labiēnō, sī rei⁶ pūblicae⁶ commodō⁶ facere possit, cum legiōne ad finis Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat¹ longius, nōn putat expectandam. Equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs conligit.

Hōrā circiter tertiā dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum vīgintī prōgreditur. Fabius, nōn multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

¹What is the meaning of the *Imperfect*? Would the *Perfect* be right here?

²Translate by the (inexact) English Present Active Participle, *receiving*.

³Note the promptness with which Caesar acts, and to which he had trained his lieutenants. You see that Crassus does more than is asked of him.

Caesar's political enemies said of him that he was a monster for vigilance and quickness. How much time did he allow for the covering of the twenty-five miles by the messenger (who, of course, went on horseback) and the start of Crassus? How many hours was it before Crassus was near Caesar's camp? About how many miles must Crassus' legion have covered before the evening of the first day?

⁴With the messenger, that is, without delaying at all.

⁵What follows may be a Statement (Infinitive), or an Indirect Question (Subjunctive), or a Command (Subjunctive). What does it turn out to be?

⁶(With advantage on the part of, =) *with advantage to the common good*.

574.

VOCABULARY

circiter, Adv., and Prep. with Acc., *about*.

commodum, -ī, N. 2, *advantage*.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, irr.

(ex + ferō), *carry out or away*.

exeō, -īre, -iī and -iī, -itum, irr.

(ex + eō), *go out, march out*.

inligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1 (in + ligō, bind), *bind up*.

intus, Adv., *within*.

littera, -ae, F. 1, *letter* (of the alphabet). Pl., *a letter*.

longē (as before), *far*. Compar.

longius, Superl. longissimē.

occurrō, -currere, -currī and -curri, -cursum, 3 (ob + currō, run against), *meet*.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitūrus, 3 (per + fugiō, flee through), *take refuge, desert*.

praemium, -ī, N. 2, *reward*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, 3, *write*.

suspiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *suspicion*.

undecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh*.

Verticō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

vigintī, indecl. Adj., *twenty*.

575.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. One of the Nervians, Vertico by name, had taken refuge with Cicero. 2. This (man) persuaded a slave to carry a letter to Caesar. 3. Having received it,¹ Caesar immediately wrote² to Crassus and Fabius to come quickly to him, leaving a small band only to defend their camps. 4. He also sent a message to Labienus to come to him, if³ he should be able³ to leave (= "go out from") his camp without serious danger. 5. The rest of the army, which was farther away, he determined not to wait for.

6. Crassus left (his camp) (upon) receiving Caesar's message, not delaying long. 7. (When) informed that he was approaching, Caesar set out with all his forces.

¹ You have now recently seen five ways of introducing the main verb:

Five Ways of Introducing the Main Verb:	{	Ubi, ut, postquam, or simul atque with Indicative.
		Cum with Subjunctive.
		Dum, while, with Present Indicative.
		Participle.
	{	Ablative Absolute.

The first way is Aoristic (*absolute tense*), the others express Situation.

² What ideas *might* follow "wrote," and what idea *does* follow?

³ Is this Direct Discourse, or Indirect?—Arrange in Latin order.

576.

CHAPTER X

Caesar enters the Enemy's Country. How he sends a Message to Cicero

Labiēnus, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent,¹ veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset,² hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset,² litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset.³ Rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit.⁴

Caesar, cōnsiliō Labiēnī probātō, etsī opīniōne⁵ trium legiōnum dēiectus⁵ ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritātē⁶ pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs⁷ itineribus⁷ in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur,⁸ quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Sī adire nōn possit,⁹ monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā intrā mūnitiōnem abiciat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversā tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur, dēmpla¹⁰ ad Cicerōnem dēfertur.¹⁰

¹ What is the main force of this clause, and what the additional one?

² Future in meaning. You have now seen examples enough to allow you to say this: *Every tense of the Subjunctive has two forces, one that of the Indicative of the same name, the other a future force.*

³ Periphrastic (233, 2, b), — *was going to lead*, i. e., *would have to lead*.

⁴ Caesar could get a message through, and Labienus could get one back. Had Labienus then done his duty?

⁵ Cast down from his expectation (of having), i. e., disappointed in his expectation (of having). Translate *dēiectus reciderat* like two main verbs, connected by *and*. — What is the force of the case of *opīniōne*?

⁶ Again you see Caesar's quickness in thought and action.

⁷ *With great days' marches*, = *with forced marches* (Abl. of Manner; 513).

⁸ Evidently an Indirect Question. Of what kind?

⁹ Is this Condition direct, or indirect?

¹⁰ In English, *is taken down and carried* (cf. footnote 5).

577.

VOCABULARY

adeō, adīre, adiī or adīvī, aditum, irr. (ad+eō, go to), *approach*.

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, 2, *adhere, stick*.

captīvus, -a, -um, *captive*.

celeritās, -ātis, F. 3, *swiftness, speed*.

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, 3 (con-+spiciō, spy), *see*.

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (dē+iaciō, throw down), *cast down* (literally or figuratively).

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēemptum, 3 (dē, down+emō, take), *take down*.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, F. 3 (cf. mūniō), *fortification*.

opīniō, -ōnis, F. 3, *opinion; expectation*.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, 3 (per+scribō), *write fully, write out*.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (prae+capiō, take in advance), *direct, order*.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel., *how great, as great as*.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, 3 (re+cadō), *fall back; be reduced to*.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (re+mittō), *send back*.

similis, -e, *like, similar*.

trāgula, -ae, F. 1, (Gallic) *javelin*.

578.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Labienus, however, sent back a letter to Caesar (to the effect) that¹ all the forces of the Treveri had collected² around his camp, and³ that for this reason he could³ not³ accomplish³ a departure without great danger.

2. Caesar, although he had only two legions, advanced by forced marches into the territory of the Nervii. 3. There he learned from captives how¹ great a force had besieged the camp. 4. He then persuaded a Gallic horseman to carry a letter to Cicero. 5. If he could⁴ not⁴ enter the fortification, he instructed (the man) to send a javelin within the camp. This was done. 6. The javelin was noticed on the third day, and Cicero thus learned that¹ Caesar was coming to aid him.

¹ Is this a Statement, a Question, or a Command?

² Say "had been collected."

³ "And . . . not" = "nor." "Could" = "was able to." For "accomplish," see Caesar's phrase in the Latin opposite.

⁴ = "should not be able."

CHAPTER XI

579. The Gauls fly to meet Caesar. Approach of the two Armies. Caesar's Strategy.

Galli rē cognitā per explorātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter mīlia sexāgintā.

Posterō diē Caesar lūce primā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus¹ trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspicātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs² tantulīs cōpiis iniquō locō dīmīcāre. Cōnsīdit, et quam³ aequissimō³ potest³ locō³ castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē,⁴ vix hominum mīlium⁵ septem, tamen quam maximē contrahit, eō cōsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus⁶ veniat.

Primā lūce hostium⁷ equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris⁷ equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cedere sēque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre⁸ vāllō mūniri portāsque caespitibus obstrui, atque in hīs administrandis⁹ rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum similitiōne agi timōris iubet.

¹ One of the ways of introducing the main verb given in the table on p. 233. What others would be possible with this same verb *prōgredior*?

² *Erat* is singular. *Rēs* is therefore Nominative *singular* (not plural) or *Accusative* plural. Which is it?

³ *In an AS-MOST-FAVORABLE-HE-CAN place, i. e., in as favorable a place as possible.* This use of *quam* and the Superlative with *possum* is very common. *Possum* is often dropped from the phrase, leaving merely *quam* with the Superlative, with the same idea. You will see it twice below with an Adverb (*quam maximē*).

⁴ *Though it was small in itself, i. e., was naturally small.*

⁵ What kind of Genitive is this?

⁶ *To=in the eyes of.* What case, and how do you name the use?

⁷ What is the force of the position of *hostium* and *nostris*?

⁸ From a word which you have had. What degree of comparison?

⁹ Could the Gerund have been written here by Roman usage?

580.

VOCABULARY

caespes, -itis, M. 3, *sod, turf*.
 commūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, 4
 (con-+mūniō), *fortify*.
 cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, 3
 (con-+sīdō, sit), *sit down*;
halt; camp.
 cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf.
 cōspiciō), *get sight of*.
 contemptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *contempt*.
 contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-
 tum, 3 (con-+trahō, draw to-
 gether), *contract*.

equitātus, -ūs, M. 4, *cavalry*.
 explorātor, -ōris, M. 3, *scout*.
 inīquus, -a, -um (in+aequus, not
 even), *disadvantageous*.
 obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege*.
 obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūc-
 tum, 3, *block up, obstruct*.
 rīvus, -ī, M. 2, *stream*.
 sexāgintā, indecl. Adj. *sixty*.
 simulātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *pretense*.
 tantulus, -a, -um, *so small, so
 little*.

581.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The Gauls, being informed through scouts that Caesar was approaching, determined to meet him on the way. 2. So Cicero's legion was saved, if¹ Caesar should conquer.¹

3. Having² learned² this, Caesar advanced more slowly, seeking as favorable a place as possible for fighting. 4. Getting³ sight³ of the Gauls after⁴ a⁴ while⁴ beyond a valley and stream, he fortified a camp.

5. When, at daybreak, the Gauls approached, the Roman cavalry, as had been directed, yielded, and retreated within the fortifications. 6. At the same time Caesar ordered his men to fortify the camp with a higher wall, and, in doing the work, to run to and fro as much as possible, with a pretense of fear. 7. In this way he came into the greatest contempt in-the-eyes-of⁵ the enemy.

¹ Evidently a Future Condition. From what point of view?

² In how many ways can you express this Perfect Active Participle?

³ Evidently the English tense is not exact.

⁴ Say "after something (*aliquantum*) of time."

⁵ Express simply by the case of the word for "enemy." What usage?

CHAPTER XII

582. The Gauls are themselves Surprised

Quibus¹ omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trāns rīvum trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt. Nostrīs vērō² etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissis prō-nūntiārī³ iubent, seu⁴ quis⁴ Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine periculō licēre;⁵ post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt ut vāllum manū scindere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in⁶ fugam⁶ dat,⁶ sic utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret⁷ nēmō; magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs armīs⁸ exuit.⁸

Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn⁹ decimum⁹ quemque⁹ esse reliquum militem sine vulnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae.¹⁰

¹ Be sure you translate into genuine English.

² The office of *vērō* is often, as here, merely to emphasize the preceding word. Translate by stress of voice.

³ At this point, you can't tell with certainty whether a Statement or a Command is coming. And you don't need yet to know, any more than a Roman did.

⁴ As you read along, do you think it probable (knowing the habit of Latin order) that the Condition beginning with *seu quis* belongs with what has preceded, or with what is coming?

⁵ Now do you find a Statement, or a Command?

⁶ Throws them into flight, puts them to flight.

⁷ Resistō (re + sistō) here has its original meaning, *make a stand*.

⁸ That is, makes them drop their arms as they fly.

⁹ Not each tenth, = not one in ten.

¹⁰ What kind of a clause is this, and why Subjunctive?

583.

VOCABULARY

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mis-sum, 3 (circum+mittō), <i>send around</i> .	occidō, -cidere, -cīsi, -cīsum, 3 (ob+caedō, cut against), <i>kill</i> .
contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum, 3, <i>despise</i> .	praecō, -ōnis, M., 3, <i>herald</i> .
exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, <i>strip (of), deprive (of)</i> .	prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3 (prō+ducō), <i>lead forth; draw up, muster</i> .
incolumis, -e, <i>unharméd, safe</i> .	prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3 (prō, forth, +sequor, follow), <i>follow after, pursue</i> .
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (inter+cēdō), <i>come between, intervene</i> .	scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, <i>tear, tear down</i> .

584.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN

1. The enemy, deceived by these things, approached nearer the camp, and drew up a line of battle on the disadvantageous ground which intervened between it and the stream. 2. They then sent heralds around to proclaim that they would spare those who should come over to them before the third hour. 3. They even began to tear down the rampart by hand; so great was their contempt of our men. 4. Then Caesar sent out his forces by all the gates. 5. The Gauls, thoroughly terrified by the sudden sally, took¹ to¹ flight,¹ and many of them were killed.

6. Upon² arriving² at the winter-camp, Caesar recognized with what wisdom and courage Cicero had managed everything, for there was not one soldier left in ten without a wound.

¹Say *gave themselves into flight*.

²Use *cum* with the Subjunctive. This is the lightest touch of the *cum*-Clause of Situation. Always write the Subjunctive without hesitation *if the clause tells you something new* in the story; for then its office cannot be to fix the time (for the reader didn't even know the fact before), but must be to give the *circumstances* under which the main act took place (Description).

On the other hand, you would write the Indicative (*Determinative cum*-Clause; 426) in such a sentence as "I have slept under pine trees which were tall, straight, beautiful pine trees when North America was discovered" (Edward Everett Hale, at American Forest Congress, 1905).

SUMMARY OF CONSTRUCTIONS

(The references are to paragraphs. N. means footnote.)

USES OF THE CASES

AGREEMENT

585. As far as their forms can show, words agree with the words they belong with. Thus:

1. An Appositive or Predicate Noun agrees in Case with the Substantive to which it belongs (**44, 26, a**).
2. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case (**119, 147, 226, a**).
3. Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents in Gender and Number; but their Case depends upon their relations in the Clauses to which they belong (**189**).
4. A Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person (**95, b**).

NOMINATIVE

586. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative (**24**).

GENITIVE

587. The Genitive is used to express:

1. Possession (Possessive Genitive; **53**).
2. The Whole to which a Part Belongs (Genitive of the Whole; **202**).
3. Material or Composition (**387**).
4. Kind or Measure (Descriptive Genitive. A modifier is necessary; **390, 1**).
5. The Object, with many Nouns or Adjectives, and Participles used as Adjectives (Objective Genitive; **209**).

DATIVE

588. The Dative is used to express:

I. The Idea of Figurative Direction, and others derived from it, as follows:

1. The Indirect Object of a Verb (65).
2. Tendency, Purpose, or Result; (Abstract Nouns, 428).
3. The Concrete Object For Which something is Intended (430).
4. That Toward Which a Quality, Attitude, or Relation is Directed, after Adjectives and Verbs expressing any of these ideas (67).
5. The Person to Whom an Act or State Refers, or whom it Concerns (Dative of Reference or Concern; 260).
6. The Person Judging (295).
7. The Agent of the Future Passive Participle (281).
8. Possession, with the Verb *sum* (289).

II. The Person or Thing Affected, in a construction of several origins, as follows:

1. After many Verbs Compounded with certain Prepositions (*ad, ante, circum, con-, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super*; 527).

ACCUSATIVE

589. The Accusative is used to express:

I. The Idea of Space-Relation, and others derived from it, as follows:

1. Space-Relation (not separative or locative), with a variety of Prepositions (78; list in 592, II).
2. Extent of Space, Duration of Time, and Degree (434).

II. The Idea of the Verb-Object, and others derived from it, as follows:

1. The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb (62).
2. A Predicate, as well as Direct, Object with Verbs of Making, Choosing, Having, Regarding, Calling, or Showing (330).
3. The Subject of an Infinitive (465, 542).

VOCATIVE

590. The Vocative is used in Address (45).

ABLATIVE

591. The Ablative is used to express:

I. Separative (*from-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. With the Prepositions **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, **sine**; also with **prō**, **prae** (74, 89, 175, 301).
2. The Agent of the Passive Voice, with **ā** or **ab** (126).
3. The Point of View From Which (411).
4. Separation, with or without a Preposition, with Verbs (519).
5. Comparison (the "than" idea), where **quam** is not used (457).
6. Accordance, with certain very common words (**mōre**, etc.; 455 and *a*).

II. Sociative (*with-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. Accompaniment, with **cum**. May be omitted in military language, if the noun has a modifier and this is not a numeral (507 and *a*).
2. Loosely connected modifications of various kinds (Ablative Absolute; 308).
3. Means or Instrument (274).
4. Measure of Difference (332).
5. The Object of **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor** (334).

III. Locative (*in-* or *at-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. Place In Which something Is or Is Done, with **in** and **sub** (74, 78, *a*, 467). May be omitted with certain very common words, like **locō**, **regiōne**, etc. (410 and *a*).
2. That in Which one Trusts, with **fido** (432). But the Dative is regular with nouns denoting Persons (principle of 67).

IV. Ideas originally expressed in *two* or *more* of the three ways given above (the *from*-way, the *with*-way, and the *in*-way).

1. Time At or Within Which (399).
2. Respect (442).
3. Kind or Physical Characteristics; also, in a few phrases, Mental State or Situation. A modifier is necessary (390, 2).
4. Cause or Reason (440).
5. Way or Manner, regularly without a Preposition. But Abstract Nouns in less frequent use take **cum** if there is no modifier, and *may* take it even if there is one (513).

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

592. Prepositions expressing the Separative,¹ Sociative, or Locative² Idea (also *prō* and *prae*) take the Ablative. Prepositions expressing *other* Space Ideas take the Accusative (78). Thus we have come to know:

- I. With the Ablative: *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *sine* (Separative); *prō*, *prae* (originally Separative); *cum* (Sociative); *in* and *sub* (Locative).
- II. With the Accusative: *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *circiter* and *circum*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *in*, *inter*, *intrā*, *ob*, *per*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *sub*, *trāns*, *ultrā*.

593. ORDINARY EXPRESSION OF PLACE (407)

1. Place From Which by the Separative Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.
2. Place To Which by the Accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub*.
3. Place In Which by the Locative Ablative with *in* or *sub*.

594. EXPRESSION OF PLACE WITH NAMES OF TOWNS, *domus* AND *rūs* (409)

1. Place From Which by the bare Ablative (similarly *domō* and *rūre*).
2. Place To Which by the bare Accusative (similarly *domum* and *rūs*).
3. Place In Which by the Genitive of the First or Second Declension Singular, and elsewhere by the bare Ablative (similarly *domī* and *rurī* or *rūre*).

USES OF THE VERB

IMPERATIVE

595. The Imperative (negative *nē*) is used to express Command, Advice, Request, Entreaty, and the like (137).

¹ *From, away from, out of*,—literal or figurative.

² This must be understood as meaning, by convenient usage, not *any* kind of place-idea, but only that of the place *in* or *within* which,—English *in, within, on, at, under*.

SUBJUNCTIVE

596. The Subjunctive is used as follows (negative **nē** for Will or Wish, **nōn** for Other Ideas):

I. To express an act as willed, anticipated, or wished; or as proper, likely, possible, or certain in an imagined case (368).

A. Note especially the use of the Subjunctive of Will (Volitive) in:

1. Exhortations, Commands, and Prohibitions (347, and n.).

2. Deliberative (better called Volitive) Questions (349, 354).

3. Clauses of Purpose, with **quī**, **quō**, **ut**, or **nē** (351).

4. Volitive Substantive Clauses:

After Verbs of Will or Endeavor, with **ut** or **nē** (352).

After Verbs of Hindrance, Prevention, or Check, with **nē**, **quōminus**, or **quīn** (352).

5. Clauses of Fear or Anxiety, with **nē** corresponding to English "that" and **ut** corresponding to English "that not" (353).

B. Note also the use of the Subjunctive of Anticipation in:

1. Clauses with words meaning "before" (**antequam**, **priusquam**; 356).

2. Clauses with words meaning "until" (**dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**; 356, 552, n. 2).

3. All Past-Future Clauses expressed by a single verb-form (382, 558, n. 5).

II. In Fact-Clauses of Consecutive nature or origin: Thus in:

1. Descriptive Clauses with **quī** or **cum** (421, 1; 487, 488).

2. Result Clauses with **ut**, **ut nōn**, or **quīn** (421, 2).

3. Substantive Clauses with **ut** or **ut nōn** after Verbs of Bringing About or Existence (421, 3).

4. Causal or Adversative **quī**-Clauses (479) and **cum**-Clauses (489).

III. In Conditions and Conclusions. See 600, 601.

IV. In Indirect Discourse. See 602, II, a.

V. By Attraction, in clauses closely attached to a Subjunctive or Infinitive (545).

INDICATIVE

597. The Indicative (negative *nōn*) is used to express an act as a fact, declaring, inquiring, or assuming. Thus in:

- I. Independent Statements and Questions of Fact.
- II. Determinative Clauses, with appropriate Relative or Conjunction. Thus especially in the:
 1. Determinative *quī*-Clause, fixing the *person who*, or *thing which* (**426**).
 2. Determinative *cum*-Clause, fixing the *time at which* (**426**, **584**, n. 2).
- III. Clauses of Actual Past Acts with words meaning "before" or "until" (*antequam* or *priusquam*, *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*).
- IV. Aoristic Narrative-Clauses, with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, or *simul atque* (Perfect or Historical Present; **506**).
- V. Substantive *quod*-Clauses, and *quod*-Clauses of Respect (**444** and *a*).
- VI. Clauses of Cause or Reason with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō* (**517**).

SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

598. Neutral Conditions and Conclusions in the Present or Past are expressed by the Indicative (**496**).

a. So frequently in Generalizing Clauses, with *sī*, *nisi*, a Relative, or a Conjunction (**494**, *a* and *b*; **566**, n. 1).

599. More Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Indicative tenses of Future time (the Future and Future Perfect; **498**, 1).

600. Less Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Subjunctive tenses of Future time (the so-called Present and Perfect; **498**, 2).

601. Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact are expressed by the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperfect refers to the Present, the Past Perfect to the Past (**524**).

INFINITIVE

602. The Infinitive is used:

I. As in English, to express the Subject, Object, or Complement of a Verb (**87**, *a*, *b*). Also in freer relations, in dependence upon many Verbs and Phrases (often in rivalry with a Subjunctive Substantive Clause; **543** and *a*). Its Subject is in the Accusative (**542**).

II. In Principal Statements of Fact in Indirect Discourse. Its Subject is then in the Accusative (**465**).

a. General Rule for Indirect Discourse: In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statement is put in the Infinitive, with Subject Accusative (which may be omitted if perfectly clear). All other verbs that would be in the Indicative if in Direct Discourse, and all Commands or Prohibitions, are put in the Subjunctive (**533**).

III. In lively Narration, in place of an Indicative. Its Subject is then in the Nominative (**515**).

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND

603. 1. The Gerundive is almost a Verbal Noun in force, but is itself still dependent upon a Substantive, with which it agrees (**303 a**, **470**, 1).

2. The Gerund is a complete Verbal Noun, governed like a Noun, but capable, like a Verb, of governing a Substantive, and being modified by an Adverb (**471**).

604. The Gerundive and Gerund exist only in the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative cases, and (with the differences stated above) are precisely parallel in their uses. These are, in general, the same as the uses of Nouns (**473**).

SUPINE

605. 1. The Supine in *-um* is used to express Purpose after Verbs of Motion (**453**, 1).

2. The Supine in *-ū* is used to express Respect with Adjectives (**453**, 2).

USES OF THE TENSES

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE

606. The tenses of the Infinitive and Participle express an act as, at the time of the verb on which they depend, *completed* (Perfect), *in progress* (Present), or *yet to come* (Future). They do not, of themselves alone, tell in what division of time the act lies. They are thus purely relative (**462**).

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

607. The tenses of the Indicative tell in what division of time the act lies, namely, in the Past, the Present, or the Future. Thus *I was building* (in the Past), *I shall build* (in the Future).

608. They are of two quite different kinds:

I. One kind represents an act as at a certain stage of advancement (completed, in progress, or yet to come) at a time which is thought of. Thus *he was painting a picture*. Such tenses, when attached to any other verb, are naturally understood as relative to that verb, as in *I saw the picture which he was painting*.

II. The other kind represents an act, *not* as in a certain stage of advancement at a certain time, but *as a whole, in the lump*. Thus *he painted a picture*. Such tenses are absolute.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

609. The tenses of the Subjunctive have the same forces as the tenses of the Indicative of the same name; and, in addition, each has a future force (**576, 2**).

Thus in *videō quid faciās*, *I see what you are doing*, *faciās* is present; but in *tē orō ut id faciās*, *I beg you to do this*, *faciās* is future.

a. In conditions and conclusions contrary to fact, the Imperfect tense has gained a new power, that of referring to the Present (**524**). This will be omitted in the table below.

610. The following table, grouping the tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive, shows *the division of time* to which each carries the mind, the *kind* to which it belongs, and the *natural combinations*.

Flight of Time	Past	Present	Future
	»»»»»»»»»»—————>		
MOODS:	INDIC. & SUBJ.	INDIC. & SUBJ.	INDIC. & SUBJ.
Absolute Tenses:	Perfect	Present	Future
Relative Tenses:	Imperf., Past Perf.	Pres., Pres. Perf.	Fut., Fut. Perf. (Subj. Pres., Perf. used over again)

THE NATURAL HARMONY OF TENSES

(“Sequence”)

611. The natural combinations in what we have to say (in Latin as in English) are of main tenses with relative tenses *of their own time*,—i. e., past tenses with relative tenses of the *past*, present with relative tenses of the *present*, and future with relative tenses of the *future*. That is to say:

612. In combinations of main and dependent verbs, whether Subjunctive or Indicative, a verb of the past is generally accompanied by the Imperfect or Past Perfect, a verb of the present by the Present or Perfect, and a verb of the future by the Future or Future Perfect (replaced, in the Subjunctive, by the Present or Perfect).

a. But the Narrative Clause with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, and *simul atque* is regularly aoristic (i. e. *absolute*, *unrelated*). Thus “when the barbarians *came*,” not “*had come*.”

b. The tenses of the present are often used picturesquely in place of the soberer tenses of the past, to put past events before us as now *taking place*. The subordinate verbs are likewise generally picturesque, but sometimes sober.

SUMMARY OF FORMS

DECLENSIONS, COMPARISON, NUMERALS
AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

613. The Declensions of Nouns are divided as follows:

First Declension:	ā-Stems
Second Declension:	o-Stems
Third Declension:	Consonant or i-Stems
Fourth Declension:	u-Stems
Fifth Declension:	ē-Stems

FIRST DECLENSION: ā-Stems

614. *serva*, (woman) slave, F.

<i>Stem</i>	<i>servā-</i>	<i>Endings</i>
		F. (or M.)
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>serva</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servae</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servae</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servam</i>	-am
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>serva</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servā</i>	-ā
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>servae</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servārum</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servās</i>	-ās
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>servae</i>	-ae
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servīs</i>	-īs

SECOND DECLENSION: o-Stems

615. o-STEMS, in -us and -um

servus, *slave*, M. dōnum, *gift*, N.

Stem	servo-	dōno-	Endings	
			M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	servus	dōnum	-us	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	dōnī	-ī	
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	dōnō	-ō	
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	dōnum	-um	
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	dōnum	-e	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	dōnō	-ō	
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	servī	dōna	-ī	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	dōnīs	-īs	
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	dōna	-ōs	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	servī	dōna	-ī	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	dōnīs	-īs	

616. SHORTENED ro-STEMS, in -er and -ir

puer, *boy*, M. ager, *field*, M. vir, *man*, M.

Stem	puero-	agro-	viro-	Endings
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	As above,
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	except in
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	Nom.-voc.
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	Sing.
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	ager	vir	
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	

THIRD DECLENSION

617. CONSONANT STEMS

rēx, *king*, M. miles, *soldier*, M. caput, *head*, N.

Stem	rēg-	milit-	capit-	Endings	
				M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	rēx	miles	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	militis	capitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	militī	capitī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	militem	caput	-em	—
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	miles	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgē	militē	capite	-e	-e
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	rēgēs	militēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	militum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	militibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	militēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs	militēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	militibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

618. CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

victor, *victor*, M. pater, *father*, M. rōbur, *oak*, N.

Stem	victōr-	patr-	rōbor-	Endings	
				As above	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	victor	pater	rōbur		
<i>Gen.</i>	victōris	patris	rōboris		
<i>Dat.</i>	victōrī	patrī	rōborī		
<i>Acc.</i>	victōrem	patrem	rōbur		
<i>Voc.</i>	victor	pater	rōbur		
<i>Abl.</i>	victōre	patre	rōbore		
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora		
<i>Gen.</i>	victōrum	patrum	rōborum		
<i>Dat.</i>	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus		
<i>Acc.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora		
<i>Voc.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora		
<i>Abl.</i>	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus		

THIRD DECLENSION

619. CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

sermō, *talk*, M. *multitūdō*, *multitude*, F. *nōmen*, *name*, N.

<i>Stem</i>	<i>sermōn-</i>	<i>multitūdin-</i>	<i>nōmin-</i>	<i>Endings</i>
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>sermō</i>	<i>multitūdō</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	As
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sermōnis</i>	<i>multitūdinis</i>	<i>nōminis</i>	given
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sermōnī</i>	<i>multitūdini</i>	<i>nōminī</i>	in
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sermōnem</i>	<i>multitūdinem</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	(617)
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sermō</i>	<i>multitūdō</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sermōne</i>	<i>multitūdine</i>	<i>nōmine</i>	
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>sermōnēs</i>	<i>multitūdiniēs</i>	<i>nōmina</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sermōnum</i>	<i>multitūdinum</i>	<i>nōminum</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sermōnibus</i>	<i>multitūdiniibus</i>	<i>nōminibus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sermōnēs</i>	<i>multitūdiniēs</i>	<i>nōmina</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sermōnēs</i>	<i>multitūdiniēs</i>	<i>nōmina</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sermōnibus</i>	<i>multitūdiniibus</i>	<i>nōminibus</i>	

620. CONSONANT STEMS (Finished)

(The Stems of these Nouns formerly ended in *s*. But *s* between vowels became *r*).

pulvis, *dust*, M. *mōs*, *custom*, M. *corpus*, *body*, N.

<i>Stem</i>	<i>pulver-</i>	<i>mōr-</i>	<i>corpor-</i>	<i>Endings</i>
(Formerly <i>pulves-</i>)		<i>īnōs-</i>	<i>corpos-</i>	
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>pulvis</i>	<i>mōs</i>	<i>corpus</i>	As
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulveris</i>	<i>mōris</i>	<i>corporis</i>	given
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulverī</i>	<i>mōrī</i>	<i>corporī</i>	in
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulverem</i>	<i>mōrem</i>	<i>corpus</i>	(617)
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pulvis</i>	<i>mōs</i>	<i>corpus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulvere</i>	<i>mōre</i>	<i>corpore</i>	
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>pulverēs</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>corpora</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pulverum</i>	<i>mōrum</i>	<i>corporum</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pulveribus</i>	<i>mōribus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pulverēs</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>corpora</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pulverēs</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>corpora</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pulveribus</i>	<i>mōribus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	

THIRD DECLENSION: i-Stems

621.

NEUTER i-STEMS

	Insigne, signal, N.	animal, animal, N.	exemplar, pattern, N.	Endings
Stem	insigni-	animāli-	exemplāri-	
Sing. Nom.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Gen.	insignis	animālis	exemplāris	-is
Dat.	insignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Acc.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Voc.	insigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Abl.	insignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Pl. Nom.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Gen.	insignium	animālīum	exemplārium	-ium
Dat.	insignibus	animālībus	exemplārībus	-ibus
Acc.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Voc.	insignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Abl.	insignibus	animālībus	exemplārībus	-ibus

622. MASC. AND FEM. i-STEMS

(Mostly like Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

MIXED STEMS

(Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

fīnis, end, M. caedēs, slaughter, F. nox, night, F. gēns, race, F.

Stem	fīni-	caedi-	noct- in Sing. nocti- in Pl.	gent- in Sing. genti- in Pl.
Sing. Nom.	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Gen.	fīnis	caedis	noctis	gentis
Dat.	fīnī	caedī	noctī	gentī
Acc.	fīnem	caedem	noctem	gentem
Voc.	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Abl.	fīne	caede	nocte	gente
Pl. Nom.	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Gen.	fīnium	caedium	noctium	gentium
Dat.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus
Acc.	fīnīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)	gentīs (-ēs)
Voc.	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Abl.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus

THIRD DECLENSION (Finished)

623.

EXCEPTIONAL i-STEMS

	turris, <i>tower</i> , F.	ignis, <i>fire</i> , M.
<i>Stem</i>	turri-	igni-
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Gen.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Dat.</i>	turrī	ignī
<i>Acc.</i>	turrim (rarely -em)	ignem
<i>Voc.</i>	turris	ignis
<i>Abl.</i>	turrī (-e)	ignī (-e)
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	turrēs	ignēs
<i>Gen.</i>	turrium	ignium
<i>Dat.</i>	turribus	ignibus
<i>Acc.</i>	turrīs (-ēs)	ignīs (-ēs)
<i>Voc.</i>	turrēs	ignēs
<i>Abl.</i>	turribus	ignibus

a. These Exceptional Stems show i in the *Singular*, as well as in the *Plural*.



VESUVIUS IN THE ERUPTION OF 1906
View taken from the Observatory

624.

FOURTH DECLENSION : u-Stems

cāsus, *chance*, M. cornū, *horn*, N.

Stem	cāsu-	cornu-	Endings	
			M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsuī, -ū	cornū	-uī, -ū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

625.

FIFTH DECLENSION : ē-Stems

diēs, *day*, M. and F.rēs, *thing*, F.

Stem	diē-	rē-	Endings
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī or -eī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī or -eī
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	-em
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	iēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	-ē
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

The Genitive and Dative Singular have long e (ē) after a vowel, but short e after a consonant. Thus diēī, but reī.

626. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS

domus, house or home

(Mixed Second and Fourth)

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	domus
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs or domī
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī or domō
<i>Acc.</i>	domum
<i>Voc.</i>	domus
<i>Abl.</i>	domū or domō

<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domuum or domōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domūs or domōs
<i>Voc.</i>	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domibus

vīs, force

(Irregular Third)

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	vīs
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs (rare)
<i>Dat.</i>	vī (rare)
<i>Acc.</i>	vīm
<i>Voc.</i>	vīs
<i>Abl.</i>	vī

<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vīrīs (-ēs)
<i>Voc.</i>	vīrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	vīribus



HOUSE OF THE VETTII, POMPEII. GARDEN COURT

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

627.

o- AND ā-STEMS

bonus, good

SINGULAR

Stem	bono-	bonā-	bono-
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

628.

ro- AND rā-STEMS

miser, miserable

piger, lazy

SINGULAR

SINGULAR

Stem	miserō-	miserā-	miserō-	pigro-	pigrā-	pigro-
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miserī	pigrī	pigræ	pigrī
<i>Dat.</i>	miserō	miseræ	miserō	pigrō	pigræ	pigrō
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
<i>Voc.</i>	miser	miserā	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
<i>Abl.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

PLURAL

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	miserī	miseræ	misera	pigrī	pigræ	pigra
<i>Gen.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	miserōs	miserās	misera	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
<i>Voc.</i>	miserī	miseræ	misera	pigrī	pigræ	pigra
<i>Abl.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT-STEM ADJECTIVES

629. Comparative Adjective

certior, surer

Adjective of One Ending

vetus, old

Stem	certiōr-		veter-	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
<i>Gen.</i>	certiōris	certiōris	veteris	veteris
<i>Dat.</i>	certiōrī	certiōrī	veterī	veterī
<i>Acc.</i>	certiōrem	certius	veterem	vetus
<i>Voc.</i>	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
<i>Abl.</i>	certiōre	certiōre	vetere	vetere
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	certiōrum	certiōrum	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Voc.</i>	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus

a. All Comparative Adjectives are declined like **certior**.

b. There are very few common Consonant-Stem Adjectives of one ending.



ARCHES OF CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT NEAR ROME
Partly choked with earth. Water channel visible in middle

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

I-STEM ADJECTIVES

630.	Of Three Endings ācer, <i>sharp</i>			Of Two Endings fortis, <i>brave</i>	
Stem	ācri-			forti-	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	forte
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus

a. I-Stem Adjectives have the -ī (ī) in the Abl. Sing., as well as in the regular places in the Plural.

631. Of One Ending: duplex, *double*

Stem duplici-

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	duplex	duplex
<i>Gen.</i>	duplicis	duplicis
<i>Dat.</i>	duplicī	duplicī
<i>Acc.</i>	duplicem	duplex
<i>Voc.</i>	duplex	duplex
<i>Abl.</i>	duplicī	duplicī
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	duplicēs	duplicia
<i>Gen.</i>	duplicium	duplicium
<i>Dat.</i>	duplicibus	duplicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duplicīs (-ēs)	duplicia
<i>Voc.</i>	duplicēs	duplicia
<i>Abl.</i>	duplicibus	duplicibus

THIRD DECLENSION (Finished)

632. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

	amāns, loving		monēns, warning	
Stems	amant- in Sing. amanti- in Pl.		monent- in Sing. monenti- in Pl.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
Gen.	amantis	amantiſ	monentis	monentis
Dat.	amantī	amantī	monentī	monentī
Acc.	amantem	amāns	monentem	monēns
Voc.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
Abl.	amante or -ī	amante or -ī	monente or -ī	monente or -ī
Pl. Nom.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
Gen.	amantium	amantium	monentium	monentium
Dat.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus
Acc.	amantiſ (-ēs)	amantia	monentiſ (-ēs)	monentia
Voc.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
Abl.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus

a. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (Abl. Sing. -e); but when used as *Adjectives*, they are *i*-Stems (Abl. Sing. -i).

633. IRREGULAR: plūs, more, and complūrēs, a good many

M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> _____	plūs		
<i>Gen.</i> _____	plūris		
<i>Dat.</i> _____	_____		
<i>Acc.</i> _____	plūs		
<i>Voc.</i> _____	_____		
<i>Abl.</i> _____	plūre		
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i> plūrēs	plūra	complūrēs	complūria or -a
<i>Gen.</i> plūrium	plūrium	complūrium	complūrium
<i>Dat.</i> plūribus	plūribus	complūribus	complūribus
<i>Acc.</i> plūris (-ēs)	plūra	complūrīs (-ēs)	complūria or -a
<i>Voc.</i> _____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i> plūribus	plūribus	complūribus	complūribus

COMPARISON

634. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
certus	certior	certissimus
diligēns	diligentior	diligentissimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
idōneus	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus

635. IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, <i>smallest</i>

636. For a few Adjectives, the Positive is lacking or rare, or appears only in *Adverbs* or *Prepositions*. Thus:

citrā, <i>on this side</i>	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>
in, intrā, <i>within</i>	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>innermost</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest</i>
prae, prō, <i>before</i>	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
exterus, <i>outside</i> (and ex)	exterior, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus } { extimus } <i>outermost</i>
inferus, <i>below</i>	īnferior, <i>lower</i>	{ īnfimus } { īmus } <i>lowest</i>
superus, <i>above</i> (and super)	superior, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus } { summus } <i>highest</i>
posterus, <i>following</i> (and post)	posterior, <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus } <i>last</i> { postumus } <i>late-born</i>

637. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

tardē, <i>slowly</i>	tardius, <i>more slowly</i>	tardissimē, <i>most slowly</i>
diligenter, <i>diligently</i>	diligentius, <i>more diligently</i>	diligentissimē, <i>most diligently</i>
ācriter, <i>fiercely</i>	ācrius, <i>more fiercely</i>	ācerrimē, <i>most fiercely</i>
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius, <i>more easily</i>	facillimē, <i>most easily</i>

a. Magis and maximē are often used, as with Adjectives.

638. IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male, <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	prius, <i>before</i>	primum, <i>first</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē, <i>nearest, next</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i>

NUMERALS

639.

CARDINALS

ORDINALS

(Telling *how many*)(Telling *which in order*)

CARDINALS

ORDINALS

1	ūnus, <i>one</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
2	duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (or alter), <i>second</i>
3	trēs, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4	quattuor, <i>four</i> , etc.	quārtus, <i>fourth</i> , etc.
5	quīnque	quīntus
6	sex	sextus
7	septem	septimus
8	octō	octāvus
9	noveñ	nōnus
10	decem	decimus
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
16 sēdecim	sexthus decimus
17 septendecim	septimus decimus
18 duodēvigintī	duodēvicēnsimus
19 ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēnsimus
20 vīgintī	vīcēnsimus
21 vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	vīcēnsimus prīmus or ūnus et vīcēnsimus
30 trīgintā	trīcēnsimus
40 quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus
50 quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus
60 sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus
70 septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus
80 octōgintā	octogēnsimus
90 nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus
100 centum	centēnsimus
101 centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus prīmus
120 centum (et) vīgintī, etc.	centēnsimus vīcēnsimus
121 centum vīgintī ūnus, etc.	cēntēnsimus vīcēnsimus prīmus
200 ducentī	ducentēnsimus
300 trecentī	trecentēnsimus
400 quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus
500 quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus
600 sescentī	sescentēnsimus
700 septingentī	septingentēnsimus
800 octingentī	octingentēnsimus
900 nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus
1,000 mille	mīllēnsimus
1,100 mille centum	mīllēnsimus centēnsimus
2,000 duo mīlia, etc.	bis (= twice) mīllēnsimus
10,000 decem mīlia, etc.	decīēns mīllēnsimus
100,000 centum mīlia, etc.	centīēns mīllēnsimus

640. DECLENSION OF duo, two (SIMILARLY ambō, both)

Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs or duo	duās	duo
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

THE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

641. The Pronominal Adjectives and the Pronouns are in the main of the First and Second Declensions, but with the peculiar Pronominal Endings, *-ius* and *-ī* (sometimes *-ius*, pronounced like English *-yoos*, and *-i*) in the Genitive and Dative Singular. The individual points of each must be separately acquired. They are arranged below in the order of variation from the type first given.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

642. Nine Adjectives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, *except in the Genitive and Dative Singular*, which have the peculiar *Pronominal Endings -ius* and *-ī* in all genders. But *alius* has Neuter *aliud*, and its Genitive is generally replaced by *alterius*, from *alter*. The nine words are:

<i>ūnus</i> , one, only	<i>alius</i> , other, another (of several)
<i>ullus</i> , any	<i>alter</i> , the other (of two), a second
<i>nūllus</i> , none, no	<i>uter</i> , which? (of two)
<i>sōlus</i> , sole, alone	<i>neuter</i> , neither (of two)
<i>tōtus</i> , total, whole	

a. Except *ūnus* and *sōlus* these lack the Vocative.

643. The Declension in the Singular is thus as follows:

	<i>tōtus</i> , whole			<i>alter</i> , the other		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterō</i>
	<i>alius</i> , another			<i>uter</i> , which? (of two)		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	(<i>alterius</i>)	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>)	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

a. The Plural is regular in all these words.

644.

ipse, self

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

a. Notice that ipse is declined precisely like the Pronominal Adjectives, except for the single form ipse itself.

645. *ille, that, he. SIMILARLY iste, this (that) of yours*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

a. Ille is like ipse, except for the d-Neuter (Nom.-Acc. Sing.).

646. *is, this, that, the, he, she, it*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	eī or iī (ī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)	eīs or iīs (īs)

647. *idem, the same*

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	īdem	eādem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	eīdem or īdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem or īsdem (iīsdem)

a. Notice that *īdem* is declined very nearly like *is* above, with *-dem* added.

b. In the Plural of *is*, the preferred forms are spelled with two i's, but pronounced with one. In the Plural of *īdem*, the preferred forms are both spelled and pronounced with one i.

648.

hic, this, he

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc
<i>Pl. Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Voc.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. Hic (for hi-ce), together with quī, quis, quīdam, and quisque (next two pages) has a spécial pronominal ending -ae, in the Nom. Sing. Fem., and the Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl.



THE ANIO AS IT DIVIDES ABOVE TIVOLI
Before its fall

649. *quī*, Rel. Pronoun, *who*,
and Interrog. Adjective, *what* ?

quis, Interrog. Pronoun, *who* ?
(as Substantive)

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>

(Same for both words) PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. Quicumque, whoever, is declined like *quī* with *-cumque* added.

650:

quīdam, a certain
Adjective and Substantive

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quoddam or quiddam</i> (Substantive)
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quoddam or quiddam</i> (Substantive)
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>

PLURAL (same for Adjective and Substantive)

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

a. Notice that quīdam is declined like quī above with -dam added, but has also the Neuter Substantive form from quis.

COMPOUNDS OF quis

(Compounds of quis have quod- Adjective and quid- Substantive.)

651. quisquam, any at all (Substantive)

	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam
Voc.	—	—
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

652. quisque, each: As Adjective As Substantive

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quaeque	quodque	quisque	quidque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quemque	quidque
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōque	quōque

a. Similarly quispiam, any.

653. aliquis (aliqui), some, any. SIMILARLY quis, Indefinite

As Adjective As Substantive

	SINGULAR				
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	aliqui	aliqua	aliquod	aliquis	aliquid
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod	aliquem	aliquid
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō

PLURAL (same for Adjective and Substantive)

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Note that aliquis and the Indefinite quis are declined like Interrogative quis (649), but with the adjective ending -a in place of the pronominal aē.

270 Declension of **Ego, Tū, Suī.**—Conjugation of **Sum**

654. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

(*I, you*)

(*myself, yourself, himself, etc.*)

	First	Second	First	Second	Third
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū			
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	meī	tuī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
<i>Voc.</i>	—	tū	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	PLURAL		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs			
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrum, -trī	vestrum, -trī	nostrī	vestrī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vōs	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

a. The Pronouns of the *Third* Person are *is, ille, hic, iste.*

655. CONJUGATION OF **sum** (Irregular)

(Given first because entering into Conjugation of the Regular Verbs.)

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

<i>1st Sing.</i>	sum, <i>I am</i>	sim
<i>2d " "</i>	es, <i>thou art</i>	sīs
<i>3d " "</i>	est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>	sit
<i>1st Pl.</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>	sīmus
<i>2d " "</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>	ēsītis
<i>3d " "</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>	ēsint

Imperfect

<i>1st Sing.</i>	eram, <i>I was</i>	essem
<i>2d " "</i>	erās, <i>thou wast</i>	essēs
<i>3d " "</i>	erat, <i>he was</i>	esset
<i>1st Pl.</i>	erāmus, <i>we were</i>	essēmus
<i>2d " "</i>	erātis, <i>you were</i>	essētis
<i>3d " "</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>	essent

Future

1st Sing.	erō, <i>I shall be</i>
2d "	eris, <i>thou wilt be</i>
3d "	erit, <i>he will be</i>
1st Pl.	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
2d "	eritis, <i>you will be</i>
3d "	erunt, <i>they will be</i>

Perfect

1st Sing.	fuī, <i>I have been, was</i>	fu ^{er} im
2d "	fuisti, <i>thou hast been, wast</i>	fu ^{er} is
3d "	fuit, <i>he has been, was</i>	fu ^{er} it
1st Pl.	fuimus, <i>we have been, were</i>	fu ^{er} imus
2d "	fuistis, <i>you have been, were</i>	fu ^{er} itis
3d "	fu ^{er} unt, <i>-ēre, they have been, were</i>	fu ^{er} int

Past Perfect

1st Sing.	fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuissem
2d "	fuerās, <i>thou hadst been</i>	fuisse
3d "	fuerat, <i>he had been</i>	fuisse
1st Pl.	fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>	fuissemus
2d "	fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>	fuissetis
3d "	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>	fuisent

Future Perfect

1st Sing.	fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>
2d "	fueris, <i>thou wilt have been</i>
3d "	fuerit, <i>he will have been</i>
1st Pl.	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>
2d "	fueritis, <i>you will have been</i>
3d "	fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d	es, <i>be thou</i>	este, <i>be ye</i>
Fut. 2d	estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>	estōte, <i>you shall be</i>
3d	estō, <i>he shall be</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse, <i>to be</i>
Perf.	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>
Fut.	futūrus esse, <i>or fore, to be about to be</i>

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

656.

FIRST CONJUGATION

amō, love

Principal Parts: amō amāre amāvī amātum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amō	amem	amor	amer
amās	amēs	amāris, -re	amēris, -re
amat	amet	amātur	amētur
amāmus	amēmus	amāmur	amēmur
amātis	amētis	amāminī	amēminī
amant	ament	amantur	amentur

Imperfect

amābam	amārem	amābar	amārer
amābās	amārēs	amābāris, -re	amārēris, -re
amābat	amāret	amābātur	amārētur
amābāmus	amārēmus	amābāmur	amārēmur
amābātis	amārētis	amābāminī	amārēminī
amābant	amārent	amābantur	amārentur

Future

amābō	amābor
amābis	amāberis, -re
amābit	amābitur
amābimus	amābimur
amābitis	amābiminī
amābunt	amābuntur

Perfect

amāvī	amāverim	amātus sum	amātus sim
amāvistī	amāverīs	amātus es	amātus sīs
amāvit	amāverit	amātus est	amātus sit
amāvimus	amāverīmus	amātī sumus	amātī sīmus
amāvistis	amāverītis	amātī estis	amātī sītis
amāvērunt, -ēre	amāverint	amātī sunt	amātī sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

amāveram

amāvissem

amātus eram

amātus essem

amāverās

amāvissēs

amātus erās

amātus essēs

amāverat

amāvisset

amātus erat

amātus esset

amāverāmus

amāvissēmus

amātī erāmus

amātī essēmus

amāverātis

amāvissētis

amātī erātis

amātī essētis

amāverant

amāvissent

amātī erant

amātī essent

Future Perfect

amāverō

amātus erō

amāveris

amātus eris

amāverit

amātus erit

amāverimus

amātī erimus

amāveritis

amātī eritis

amāverint

amātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres. amā

amāte

amāre

amāminī

Fut. amātō

amātōte

amātor

amantor

amātō

amantō

amātor

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre

amārī

Perf. amāvisse

amātus esse

Fut. amātūrus esse

amātum irī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. amāns*Perf.* amātus*Fut.* amātūrus*Fut.* amandus

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. amandī*Gen.* amandī, -ae, -ī*Dat.* amandō*Dat.* amandō, -ae, -ō*Acc.* amandum*Acc.* amandum, -am, -um*Abl.* amandō*Abl.* amandō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

amātum, -ū

657.

SECOND CONJUGATION

moneō, warn

Principal Parts: moneō monēre monuī monitum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneō	moneam	moneor	monear
monēs	moneās	monēris, -re	moneāris, -re
monet	moneat	monētur	moneātur
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur
monētis	moneātis	monēminī	moneāminī
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur

Imperfect

monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer
monēbās	monērēs	monēbāris, -re	monērēris, -re
monēbat	monēret	monēbātur	monērētur
monēbāmus	monērēmus	monēbāmur	monērēmur
monēbātis	monērētis	monēbāminī	monērēminī
monēbant	monērent	monēbantur	monērentur

Future

monēbō	monēbor
monēbis	monēberis, -re
monēbit	monēbitur
monēbimus	monēbimur
monēbitis	monēbiminī
monēbunt	monēbuntur

Perfect

monuī	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuistī	monueris	monitus es	monitus sis
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerimus	monitī sumus	monitī sīmus
monuistis	monueritis	monitī estis	monitī sītis
monuērunt, -ēre	monuerint	monitī sunt	monitī sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

monueram
monuerās
monuerat

monuissē
monuissēs
monuisset

monitus eram
monitus erās
monitus erat

monitus essem
monitus essēs
monitus esset

monuerāmus
monuerātis
monuerant

monuissēmus
monuissētis
monuissent

monitī erāmus
monitī erātis
monitī erant

monitī essēmus
monitī essētis
monitī essent

Future Perfect

monuerō
monueris
monuerit

monitus erō
monitus eris
monitus erit

monuerimus
monueritis
monuerint

monitī erimus
monitī eritis
monitī erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres. monē

monēte

monēre

monēmini

Fut. monētō

monētōte

monētor

monētō

monentō

monētor

monentor

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

monērī

Perf. monuisse

monitus esse

Fut. monitūrus esse

monitum irī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns

Perf. monitus

Fut. monitūrus

Fut. monendus

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. monendī

Gen. monendī, -ae, -ī

Dat. monendō

Dat. monendō, -ae, -ō

Acc. monendum

Acc. monendum, -am, -um

Abl. monendō

Abl. monendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

monitum, -ū

658.

THIRD CONJUGATION

tegō, cover

Principal Parts: tegō tegere tēxī tēctum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

tegō	tegā	tegor	tegar
tegis	tegās	tegeris, -re	tegaris, -re
tegit	tegat	tegitur	tegatur
tegitur	tegāmur	tegitur	tegāmur
tegitis	tegātis	tegitur	tegāmini
tegitur	tegant	tegitur	tegantur

Imperfect

tegēbam	tegerem	tegēbar	tegerer
tegēbās	tegerēs	tegēbāris, -re	tegerēris, -re
tegēbat	tegeret	tegēbātur	tegerētur
tegēbāmur	tegerēmur	tegēbāmur	tegerēmur
tegēbātis	tegerētis	tegēbāmini	tegerēmini
tegēbant	tegerent	tegēbantur	tegerentur

Future

tegam	tegar
tegēs	tegeris, -re
teget	tegetur
tegēmur	tegemur
tegētis	tegemini
tegent	tegentur

Perfect

tēxī	tēxerim	tēctus sum	tēctus sim
tēxistī	tēxeris	tēctus es	tēctus sis
tēxit	tēxerit	tēctus est	tēctus sit
tēximus	tēxerimus	tēcti sumus	tēcti simus
tēxistis	tēxeritis	tēcti estis	tēcti sitis
tēxerunt, -ēre	tēxerint	tēcti sunt	tēcti sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

tēxeram

tēxissem

tēctus eram

tēctus essem

tēxerās

tēxissēs

tēctus erās

tēctus essēs

tēxerat

tēxisset

tēctus erat

tēctus esset

tēxerāmus

tēxissēmus

tēctī erāmus

tēctī essēmus

tēxerātis

tēxissētis

tēctī erātis

tēctī essētis

tēxerant

tēxissent

tēctī erant

tēctī essent

Future Perfect

tēxerō

tēctus erō

tēxeris

tēctus eris

tēxerit

tēctus erit

tēxerimus

tēctī erimus

tēxeritis

tēctī eritis

tēxerint

tēctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres.

tege

tegite

tegere

teginī

Fut.

tegitō

tegitōte

tegitōr

tegitōr

tegitō

tegitōtō

tegitōr

tegitōr

INFINITIVE

Pres. tegere

tegi

Perf. tēxisse

tēctūrus esse

Fut. tēctūrus esse

tēctum iri

PARTICIPLE

Pres. tegēns*Perf.* tēctus*Fut.* tēctūrus*Fut.* tegendus

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. tegendī*Gen.* tegendī, -ae, -ī*Dat.* tegendō*Dat.* tegendō, -ae, -ō*Acc.* tegendum*Acc.* tegendum, -am, -um*Abl.* tegendō*Abl.* tegendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

tēctum, -ū

659.

THIRD CONJUGATION, IN -iō

capiō, take

Principal Parts : capiō capere cēpī captum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*capiō
capis
capitcapiam
capiās
capiatcapior
caperis, -re
capiturcapiar
capiāris, -re
capiātur-capimus
capitis
capiuntcapiāmus
capiātis
capiantcapimur
capiminī
capiunturcapiāmur
capiāminī
capiantur*Imperfect*capiēbam
capiēbās
capiēbatcaperem
caperēs
caperetcapiēbar
capiēbāris, -re
capiēbāturcaperer
caperēris, -re
caperēturcapiēbāmus
capiēbātis
capiēbantcaperēmus
caperētis
caperentcapiēbāmur
capiēbāminī
capiēbanturcaperēmur
caperēminī
caperentur*Future*capiam
capiēs
capietcapiar
capiēris, -re
capiēturcapiēmus
capiētis
capientcapiēmur
capiēminī
capientur*Perfect*cēpī
cēpistī
cēpitcēperim
cēperīs
cēperitcaptus sum
captus es
captus estcaptus sim
captus sis
captus sitcēpimus
cēpistis
cēpērunt, -ērecēperimus
cēperītis
cēperintcaptī sumus
captī estis
captī suntcaptī simus
captī sītis
captī sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

cēperam

cēpissem

captus eram

captus essem

cēperās

cēpissēs

captus erās

captus essēs

cēperat

cēpisset

captus erat

captus esset

cēperāmus

cēpissēmus

captī erāmus

captī essēmus

cēperātis

cēpissētis

captī erātis

captī essētis

cēperant

cēpissent

captī erant

captī essent

Future Perfect

cēperō

captus erō

cēperis

captus eris

cēperit

captus erit

cēperimus

captī erimus

cēperitis

captī eritis

cēperint

captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres. cape

capite

capere

capimini

Fut. capito

capitote

capitor

capito

capiuntō

capitor

capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere

capī

Perf. cēpisse

captus esse

Fut. captūrus esse

captum irī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns*Perf.* captus*Fut.* captūrus*Fut.* capiendus

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. capiendī*Gen.* capiendī, -ae, -ī*Dat.* capiendō*Dat.* capiendō, -ae, -ō*Acc.* capiendum*Acc.* capiendum, -am, -um*Abl.* capiendō*Abl.* capiendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

captum, -ū

660.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

*audiō, hear*Principal Parts: *audiō audīre audīvī auditum*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

<i>audiō</i>	<i>audiam</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audiar</i>
<i>audīs</i>	<i>audiās</i>	<i>audīris, -re</i>	<i>audiāris, -re</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiat</i>	<i>audītur</i>	<i>audiātur</i>
<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audiāmus</i>	<i>audīmur</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>audītis</i>	<i>audiātis</i>	<i>audīmini</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
<i>audiunt</i>	<i>audiant</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

Imperfect

<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audīrem</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audīrer</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audīrēs</i>	<i>audiēbāris, -re</i>	<i>audīrēris, -re</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audīret</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audīrētur</i>
<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audīrēmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>	<i>audīrēmur</i>
<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audīrētis</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>	<i>audīrēmini</i>
<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audīrent</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>	<i>audīrentur</i>

Future

<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiar</i>
<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiēris, -re</i>
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audiētur</i>
<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>
<i>audiētis</i>	<i>audiēmini</i>
<i>audient</i>	<i>audientur</i>

Perfect

<i>audīvī</i>	<i>audīverim</i>	<i>audītus sum</i>	<i>audītus sim</i>
<i>audīvisti</i>	<i>audīveris</i>	<i>audītus es</i>	<i>audītus sis</i>
<i>audīvit</i>	<i>audīverit</i>	<i>audītus est</i>	<i>audītus sit</i>
<i>audīvimus</i>	<i>audīverimus</i>	<i>audītī sumus</i>	<i>audītī simus</i>
<i>audīvistis</i>	<i>audīveritis</i>	<i>audītī estis</i>	<i>audītī sitis</i>
<i>audīverunt, -ēre</i>	<i>audīverint</i>	<i>audītī sunt</i>	<i>audītī sint</i>

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

audīveram

audīvissem

audītus eram

audītus essem

audīverās

audīvissēs

audītus erās

audītus essēs

audīverat

audīvisset

audītus erat

audītus esset

audīverāmus

audīvissēmus

audītī erāmus

audītī essēmus

audīverātis

audīvissētis

audītī erātis

audītī essētis

audīverant

audīvissent

audītī erant

audītī essent

Future Perfect

audīverō

audītus erō

audīveris

audītus eris

audīverit

audītus erit

audīverimus

audītī erimus

audīveritis

audītī eritis

audīverint

audītī erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres. audī

audīte

audīre

audīmini

Fut. audītō

audītōte

audītor

audītō

audiuntō

audītor

audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire

audīrī

Perf. audīvisse

audītus esse

Fut. audīturus esse

audītum irī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns

Perf. audītus

Fut. audīturus

Fut. audiendus

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen. audiendī

Gen. audiendī, -ae, -ī

Dat. audiendō

Dat. audiendō, -ae, -ō

Acc. audiendum

Acc. audiendum, -am, -um

Abl. audiendō

Abl. audiendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

audītum, -ū

661. SYNOPSIS (BIRD'S-EYE-VIEW)

for three Specimen Verbs

Principal Parts	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum, <i>love</i>
	tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum, <i>cover</i>
	audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum, <i>hear</i>

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amō	tegō	audiō
<i>Imperf.</i>	amābam	tegēbam	audiēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	amābō	tegā	audiam
<i>Perf.</i>	amāvī	tēxī	audīvī
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amāveram	tēxeram	audīveram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amāverō	tēxerō	audīverō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amem	tegā	audiam
<i>Imperf.</i>	amārem	tegerem	audīrem
<i>Perf.</i>	amāverim	tēxerim	audīverim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amāvissem	tēxissem	audīvissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amā	tege	audī
<i>Fut.</i>	amātō	tegitō	audītō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amāre	tegere	audire
<i>Perf.</i>	amāvisse	tēxisse	audīvisse
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus esse	tēctūrus esse	audītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	amāns	tegēns	audiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus	tēctūrus	audītūrus

GERUND

amandī, etc.	tegendī, etc.	audiendī, etc.
--------------	---------------	----------------

SUPINE

amātum, -ū	tēctum, -ū	audītum, -ū
------------	------------	-------------

SYNOPSIS

for three Specimen Verbs, Finished

Principal Parts	amor	amārī	amātus sum, <i>be loved</i>
	tegor	tegī	tēctus sum, <i>be covered</i>
	audior	audīrī	auditus sum, <i>be heard</i>

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amor	tegor	audior
<i>Imperf.</i>	amābar	tegēbar	audiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	amābor	tegar	audiar
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus sum	tēctus sum	auditus sum
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātus eram	tēctus eram	auditus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātus erō	tēctus erō	auditus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amer	tegar	audiar
<i>Imperf.</i>	amārer	tegerer	audīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus sim	tēctus sim	auditus sim
<i>Past. Perf.</i>	amātus essem	tēctus essem	auditus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amāre	tegere	audīre
<i>Fut.</i>	amātor	tegitor	audītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Præs.</i>	amārī	tegī	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus esse	tēctus esse	auditus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	amātum īrī	tēctum īrī	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	amātus	tēctus	auditus
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus	tegendus	audiendus

GERUNDIVE

amandī, -ae, -ī, etc.	tegendī, -ae, -ī, etc.	audiendī, -ae, -ī, etc.
--------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------

662. CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

Principal Parts:	{	Conj. I	mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, <i>wonder at</i>
		II	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>respect</i>
		III	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
		IV	partior, partīrī, partītus sum, <i>share</i>

INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	mīror	vereor	sequor	partior
	mīrāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partīmur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
<i>Past Perf.</i>	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrer	verear	sequar	partiar
<i>Imperf.</i>	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. Act.</i>	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND

mīrandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
---------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------

SUPINE

mīrātum, -ū	veritum, -ū	secūtum, -ū	partītum, -ū
-------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

(or Roundabout Future)

663. The Periphrastic Conjugation is made up of the Future Active or Future Passive Participle with the verb *sum*. Thus:

ACTIVE

amātūrus sum, I am about to love

INDICATIVE

Pres. amātūrus *sum, I am about to love*
Imperf. amātūrus *eram, I was about to love*
Fut. amātūrus *erō, I shall be about to*
love

Perf. amātūrus *fui*
Past Perf. amātūrus *fueram*
Fut. Perf. amātūrus *fuerō*

SUBJUNCTIVE

amātūrus *sim*
 amātūrus *essem*
 amātūrus *fuerim*
 amātūrus *fuissem*

INFINITIVE

Pres. amātūrus *esse*
Perf. amātūrus *fuisse*

PASSIVE

amandus sum, I (am to be loved) have to be loved

INDICATIVE

Pres. amandus *sum, I have to be loved*
Imperf. amandus *eram, I had to be loved*
Fut. amandus *erō, I shall have to be*
loved

Perf. amandus *fui*
Past Perf. amandus *fueram*
Fut. Perf. amandus *fuerō*

SUBJUNCTIVE

amandus *sim*
 amandus *essem*
 amandus *fuerim*
 amandus *fuissem*

INFINITIVE

Pres. amandus *esse*
Perf. amandus *fuisse*

a. The Periphrastic Future is, by its nature, confined to uses in which it states, or assumes, something as about to be done (as in "the war which the boys are going to wage," *bellum quod pueri gestūrī sunt*, or "if the boys are going to wage war," *sī pueri bellum gestūrī sunt*). Thus it cannot be used to express ordinary Purpose, for it would mean, for example, not "in order that the boys may wage war," but "in order that they may *be about to wage war*."

664. CONJUGATION OF possum, *am able, can*

Principal Parts: possum posse potuī —

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.

possum

possim

potes

possis

potest

possit

possumus

possimus

potestis

possitis

possunt

possint

Imperf.

poteram, -ās, -at, etc.

possem, -ēs, -et, etc.

Fut.

poterō, -is, -it, etc.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.

potuī, -istī, -it, etc.

potuerim, -īs, -it, etc.

Past Perf.

potueram, -ās, -at, etc.

potuissem, -ēs, -et, etc.

Fut. Perf.

potuerō, -is, -it, etc.

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

Pres.

posse

potēns (which has be-

Perf.

potuisse

come an Adjective)



COINS OF THE EMPEROR HADRIAN
And Sabina, his wife

665.

CONJUGATION OF volō, nōlō, mālō

Principal Parts	volō	velle	voluī	——	will; want
	nōlō	nōlle	nōluī	——	be unwilling
	mālō	mālle	māluī	——	prefer

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim
	vīs	velīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
	vult	velit	nōn vult	nōlit
	volumus	velīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
	vultis	velītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem
<i>Fut.</i>	volam		nōlam	
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō		nōluerō	

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	mālō	mālim	<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī
	māvīs	mālīs		
	māvult	mālit	<i>Fut.</i>	nōlītō
	mālumus	mālīmus		
	māvultis	mālītis		
	mālunt	mālint		
<i>Imperf.</i>	mālēbam	māllem		
<i>Fut.</i>	mālam			
<i>Perf.</i>	māluī	māluerim		
<i>Past Perf.</i>	mālueram	māluissem		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	māluerō			

	INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns

666.

CONJUGATION OF *fiō*, *become*(= Passive of *faciō*)(The Perfect System and the Future Passive Participle are formed regularly from *faciō*.)Principal Parts: *fiō* *ferī* *factus sum*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō</i>	——	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
	<i>fis</i>	——	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fīunt</i>	<i>fīat</i>	<i>fīant</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam</i>			
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>factus erō</i>			

	IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>fite</i>	<i>Pres. ferī</i>		<i>Perf. factus</i>
			<i>Perf. factus esse</i>		<i>Fut. faciendus</i>
			<i>Fut. factum irī</i>		

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
<i>faciendī</i>	<i>faciendī, -ae, -ī</i>
<i>faciendō</i>	<i>faciendō, -ae, -ō</i>
<i>faciendum</i>	<i>faciendum, -am, -um</i>
<i>faciendō</i>	<i>faciendō, -ā, -ō</i>

SUPINE

factum
factū

a. Prepositional compounds of *faciō* usually have the regular Passive. Thus the Principal Parts of *cōnficiō* are:

Active: *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.*

Passive: *cōnficior, cōnfici, cōnfectus sum.*

¹The *i* is long except in *fit* and before short *e* (thus *ferī, fierem*).

667.

CONJUGATION OF *eō*, *go*

(Note the contracted forms.)

Principal Parts: <i>eō</i> <i>īre</i> <i>īī</i> (or <i>īvī</i>) <i>itum</i>				
INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>īmus</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
	<i>īs</i>	<i>ītis</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
	<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ībam</i>		<i>īrem</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ībō</i>			
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>īī</i> (or <i>īvī</i>)	<i>iimus</i>	<i>īerim</i>	
	<i>īstī</i> (or <i>iistī</i>)	<i>īstis</i> (or <i>iistis</i>)		
	<i>iit</i> (or <i>īt</i>)	<i>iērunt</i> (or <i>iēre</i>)		
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>ieram</i>		<i>īsem</i>	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>ierō</i>			
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ī</i> <i>īte</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>īre</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>iēns, iēns, Gen. euntis</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ītō</i> <i>ītōte</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>īsse</i> (or <i>iisse</i>)	<i>Fut.</i> <i>itūrus</i>
	<i>itō</i> <i>euntō</i>			
		<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus esse</i>	<i>Fut. Pass. eundum</i> (est, <i>Impersonal</i>)
		GERUND		
		<i>eundī</i>		
		<i>eundō</i>		
		<i>eundum</i>		
		<i>eundō</i>		



REMAINS OF ROMAN ROAD IN NORTHERN SYRIA
From Butler's "Architecture and Other Arts," by permission

668.

CONJUGATION OF ferō, bear

Principal Parts: ferō ferre tulī lātum

	Active		Passive	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	feram ferās ferat ferāmus ferātis ferant	feror ferris fertur ferimur feriminī feruntur	ferar ferāris or -o ferātur ferāmur ferāminī ferantur
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	tuleram	tulisses	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer	ferre	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō fertō	fertōte feruntō	fertor fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus (esse)
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus (esse)	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus

GERUND

ferendī
ferendō
ferendum
ferendō

GERUNDIVE

ferendī, -ae, -ī
ferendō, -ae, -ō
ferendum, -am, -um
ferendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

lātum, -ū

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The references are to sections. Figures in brackets refer to the Summary of Forms.

a or **ab**, Prep. with Abl., *from, away from; by* (of Agent of Passive Voice). *Ā fronte*, etc., *on the front*, etc.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, *throw away, throw down, throw*.

absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** (also **abfuī**, **abfutūrus**), irr., *be away, be absent, be distant* [655].

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *approach*.

accidō, **accidere**, **accidī**, —, 3, *be fall, happen*.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *take, receive, accept*.

accurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, —, 3, *run up*.

acer, **ācris**, **ācre**, *sharp, fierce*, 293 [630]. Compar. **ācrior**, Superl. **ācerrimus**, 511, 2 [634].

aciēs, -ēī, F. 5, *sharp edge, line of battle*.

ācriter, Adv., *keenly, fiercely*. Compar. **ācrius**, Superl. **ācerimē**, 538 [637].

ad, Prep. with Acc., *at, (near) by*. With idea of motion, aim, purpose, etc., *to, toward, for*. *Ad hunc modum*, after this fashion.

adeō, **adīre**, **adiī** (or **adīvī**), **adiutum**, irr., *approach*, 503 [667].

adferō, **adferre**, **attulī**, **allatum**, irr., *bring (to)*, 522 [668].

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3, *step, go, go against, attack*.

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, 2, *adhere, stick*.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *encourage; exhort, urge*.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūñctum, 3, *join (to)*.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1, *assist, aid*.

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *administer, manage, do*.

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *approach*. Word of Relation, taking Dat.

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *accustom (to)*.

adsum, **adesse**, **adfui**, **adfuturus**, irr., *be by, be present, be at hand, be here* [655].

adventus, -ūs, M. 4, *arrival*.

adversus, -a, -um, *adverse, opposed*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fly (to), rush (to)*.

aeger, **aegra**, **aegrum**, *ill*.

aegrē, Adv., *in an ill manner, ill, with difficulty or annoyance*.

aequē, Adv., *equally*.

aequus, -a, -um, *equal; fair; favorable*.

- aestās, -ātis, F. 3, *summer*.
ager, agrī, M. 2, *field*, 111 [616].
agmen, agminis, N. 3, *army* (on a march); *line of march*.
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3, *drive, lead; carry on, deal with, discuss; act, do; pass, spend*.
agricola, -ae, M. 1, *farmer*.
alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager*.
aliquantus, -a, -um, *some*. Neut. as Substantive = *somewhat*.
aliquis, aliquid (Adj. forms aliquī, aliqua, aliquod), Indefinite, *some, any one, any*, 207 [653].
aliquot, indecl. Adj., *some, several*.
aliter, Adv., *otherwise, differently*.
alius, -a, -ud, *other, another* (of several); *different, else*. Alius ... alius, *one ... another*; Pl. some ... others, 130 [643].
alter, -tera, -terum, *other, another* (of two), *a second*. Alter ... alter, *the one, the other*; Pl., *one party ... the other party*, 130 [643].
altior, *higher*. Compar. of altus, *high*.
altus, -a, -um, *high, lofty*.
amāns, *loving*, Pres. Act. Partic. of amō. Declension, 300 [632].
Ambiorix, -igis, M. 3, *a name*.
ambō, -ae, -ō, *both*, 328 [640].
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *walk*.
amīca, -ae, F. 1 (woman or girl), *friend*.
amīcus, -ī, M. 2 (man or boy), *friend*.
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *love, like* [656].
amplius, *more*. As Acc. of Degree, *more, further*; equivalent to an Adv. Compar. Neut. of amplus, *ample*.
amplus, -a, -um, *ample, large*.
an, Conj., or (in second part of a question).
animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3, *notice*.
animal, -ālis, -ium, N. 3, *animal*, 270 [621].
animus, -ī, M. 2, *mind, spirit; feeling*.
annus, -ī, M. 2, *year*.
ante, Prep. with Acc., *before, in front of*. Also Adv., *before, in advance*.
anteā, Adv., *before this, before that, formerly*.
apertus, -a, -um, *open*.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *address; call, name*.
aptus, -a, -um, *apt, fitted, fit*.
apud, Prep. with Acc., *at, among; at-the-house of*.
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *think, suppose*.
ardeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, 2, *burn, be in a blaze*.
arma, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *arms, weapons*.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *arm*.
Arpīneius, -ī, M. 2, *a name*.
ars, artis, -ium, F. 3, *art, skill*.
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum, 3, *ascend, mount*.
at, Conj., *but, yet*. Of contrast or objection. Not so strong as sed.
athlēta, -ae, M. 1, *athlete*.

atque or ac, Conj., *and*. Of close connection, like *-que*.

auctōritās, -ātis, F. 3, *authority*.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, *dare*.

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, 4, *hear* [660].

Aurunculeius, -i, M. 2, a name.

aut, Conj., or. Aut . . . aut . . . ,
either . . . or . . .

autem, Conj., postpositive, *on the other hand, but, however; now*.

Of contrast, but not so strong as *at*.

auxilium, -i, N. 2, *aid, help*.

Baculus, -i, M. 2, a name.

barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*.

beātus, -a, -um, *happy, blessed, fortunate*.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

bellum, -i, N. 2, *war*.

bene, Adv., *well*.

beneficium, -i, N. 2, *well-doing, kindness*.

benignus, -a, -um, *good-natured, kind*. Word of Quality and Attitude, taking Dat.

bīduum, -i, N. 2, *two-days*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*, 117 [627].

bracchium, -i, N. 2, (fore-) *arm*.

brevis, -e, *short, small*.

C., for Gāius.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāstūrus, 3, *fall; befall, happen*.

caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *slaughter*, 271 [622].

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, 3, *cut, kill*.

Caesar, Caesaris, M. 3, a name.

caespes, -itis, M. 3, *sod, turf*.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3, *take, take up*. Cōnsilium capiō, *form a plan* [659].

Capreae, -ārum, F. 1, *Capri*.

captīvus, -a, -um, *captive*.

caput, capitis, N. 3, *head*, 256 [617].

casa, -ae, F. 1, *cottage, cabin*.

castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, *chance, accident; case*, 369 [624].

Catuvolcus, -i, M. 2, a name.

causa, -ae, F. 1, *cause, reason*.

Causā with Gen. of Gerundive or Gerund, *for the purpose of*.

cautus, -a, -um, *cautious*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3, *yield; give way*. Word of Attitude, taking Dative.

celeritās, -ātis, F. 3, *swiftness, speed*.

celeriter, Adv., *swiftly, quickly*.

cēna, -ae, F. 1, *dinner*.

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *dine*.

centum, indecl. Adj., *a hundred*.

centuriō, -ōnis, M. 3, *centurion* (commander of a company).

certāmen, -inis, N. 3, *contest*.

certē, Adv., *certainly, surely; at any rate, at least*.

certior, -ius, *surer, trustier*.

Compar. of certus, *sure*. Certiōrem (or -ēs) faciō, *I inform*. Declension, 286 [629].

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *contend, strive*.

certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure, assured, fixed; trusty*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

circiter, Prep. with Acc., and Adv., *about*.

- circum, Prep. with Acc., *around, around in.* Also Adv., *around.*
- circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 1, *throw around, surround.*
- circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *send around.*
- circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *surround.*
- citerior, -ius, *on this side, hither.*
Compar.; cf. citrā, *on this side*, 531 [636].
- citrā, Prep. with Acc., *on this side.*
- cīvitās, -ātis, -ium (sometimes -um), F. 3, *state.*
- clāmītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *keep crying out.*
- clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout.*
- clāmor, -ōris, M. 3, *shout.*
- coāctus, -ūs, M. 4, *compulsion.*
- coepī, coepisse, coeptum ēst, defective, *began, started.*
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think, plan.*
- cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3, *learn thoroughly, find out; recognize.*
- cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, coāctum, 3, *gather; compel.*
- cohors, cohortis, -ium, F. 3, *cohort* (tenth part of a legion).
- collis, -is, M. 3, *hill.*
- colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3, *cultivate.*
- commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *state, mention.*
- committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *join, commit.*
- commodē, Adv., *conveniently, properly.*
- commodum, -i, N. 2, *advantage.*
- commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *communicate.*
- commūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum, 4, *fortify.*
- commūnis, -e, *common.*
- commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *completely change.*
- compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, 2, *fill thoroughly, fill up, fill.*
- complūrēs, -plūria (or -a), -plūrium, *a good many*, 327 [633].
- comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, 3, *seize, catch.*
- cōnātus, -ūs, M. 4, *attempt, undertaking.*
- concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *yield, grant, concede.*
- conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout vigorously, shout out.*
- concurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3, *run together, rush.*
- concurso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *run to and fro.*
- condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *terms, condition(s).*
- condiscipulus, -i, M. 2, *fellow-pupil, schoolmate.*
- cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded.*
- cōnfestim, Adv., *immediately.*
- cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, 3, *finish, complete.*
- cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, 3, *trust (to), confide (in).* Word of Attitude, taking Dat. (also the Locative Abl.).
- cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *strengthen, establish.*
- cōnfiteor, -fītērī, -fessus sum, 2, *confess.*

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3,
hurl.

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3,
gather, collect.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1,
place, station.

conloquium, -ī, N. 2, *colloquy.*

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3,
confer.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *attempt,*
undertake.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum,
3, *follow vigorously, overtake;*
gain.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1,
save, preserve.

cōnsidō, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum,
3, *sit down; halt; camp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2, *counsel, plan;*
judgment, wisdom; council.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ———
3, *take position; halt.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
tum, 3, *see.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1,
get sight of.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -sti-
tūtum, 3 (stronger than statuō),
establish, place; determine.

cōnsuetūdō, -inis, F. 3, *custom.*

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum,
3, *consult (for), look out for.*

cōnsultō, Adv., *purposely, inten-*
tionally.

consūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī,
sūmptum, 3, *consume, spend.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī,
-temptum, 3, *despise.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *contempt.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-
tum, 3, *strain; strive, hasten.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
2, *hold in, hem in, keep.*

contrā, Prep. with Acc., *against.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-
tum, 3, *contract.*

contrōversia, -ae, F. 1, *contro-*
versy.

convallis, -is, F. 3, *valley, defile.*

conveniō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventum,
4, *come together, meet.*

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-
sum, 3, *turn about. Convertō*
signa, I wheel about.

cōpia, -ae, F. 1, *abundance, sup-*
ply. In Pl., resources; (military)
forces.

coqua, -ae, F. 1, *cook.*

Corfinium, -ī, N. 2, *Corfinium.*

Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2, *a name.*

cornū, -ūs, N. 4, *horn; wing (of*
an army), 369 [624].

corpus, -oris, N. 3, *body, 265 [620].*

cotidiē, Adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, M. 1, *a name.*

Crassus, -ī, M. 2, *a name.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum,
3, *believe. Word of Attitude,*
taking Dat.

culīna, -ae, F. 1, *kitchen.*

culpa, -ae, F. 1, *fault, blame.*

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *blame,*
censure.

cum, Prep. with Abl., *with.*

cum, Conj., *when, as; since;*
although.

cūnctus, -a, -um, *all (together),*
whole. In Pl., all, everybody.

cupidē, Adv., *eagerly.*

cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous.*

cupiō, cupere, cupivī (and cupiī),
cupitum, 3, *desire, wish, want.*

cūr, Adv., *why?*

cūra, -ae, F. 1, *care, anxiety.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3, *run.*

cursus, -ūs, M. 4, *running, run.*

dē, Prep. with Abl., *down from, from (of descent); concerning about.*

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2, *owe; ought.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *go away, withdraw.*

decem, indecl. Adj., *ten.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *settle the war, fight it out.*

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *catch, deceive.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 3, *give up.* Mē dēdō, *I give myself up (to), devote myself (to); surrender.*

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead off, lead away.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fatigue, tire out.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, 3, *defend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr., *carry off; report, 522 [668].*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *fail.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, *cast down.*

deinceps, Adv., *in succession, one after the other.*

deinde, Adv., *afterward, next; in the second place.*

dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *liberate.*

dēmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *send down, let down.* Mē dēmīttō, *descend, come down.*
dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dētemptum, 3, *take down.*

dēmum, Adv., *at last, finally.*

dēnique, Adv., *at last, finally; in short.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *desire.*

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, 3, *desist, stop.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *despair.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *despair (of).*

dēsūm, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, irr., *be wanting, fail [655].*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.* Dexter, -ae, as Noun, F. 1, *right hand.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3, *say, speak.*

dictum, -i, N. 2, *saying, word.*

diēs, diēi, M. and F. 5, *day.* Diēs dictus, *day appointed, 395 [625].*

difficilis, -e, *difficult.* Compar. difficilior, Superl. difficillimus, 511, 3 [634].

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.* Takes Abl.

dīiudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *decide (between).*

diligēns, -ēns, Gen. -entis, *diligent, careful.* Compar., diligentior, Superl., diligentissimus, 511, 1 [634].

diligenter, Adv., *diligently, carefully.* Compar., diligentius, Superl., diligentissimē, 538 [637].

diligentia, -ae, F. 1, *diligence, carefulness.*

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fight.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *move off, depart.*

disciplīna, -ae, F. 1, *discipline.*

discipulus, -ī, M. 2, *pupil, school-boy.*

discō, discere, didicī, —, 3, *learn.*

displiceō, -plicēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, 2, *be displeasing, displease.* Verb of Quality, taking Dat.

disputātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *discussion.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tributum, 3, *distribute.*

diū, Adv., *for a long time, long.*

dīversus, -a, -um, *different.*

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum, 3, *divide.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1, *give.*
(For the short a, see 163, ft. n. 1).

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2, *teach, inform, tell, show.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2, *suffer, ache, grieve.*

dolor, -ōris, M. 3, *pain.*

dolus, -ī, M. 2, *trick, stratagem.*

domina, -ae, F. 1, *mistress.*

dominus, -ī, M. 2, *master.*

domus, -ūs and -ī, F. 4 and 2, *house, home, 406 [626].*

dōnec, Conj., *while; until.*

dōnum, -ī, N. 2, *gift, present, 107 [615].*

ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3, *lead.*

dum, Conj., *while; until.*

duo, -ae, -o, *two, 328 [640].*

duplex, duplex, Gen. duplicis, *twofold, double; ambiguous, 293 [631].*

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, stern, harsh.*

dux, ducis, M. 3, *leader, guide.*

ē or ex, Prep. with Abl., *out of, from; of (in the sense of from).*

Ex cōnsuetūdine suā, *in accordance with his habit.* Ex utrāque parte, etc., *on either side, etc.*

Eburōnēs, -um, M. Pl. 2, *name of a Gallic nation.*

ēducō, ēducere, ēdūxī, ēductum, 3, *lead out.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, irr., *carry out or away, 522 [668].*

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, 3, *make out, accomplish, bring about.*

ego, meī, I, 214 [654].

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, *march out, go out.*

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, 3, *throw out.* Mē ēiciō, *I rush out.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3, *slip out, escape.*

ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, 3, *pick out, elect, choose.*

ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmisī, ēmisum, 3, *send out.*

enim, Conj., *for.* Like nam, but postpositive in its clause.

eō, ire, iī (or iivī), itum, irr., go, 503 [667].

eō, Adv., *thither, to that place.* epistula, -ae, F. 1, *epistle, letter.*

eques, equitis, M. 3, *horseman, cavalryman*. In Pl., = *cavalry*.

equestris, -e, *cavalry* (as Adj.).

equitatus, -ūs, M. 4, *cavalry*.

equus, equī, M. 2, *horse*.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rump-
tum, 3, *break out, sally out*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *sally*.

Esuviī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of
a Gallic nation.

et, Conj., *and*. Et . . . et . . .
both . . . and . . .

etiam, Conj. and Adv., *even, also*.

etsī, Conj., *even if; although*.

ex, see ē.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
3, *come out (of), leave, with-
draw*.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
3, *receive, pick up*.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *rouse,
rouse up, raise*.

exemplar, -āris, -ium, N. 3,
pattern, 270 [621].

exemplum, -ī, N. 2, *example, pre-
cedent*.

exeō, -īre, -iī (or -iī), -itum, irr.,
go out, march out, 503 [667].

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exer-
citum, 2, *exercise, practice,
drill*.

exercitus, -ūs, M. 4, *army*.

exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, slight*.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1,
estimate; think.

experior, experīrī, expertus sum,
4, *try*.

explōrātor, -ōris, M. 3, *scout*.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ex-
plore, reconnoiter; find out*.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stiturus,
3, *break out, arise*.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ex-
pect, await, wait for*.

extendō, extendere, extendī, ex-
tentum and extēsum, 3,
stretch out, extend.

exterior, -ius, *outer*. Compar. of
exterus, *outside*, 531 [636].

exterus, -a, -um, *outside*.

extrēmus or extimus, *outermost,
extreme, the edge of*. Superl.
of exterus, *outside*, 531 [636].

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, *strip
(of), deprive (of)*.

Fabius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

facile, Adv., *easily*, Compar. fa-
cilius, Superl. facillimē, 538
[637].

facilis, -e, *easy*. Compar. facilius,
Superl. facillimus, 511, 3 [634].

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, *make,
do, perform, act*. Factā potes-
tāte, *opportunity being given*.

facultās, -ātis, F. 3, *facility;
opportunity*.

fāma, -ae, F. 1, *fame, reputation*.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2,
be favorable to, favor. Word
of Attitude, taking Dat.

fēmina, -ae, F. 1, *woman*.

ferē, Adv., *generally; about,
almost*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr., *bear,
bring, carry*, 522 [668].

ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, wild*.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,
3, *heat red hot*.

fidēs, -eī, F. 5, *faith, loyalty;
promise, word*.

fidō, fidere, fisis sum, 3, trust.
filia, -ae, F. 1, daughter.
filius, fili, M. 2, son.
finis, -is, -ium, M. 3, limit, end, boundary; in Pl., boundaries, territory, 271 [622].
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring. Pl. as Subst., neighbors.
fiō, fieri, factus sum, irr., become; be done; happen. Used as Passive of facio, 502 [666].
firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, make firm, strengthen.
flamma, -ae, F. 1, flame, fire.
flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, 2, weep, cry.
flūmen, -inis, N. 3, river.
forsitan, Adv., perhaps. With Subjunctive of Possibility.
fortasse, Adv., perhaps.
forte, Adv., by chance, perhaps.
fortis, -e, strong, brave, 293 [630].
fortiter, Adv., bravely. Compar. fortius, Superl. fortissimē.
fortūna, -ae, F. 1, fortune.
frāter, frātris, M. 3, brother.
frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3, forehead, front.
frūmentum, -i, N. 2, grain.
fruor, fruī, fructus sum, 3, profit by, enjoy. Takes Abl.
fuga, -ae, F. 1, flight.
fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitrus, 3, flee, run away.
funda, -ae, F. 1, sling.
fungor, fungi, functus sum, 3, perform, discharge. Takes Abl.

galea, -ae, F. 1, helmet.
Gallia, -ae, F. 1, Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.
Gallus, a Gaul. Also a man's name, Gallus.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, rejoice, be glad of.
gēns, gentis, -ium, F. 3, race, 271 [622].
genus, generis, N. 3, race, kin; kind, class.
Germānus, -i, M. 2, a German.
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, 3, carry, bear; carry on, wage, manage; do.
gladius, -i, M. 2, sword.
glōria, -ae, F. 1, glory.
gradus, -ūs, M. 4, step.
grātia, -ae, F. 1, popularity, favor.
grātus, -a, -um, gratifying, pleasing, agreeable. Word of Quality, taking Dat.
gravis, -e, heavy, serious, grave.
gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, be annoyed.
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, have; hold; regard. Ōrātiōnem habeō, deliver an address. Prō certō habeō, feel sure.
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, inhabit, dwell, live.
heri, Adv., yesterday.
hīberna, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, a winter camp, winter-quarters.
hic, haec, hoc, this; he, she, it; the latter, 166 [648].
hic, Adv., in this place, here.
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1, spend the winter, winter.

Gāius, -i, M. 2, a name.
Galba, -ae, M. 1, a name.

hiems, hiemis, F. 3, *storm; winter*.
hodiē, Adv., *today*.

homō, hominis, 3, *man*. (The ordinary word for a man merely as a human being, whereas vir implies a compliment.)

honestus, -a, -um, *honorable*.

honor, -ōris, M. 3, *honor*.

hōra, -ae, F. 1, *hour*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *exhort, urge*.

hortus, -ī, M. 2, *garden*.

hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *enemy*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, 3, *throw*.

iaculum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin*.

iam, Adv., *by this time, already, now*.

ibi, Adv., *there*.

idem, eadem, idem, *the same*, 158 [647].

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit*.
Compar. magis idōneus, Superl. maximē idōneus, 511, 4 [634].

ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *fire* (Abl. Sing. -ī or -e), 278 [623].

ille, -a, -ud, *that; he, she, it; the former*, 145 [645].

imāgō, imāginis, F. 3, *image, likeness, representation*.

impedimentum, -ī, N. 2, *hindrance*. In Pl., *baggage*.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, 3, *impel*.

imperātor, -ōris, M. 3, *general* (in chief).

imperātum, -ī, N. 2, *command*.

imperium, -ī, N. 2, *command, sway; empire*.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *command, order*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

impetus, -ūs, M. 4, *attack*.

impiger, -gra, -grum, *energetic, industrious*.

impigrē, Adv., *energetically, vigorously*.

imus, see infimus.

in, Prep. with Abl. of rest, *in, on, upon*; with Acc. of motion (literal or figurative), *into, at, upon, against, for*.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 3, *set on fire*.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *begin*.

incolumis, -e, *unharméd, safe*.

incommodē, Adv., *disadvantageously, unfortunately*.

incommodum, -ī, N. 2, *trouble, misfortune*.

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*. Takes Abl.

Indūtiomārus, -ī, M. 2, *a name*.

inermis, -e, *unarmed*.

inferior, -ius, *lower*. Compar. of Inferus, *below*, 531 [636].

inferus, -a, -um, *below*.

infimus, -a, -um, or imus, -a, -um, *lowest*. Superl. of Inferior, *lower*, 531 [636].

ingenium, ingēnī, N. 2, *intellect, ability*.

inimīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

inimīcus, -ī, M. 2, *enemy*.

inīquus, -a, -um, *disadvantageous*.

initium, -ī, N. 2, *beginning*.

iniūria, -ae, F. 1, *injury, wrong*.
iniussū, Adv., *without orders*.

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *bind up*.

inopia, -ae, F. 1, *want, lack, scarcity*.

inquit, *says he, or said he*. Used in direct quotation, and always follows one or more words.

insequor, insequī, Insecūtus sum, 3, *follow up, pursue*.

insidia, -arum, F. Pl., 1, *ambush, ambuscade*.

insigne, -is, -ium, N. 3, *decoration, badge, device; signal*, 270 [621].

instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1, *press on*.

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctum, 3, *draw up*.

inter, Prep. with Acc., *between, among*. Inter sē, *with one another, together*.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *come between, intervene*.

interclūdō, -clūdere, clūsī, -clūsum, 3, *shut in, hem in, block*.

interea, Adv., *meanwhile*.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *kill*.

interim, Adv., *meanwhile*.

interior, *inner*, 531 [636].

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *intermit, stop*.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3, *put between*. With fidem, *pledge*.

interpres, -pretis, M. 3, *mediator, interpreter*.

intervallum, -ī, N. 2, *interval*.

intimus, -a, -um, *innermost*. Superlative of interior, *inner*, 531 [636].

intrā, Prep. with Acc., *within*.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *enter*.

intus, Adv., *within*.

inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *find, discover; invent*.

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *invite; attract*.

ipse, -a, -um, *self*, 139 [644].

irātus, -a, -um, *angry*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

is, ea, id, *this, that, the; he, she, it*, 153 [646].

iste, -a, -ud, *this (of yours) or that (of yours); he, she, it*, 145, a [645].

ita, Adv., *in such a way, thus, so*.

Ita ut (so as), *as*.

Italia, -ae, F. 1, *Italy*.

itaque, Adv., *and so, therefore, accordingly*.

iter, itineris, N. 3, *way, road, journey; march*. Magnum iter, *forced march*.

iterum, Adv., *again*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, 2, *bid, order*. Takes Infin.

iudex, iudicis, M. 3, *judge*.

iudicium, -ī, N. 2, *judgment, opinion*.

iudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *judge*.

Iulia, -ae, F. 1, *Julia*.

Iulius, -ī, M. 2, *Julius*.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctum, 3, *join*.

Iūnius, -ī, M. 2, *a name*.

iustus, -a, -um, *just*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, 1, *help*.

L., for Lūcius.

Labiēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

labor, labōris, M. 3, *labor, work, exertion.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, 3, *slip.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *labor, work.*

laccessō, laccessere, laccessīvī, laccessitum, 3, *worry.*

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *be delighted, rejoice.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyous, glad, happy.*

lapillus, -ī, M. 2, *pebble.*

latus, -eris, N. 3, *side; lung.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *praise.*

lēgātus, -ī, M. 2, *ambassador; lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *legion* (division of an army).

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3, *pick, choose; read.*

lēx, lēgis, F. 3, *law, rule.*

libenter, Adv., *willingly.*

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, 2, *impers., be permitted.*

littera, -ae, F. 1, *letter* (of the alphabet). Pl., *a letter.*

locus, -ī, M. 2, *place.* Pl. loca, locōrum, N. 2.

longē, Adv., *far.* Compar. longius, Superl. longissimē.

longitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *length.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, *talk, converse.*

Lūcānius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Lūcius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

lūdus, -ī, M. 2, *play, sport, game.*

lūx, lūcis, F. 3, *light.* Prīma lūx, *daybreak.*

M., for Mārcus.

magis, Adv., *more.* Compar. of magnopere and multum, *much,* 539 [638].

magister, -trī, M. 2, *master* (= teacher).

magnopere, Adv., *greatly.*

magnus, -a, -um, *great, large, big.*

maior, maius, *greater, bigger.* Compar. of magnus, *great,* 530 [635].

male, Adv., *badly.*

maleficium, -ī, N. 2, *wrong-doing.*

mālō, mālle, mālūī, —, irr., *want more, prefer,* 493 [665].

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

māne, Adv., *in the morning.*

manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, 2, *remain, continue.*

manus, -ūs, F. 4, *hand; band.*

Mārcus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

māter, mātris, F. 3, *mother.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *make ripe; hasten, make haste.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe.*

maximē, Adv., *in the largest degree, very greatly, exceedingly, very.* Superl. of magnopere and multum, *greatly, much,* 539 [638].

maximus, -a, -um, *greatest, largest, biggest; oldest.* Superl. of magnus, *great,* 530 [635].

meī, Reflexive, *of me,* 215 [654].

medius, -a, -um, *middle, or the middle-of.*

melior, melius, *better.* Compar. of bonus, *good,* 530 [635].

melius, Adv., *better.* Compar. of bene, *well,* 539 [638].

meminī, -isse, defective, *remember*.

memoria, -ae, F. 1, *memory*.

merīdiēs, -ēī, M. 5, *midday*.

metus, -ūs, M. 4, *fear*.

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*.

mīles, mīlitis, M. 3, *soldier*,
256 [617].

mīlītāris, -e, *military*. Ars mīlītāris, *art of war, tactics*.

mille, indecl. Adj., or Noun, *a thousand*. Pl. as Noun, mīlia, -ium, N. 3. Mille passuum = 5,000 feet, or a Roman mile.

minimē, Adv., *in the smallest degree, not at all; no*. Superl. of parum, *little*, 539 [638].

minimus, -a, -um, *smallest, or very small*. Superl. of parvus, *small*, 530 [635].

minor, minus, *smaller, less*. Compar. of parvus, *small*, 530 [635].

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, 3, *lessen, diminish*.

minus, Adv. *less*. Compar. of parum, *little*, 539 [638].

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *admire* [662].

miser, misera, miserum, *miserable, unhappy*, 117 [628].

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3, *send; throw (a weapon)*.

modo, Adv., *just, only; just now*.

modus, -ī, M. 2, *measure; method, way, manner, fashion; kind*. Eius modī (huius modī), *of this kind, of such a kind, such*.

monēns, *warning*, Pres. Act. Partic. of moneō. Declension, 300 [632].

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2, *admonish, warn, chide, instruct* [657].

mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3, *mountain*.

mora, -ae, F. 1, *delay*.

Morinī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, *name of a Gallic nation*.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *die*. Partic. mortuus = *dead*.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *delay*.

mōs, mōris, M. 3, *custom, way, habit, manner*, 265 [620].

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, *move*.

mox, Adv., *soon*.

multitudo, -inis, F. 3, *multitude, great number*, 264 [619].

multus, -a, -um, *much*. In Pl. *many*. Multum, Acc. of Degree, *much*; equivalent to Adv.

Mūnātius, -ī, M. 2, *a name*.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, 4, *construct, fortify*.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *fortification*.

mūrus, -ī, M. 2, *wall*.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *change, alter*.

nam, Conj., *for*.

nātūra, -ae, F. 1, *nature*.

-ne, interrogative enclitic, implying nothing about the answer.

nē, as Adv., *not*; as Conj., *that not, lest*. Nē . . . quidem, *not even*.

nec, see neque.

necesse, indecl. neut. Noun, *necessity*. In predicate, = *necessary*.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3, *neglect, pass by, disregard.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *say no, say . . . not, deny, refuse.*

negōtium, -ī, N. 2, *business, occupation.*

nēmō, Dat. nēminī, Acc. nēminem (Gen. and Abl. supplied by nullus and nullō), M. 3, *no one, nobody.*

neque or nec, Conj., *neither or nor.* Neque . . . neque . . . , *neither . . . nor . . .*

Nerviū, -ōrum, name of a Gallic nation. Also Sing. Nervius, a *Nervian.*

neu (also nēve), Conj., *and not, nor.* Corresponds to nē, as nec to nōn.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (of two), 129 [642].

nihil, indecl. Noun, *nothing.*

nimis, Adv., *too much, too.*

nisi, Conj., *unless.* Without a verb = *except.*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, 2, *be hurtful to, hurt, injure.*

Verb of Quality, taking Dat.

noctū, Adv., *at night, by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, irr., *not want, be unwilling*, 493 [665].

nōmen, nōminis, N. 3, *name*, 264 [619].

nōn, Adv., *not.*

nōndum, Adv., *not yet.*

nōnne, *not?* interrog. Adv., implying "yes."

nōnnullus, -a, -um, *some.* In Pl., *some, several, not a few.* Declined like nullus, 129 [642].

nōnnumquam, Adv., *sometimes.*

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, *get acquainted with, come to know, learn.*

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*

novus, -a, -um, *new.*

nox, noctis, -ium, F. 3, *night*, 271 [622].

nullus, -a, -um; *none, no*, 129 [642].

num, interrog. Adv., implying "no."

numerus, -ī, M. 3, *number.*

numquam, Adv., *never.*

nunc, Adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *announce.*

nūntius, -ī, M. 2, *messenger; message.*

nūper, Adv., *recently.*

ō, O, or Oh (often used in address).

ob, Prep. with Acc., *against, before; on account of.*

obeō, obīre, obiī (or -ivī), obitum, irr., *attend to*, 503 [667].

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *observe.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege.*

obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstāturus, 1, *oppose, prevent.*

obstruō, -struere, -struxī, -structum, 3, *block up, obstruct.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *occasion, opportunity.*

occidō, -cidere, -cisi, -cisum, 3, *kill.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *take possession of, occupy.*

occurrō, -currere, -curri and -curri, -cursum, 3, *meet.*

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*

oculus, -ī, M. 2, *eye.*

officium, -i, N. 2, *office, duty*.
omnīnō, Adv., *in all, at all*.
omnis, -e, *all, the whole; every, any*.

opīniō, -ōnis, F. 3, *opinion, expectation*.

oppidum, -i, N. 2, *town*.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege*.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *besiege*.

ops, opis, F. 3, *help*. In Pl., *resources, means*.

optimē, Adv., *in the best way, best*. Superl. of bene, *well*, 539 [638].

optimus, -a, -um, *best*. Superl. of bonus, *good*, 530 [635].

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wish, hope*.

opus, operis, N. 3, *work, task*.
With est and Abl.=*there is need of*.

orātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *speech, argument*.

orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *circle*.
In orbem cōsistō, *take position in a circle*.

ordō, ordinis, M. 3, *order, rank*.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4 (in several forms, 3), *rise, arise*.

orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *beg, entreat*.

os, ōris, N. 3, *mouth; face, countenance*.

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum, 3, *show*.

otium, ōtī, N. 2, *ease, repose; leisure; peace*.

paene, Adv., *almost*.

palus, -ūdis, F. 3, *swamp*.

pār, pār, Gen. paris, *equal, even*.
parātus, -a, -um (from parō), *prepared, = ready*.

parcō, parcere, peperci or parsi, parsurus, 3, *spare*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *prepare, get*.

pars, partis, -ium, F. 3, *part; party, side* (in this sense either Sing. or Pl.).

partim, Adv., *partly*.

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum, 4, *share* [662].

parum, Adv., *little, too little*.

parvus, -a, -um, *small, little*.

passus, -us, M. 4, *pace* (with both feet; =about five English feet).

pater, patris, M. 3, *father*, 257 [618].

patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *suffer, allow, permit*.

pauci, -ae, -a, *few, a few (only)*.

paulatim, Adv., *little by little, gradually*.

paulisper, Adv., *a little (while), for a little (while)*.

paulum, -i, N. 2, *a little*. Paulō, (by) *a little*, Abl. of Measure of Difference.

pecūnia, -ae, F. 1, *money*.

peior, peius, *worse*. Compar. of malus, *bad*, 530 [635].

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3, *drive (out or off)*.

per, Prep. with Acc., *through, during*.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *prolong*.

perfugio, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *take refuge, desert*.

periculōsus, -a, -um, *full of danger, dangerous.*

periculum, -i, N. 2, *peril, danger.*

peritus, -a, -um, *having experience (of), experienced (in).*

Takes Objective Genitive.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2, *move deeply.*

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3, *write fully, write out.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *persevere.*

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2, *persuade.* Takes Dat.; see suādēō.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2, *thoroughly frighten, terrify.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, *reach (to); pertain (to).*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *throw into confusion.*

pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *arrive.*

pēs, pedis, M. 3, *foot.*

pessimus, -a, -um, Superl. of malus, *bad*, 530 [635].

petō, petere, petīvī, petitum, 3, *aim at, attack; seek, ask.*

pietās, -ātis, F. 3, *loyalty, patriotism.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy*, 117 [628].

pīlum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin.* A heavy missile, about six feet long.

pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pīctum, 3, *paint.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, *be pleasing, please.* Word of Quality, taking Dat.

Plancus, -i, M. 2, a name.

plūrimum, *most, a great deal.*

Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Superl. of multum, *much*, 539 [638].

plūrimus, -a, -um, *most, a great deal.* Pl. *a great many.* Superl. of multus, *much*, 530 [635].

plūs, Gen. plūris, *more.* Declension, 327 [633]. Compar. of multus, *much*, 530 [635].

plūs, *more*, Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Compar. of multum, 539 [638].

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, *promise.*

Pompeī, -ōrum, M. 2, *Pompeii, a town.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3, *place.*

pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3, *bridge.*

populus, -i, M. 2, *people.*

porta, -ae, F. 1, *gate.*

possum, posse, potuī, —, irr., *be able, can.* With plūs, etc., *be more able, can do more, etc.*, 485 [664].

post, Prep. with Acc., *behind.* As Adv., *afterward, after, later.*

postea, Adv., *after that, afterward* (postea quam, = post quam).

posterior, -ius, *later.* Compar. of posterus, *following*, 531 [636].

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next.*

postquam, Conj., *after.*

postrēmus, -a, -um, or postumus, -a, -um, *latest.* Superl. of posterus, *following*, 531 [636].

potēns, -ēns, Gen. **potentis**, *having power, influential*.

potestās, -ātis, F. 3, *power, control, opportunity*.

potior, potiri, potitus sum, 4, *gain possession of, get, possess*. Takes Abl.

potius, Adv., *preferably, rather*.

prae, Prep. with Abl., *in front of*.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *precede*.

praeceptum, -ī, N. 2, *direction*.

praeciپیō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *order, direct*.

praecō, -ōnis, M. 3, *herald*.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *put in command (of)*.

praemium, -ī, N. 2, *reward*.

praesentia, -ae, F. 1, *presence*.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., *be in command over; command; be present* [655]. Participle **praesēns**, *being present*; as Adj., *present*.

praeter, Prep. with Acc., *beside, along, past; besides*.

prīdiē, Adv., *the day before*.

prīmō, Adv., *at first*.

prīmum, Adv., *first, in the first place*. Superl. of **prius**, *before*, 539 [638].

prīmus, -a, -um, Superl. of **prior**, *first*, 531 [636].

prior, prius, *former, first; in front, leading*. Compar.; cf. **prae** and **prō**, 531 [636].

prīstinus, -a, -um, *pristine, former*.

prius, Compar. Adv., *before, first, sooner*, 539 [638].

prius quam or **priusquam**, Conj., *sooner than, before*.

prō, Prep. with Abl., *in front of; hence as a representative of, in behalf of, for, in return for; in place of, as*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *approve*.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *proceed, advance*.

procul, Adv., *at a distance, from a distance*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī and **-cucurrī, -cursum**, 3, *run forward, charge*.

prōdeō, -īre, -īī (or **-īvī**), **-itum, irr.**, *come forth*, 503 [667].

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead forth; draw up, muster*.

proelium, -ī, N. 2, *battle*.

profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *departure*.

proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, 3, *set out, depart*.

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3, *go forward, advance*.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2, *prohibit, prevent, keep (from)*.

prōmptus, -a, -um, *ready* (in sense of ready to do a thing).

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *proclaim*.

prope, Prep. with Acc., *near*.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hurry, hasten*.

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*. Word of Relation, taking Dat.

propior, -ius, *nearer*. Compar.; cf. **prope**, *near*, 531 [636].

propius, *nearer*, Compar. of **prope**, *near*, 539 [638]. Adv., used also as Prep.

propter, Prep. with Acc., *along, beside; on account of*.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, 3, *follow after, pursue*.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2, *foresee, provide*.

proximē, Adv., *nearest, next*. Superl. of **prope**, *near*, 539 [638].

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, close by*. Superl. of **prope**, *near*, 531 [636].

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.

Pūblius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

puella, -ae, F. 1, *girl*.

puer, -ī, M. 2, *boy*, 111 [616].

pugna, -ae, F. 1, *fight*.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fight*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*.

pulvis, **pulveris**, M. 3, *dust*, 265 [620].

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think*.

Q., for **Quīntus**.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred*.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, 3, *inquire, seek, ask*.

quam, Adv., *how, as, than*. Thus:

quam multū? *how many?* **quam diū**, *as long as*; **tam quam**, *so (much) as, as (much) as*; **magis quam**, *more than*; **minus quam**, *less than*. With Superl., *as . . . as possible*.

quamquam, Conj., *although*.

quandō, Conj., *since, as*.

quantus, -a, -um, Interrog. and Rel., *how great, as great as*.

quārē, Rel. and Interrog. Adv., *for which reason, wherefore, why*.

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

quasi, Conj. and Adv., *as if, almost*.

quattuor, indecl. Adj., *four*.

-que, enclitic Conj., *and*. Represents closer connection than **et**.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, as Interrog. Adj., *what? which?* as Rel. Pron., *who, which, that*, 184 [649].

quī? Adv., *how?*

quia, Conj., *because*.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever*, 192 [649, a].

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, *a certain*, 193 [650].

quidem, Adv., *indeed, at any rate*. **Nē . . . quidem**, *not even*.

quīn, Conj., *by which not, that not*.

quīndecim, indecl. Adj., *fifteen*.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. Adj., *fifty*.

quīnque, indecl. Adj., *five*.

Quīntus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

quis, **quid** (Adj. forms **quī**, **quae**, **quod**), Interrogative, *who? what? which?* 184 [649].

quis, **quid** (Adj. forms **quī**, **qua**, **quod**), Indefinite, *any (one), some (one)*, 207, b [653, a]. Used chiefly with **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and interrogative and relative words.

quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam** (**quodpiam**), *any*, 200, c [652, a].

quisquam, **quicquam** (**quidquam**), *any at all*, 199 [651].

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) *each, every one*, 200 [652].

quō, *by which, in order that*.

Conj., used with Comparatives. quoad, Conj., *until*.

quod, Conj., *that; as to the fact that, as regards; because*.

quōminus, Conj., *by which the less, that not*.

quoniam, Conj., *since*.

quoque, Conj., *also, too*. Postpos.

quotiēns, Adv. and Conj., *how often, as often as*.

ratio, -ōnis, F. 3 (thinking; hence), *theory, science; manner*. Ratiōnem habeo, *I have regard for*.

recido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, 3, *fall back; be reduced to*.

recipio, recipere, recēpi, receptum, 3, *take back*. Mē recipio, *I return, I retreat*.

reduco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, 3, *lead back*.

refero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr., *bring back*. Pedem refero, *retreat, retire*, 522 [668].

refugio, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitūrus, 3, *run back, retreat*.

rēgina, -ae, F. 1, *queen*.

regio, -ōnis, F. 3, *region*.

rēgnum, -ī, N. 2, *kingship, kingdom*.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 3, *direct, guide, rule*.

relinquo, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum, 3, *leave*.

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, left*. As Subst. in Pl., *the rest*.

Rēmī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, 3, *send back*.

repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden*.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsūm, 3, *censure*.

rēs, rei, F. 5, *thing, matter*. Rēs militāris, *warfare*, 395 [625].

resistō, resistere, restiti, restitūrus, 3, *make a stand; resist, make resistance*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, 3, *look back, look around*.

respondeō, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsum, 2, *respond, answer*.

revertor, reverti (Infīn.), reverti (Perf.), reversum, 3, *return*.

Not deponent in Perf.

rēx, rēgis, M. 3, *king*, 256 [617].

Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2, *the Rhine*.

rīvus, -ī, M. 2, *stream*.

rōbur, rōboris, N. 3, *oak; strength*, 257 [618].

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ask, request*.

Rōma, -ae, F. 1, *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*.

Rōscius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, 3, *break*.

rūrsus, Adv., *back, again*.

rūs, rūris, N. 3, *country*.

rūsticus, -a, -um, *rustic, country*.

Sabīnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

saepe, Adv., *often*. Compar. saepius, Superl. saepissimē, 539 [638].

saltem, Adv., *at least*.

salus, -ntis, F. 3, *salvation, safety.*

satis, Adv., and indecl. Noun, *sufficiently, enough.* In predicate, = Adj., *enough, sufficient.*

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *do enough (for), satisfy.*

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

saxum, -ī, N. 2, *stone, rock.*

schola, -ae, F. 1, *school.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, *tear, tear down.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4, *know.*

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scrip-tum, 3, *write.*

scūtum, -ī, N. 2, *shield.*

sē and sēsē, Acc. and Abl., Sing. and Pl., of suī.

secundum, Prep. with Acc., *along.*
sed, Conj., *but.*

semper, Adv., *always.*

sententia, -ae, F. 1, *feeling, idea, view.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū, 4, *perceive (by the senses); feel, think.* Sentiō dē, *become aware of.*

septem, indecl. Adj., *seven.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3, *follow, follow up* [662].

sermō, -ōnis, M. 3, *talk, conversation*, 264 [619].

sērō, Adv., *late, too late.*

serva, -ae, F. 1 (woman or girl) *servant or slave*, 86 [614].

Servius, -ī, M. 2, *Servius*, a name.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *pre-serve, save, guard, keep.*

servus, -ī, M. 2, (man or boy) *ser-vant or slave*, 107 [615].

seu, see sive.

sex, indecl. Adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. Adj., *sixty.*

Sextius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Sextus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

sī, Conj., *if.*

sibi, Dat. Sing. and Pl. of suī.

sīc, Adv., *in this way, thus, so.*

signum, -ī, N. 2, *sign, signal; standard.* Convertō signa, *turn the standards about, wheel.*

silva, -ae, F. 1, *wood, forest.*

similis, -e, *like, similar.*

simul, Adv., *simultaneously, at the same time, together.* Simul atque, *as soon as.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *pretense.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *simulate, pretend.*

sine, Prep. with Abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *single, one at a time; one each.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left.* Sinis-tra, -ae, as Noun, F. 1, *left hand.*

sive or seu, Conj., *or if, or;*

sive . . . sive . . . (seu . . . seu . . .), *whether . . . or . . .*

socius, -ī, M. 2, *associate, ally.*

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2, *be accustomed.*

solum, Adv., *only.* Nōn solum . . . , sed etiam . . . , *not only . . . but also . . .*

solus, -a, -um, *sole, alone*, 129 [642].

sonus, -ī, M. 2, *sound.*

soror, sorōris, F. 3, *sister.*

spatium, -ī, N. 2, *space, distance; period (of time).*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *look at, witness, watch.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hope.*

spēs, -ei, F. 5, *hope.* In spem veniō, *I come to hope.*

splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid.*

statim, Adv., *immediately, at once.*

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, 3, *set up; decide.*

stō, stāre, steti, stāturus, 1, *stand.*

strāmentum, -ī, N. 2, *straw.*

strepitus, -ūs, M. 4, *noise.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, —, 2, *be zealous for, be eager for, be devoted to; study.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

studium, studi, N. 2, *zeal, interest; study.*

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *advise, urge.* Takes Dat., because it originally meant *make agreeable to.* Cf. suāvis, *agreeable.*

suāvis, -e, *sweet, agreeable.*

Word of Quality, taking Dat.

sub, Prep., *under.* With Acc. of Motion, and Abl. of Rest.

subitō, Adv., *suddenly.*

subsidiū, -ī, N. 2, *reserve, reinforcement, help.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *come to aid.*

suī, Reflexive, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves,* 215 [654].

sum, esse, fui, futurus, irr., *be* [655].

summus, -a, -um, *highest.* Superl. of superior, *higher,* 531 [636].

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, 3, *take up, take, assume.*

super, Prep. with Acc., *above.*

superior, -ius, *higher; superior; former.* Compar. of superus, *above,* 531 [636].

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *overcome, defeat, conquer.*

superus, -a, -um, *above.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *highest.* Superl. of superior, *higher,* 531 [636].

suspiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *suspicion.*

suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *suspect.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *sustain.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, *sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, Reflexive Possessive Adj., *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2, *tent.*

tālis, -e, *such.*

tam, Adv., *so.*

tamen, Conj. and Adv., *still, nevertheless, yet.*

tandem, Adv., *at last.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, 3, *touch.*

tantulus, -a, -um, *so small, so little.*

tantummodo, Adv., *merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*

tardē, Adv., *slowly, late.* Compar. tardius, Superl. tardissimē, 538 [637].

tardus, -a, -um, *slow, tardy; disinclined.*

- tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, 3, *cover; shield, hide, protect* [658].
- tēlum, -ī, N. 2, *missile*.
- temerārius, -a, -um, *rash, thoughtless*.
- temerē, Adv., *rashly, thoughtlessly*.
- tempestās, -ātis, F. 3, *weather; bad weather, storm*.
- tempus, temporis, N. 3, *time*.
- teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2, *hold*.
- tergum, -ī, N. 2, *back; rear* (of an army).
- terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2, *terrify, frighten*.
- terror, terrōris, M. 3, *terror, fright*.
- tertius, -a, -um, *third*.
- Tībur, Tīburis, N. 3, *Tivoli*.
- timeō, timēre, timuī, —, 2, *fear, be afraid*.
- timor, -ōris, M. 3, *fear*.
- Titūrius, -ī, M. 2, a name.
- Titus, -ī, M. 2, a name.
- torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, 2, *scorch, burn*.
- tōtus, -a, -um, *total, whole*, 130 [643].
- trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, 3, *hand over*.
- trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead across*.
- trāgula, -ae, F. 1, (Gallic) *javelin*.
- trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, 3, *draw, drag; drag out*.
- tranquillus, -a, -um, *tranquil*.
- trans, Prep. with Acc., *across, beyond*.
- trānseō, -īre, -īī (or -īvī), -itum, irr., *go across, cross over, go over*, 503 [667].
- trānsgridior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3, *cross*.
- Trebōnius, -ī, M. 2, a name.
- trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *be in a flutter, lose one's head*.
- trēs, tria, Gen. trium, *three*.
- Trēverī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation. Also Sing., Trēvir, *a Treviran*.
- tribūnus, -ī, M. 2, *tribune*.
- triplex, -ex, Gen. -icis, *triple*.
- triumphus, -ī, M. 2, *triumph*.
- tū, tuī, *thou, you* (in speaking to a single person), 214 [654].
- tuī, Reflexive, *of thyself, of yourself*, 215 [654].
- tum, Adv., *at that time, then*.
- tumultus, -ūs, M. 4, *disturbance*.
- tumulus, -ī, M. 2, *mound, low hill*.
- tunc, Adv., *then, a stronger tum*.
- turba, -ae, F. 1, *crowd, mob*.
- turris, -is, -ium, F. 3, *tower*, 278 [623].
- tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*.
- tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine, your, yours* (in speaking to a single person).
- ubi, Adv., *where; when*.
- ullus, -a, -um, *any*, 129 [642].
- ulterior, -ius, *on the other side, farther*. Compar., 531 [636].
- ultimus, -a, -um, *farthest*. Superl. of *ulterior, farther*, 531 [636].
- ultrā, Prep. with Acc., *beyond; on the other side of*.
- umquam, Adv., *ever*.

unā, Adv., *in unison, together.*

unde, Adv., *from what, whence; out of what.*

undecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

undique, Adv., *on all sides.*

universus, -a, -um, *all (without exception).*

unus, -a, -um, *one, only*, 129 [642].

urbs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *city.*

usus, -ūs, M. 4, *use; experience.*

ut or **utī**, Conj., *in which way, as; when; whereby, in order that, that; so that.*

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *which (of two)?* 130 [643].

uterque, **utraq̃ue**, **utrumque**, *each (of two).* Declined like **uter**, + -que.

utī, see **ut**.

utinam, *would that.* Particle often used in wishes.

utor, **utī**, **usus** sum, 3, *use.* Takes Abl.

vagor, **vagārī**, **vagātus** sum, 1, *roam, wander about.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be strong or powerful, be well.*

validior, -ius, *stronger.* Compar. of **validus**, *strong.*

validus, -a, -um, *strong.*

vallis, -is, -ium, F. 3, *valley.*

vāllum, -ī, N. 2, *wall, rampart.*

vel . . . **vel** . . . , Conj., *either . . . or . . .* (where a choice is offered).

vēlōciter, Adv., *swiftly.*

veniō, **venīre**, **venī**, **ventum**, 4, *come.*

verbum, -ī, N. 2, *word.*

vereor, **verērī**, **veritus** sum, 2, *fear, respect* [662].

vērō, Adv., *in truth, really, indeed, in fact.* Often merely emphasizes; to be translated by emphasis of voice.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *keep turning, hover; be busy, be engaged.*

Verticō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versum**, 3, *turn, change.*

vērūs, -a, -um, *true, real.*

vēscor, **vēscī**, —, 3, *feed oneself with, live on; eat.* Takes Abl.

vester, **vestra**, **vestrum**, *your* (in speaking to two or more persons).

vestrum, -trī, *of you*, Gen. Pl. of **tū**.

vetō, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitum**, 1, *forbid.* Takes Infinitive.

vetus, -us, *old; old-fashioned*, 286 [629].

via, -ae, F. 1, *way, street, road.*

victor, -ōris, M. 3, *victor*, 257 [618].

victōria, -ae, F. 1, *victory.*

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **vīsum**, 2, *see.*

videor, passive of **videō**, *seem, seem good.*

vigilia, -ae, F. 1, *watch, vigil.*

vīgintī, indecl. Adj., *twenty.*

villa, -ae, F. 1, *villa.*

vincō, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, 3, *vanquish, conquer, win.*

vir, **virī**, M. 2, *man*, 111 [616]. (Implies compliment; cf. **homō**.)

virtus, -utis, F. 3, *manliness, courage, prowess.*

vīs, vīs, F. 3, *force, violence;*

Pl. *virēs*, virium, *strength,*

326 [626].

vīta, -ae, F. 1, *life.*

vix, Adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *call.*

volō, *velle*, voluī, —, irr., *want, will,* 493 [665].

voluntās, -ātis, F. 3, *will.*

Volusēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

vōx, vōcis, F. 3, *voice.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī; -ātum, 1, *wound.*

vulnus, vulneris, N. 3, *wound.*



EARLY WALL AND CITY GATE, ALATRI
In the mountains, southeast of Rome

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The references are to sections. Figures in brackets refer to the Summary of Forms.

a, an, *not translated*.

ability, ingenium, ingēnī, N. 2.

(be) **able**, possum, posse, potuī, *irr.*, 485 [664].

about, dē *with Abl.*

(be) **about to**, *expressed by Fut. Act. Partic. with sum.*

(be) **absent**, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (*also* abfuī, abfutūrus), *irr.* [655].

accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.

accomplish, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

according to, *Abl. (of certain words, 455, a), or dē or ex, with Abl.*

(on) **account of**, ob *or* propter, *with Acc.*; Abl. of Cause *or Reason.*

accustom, adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3.

(be) **accustomed**, soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2.

ache, doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2.

act, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3; faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, *with Object.*

admonish, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

advance, prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3.

(give) **advice**, suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

advise, suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

(be) **afraid of**, timeō, timēre, timuī, —, 2; vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 2 [662].

after, *Prep.*, post *with Acc.*; **after this fashion**, ad hunc modum.

after, *Conj.*, postquam *with Indic.*, 506 [597, IV].

after a while, post aliquantum temporis.

after that, postea.

again, iterum; rursus.

against, contrā *with Acc.*

agreeable, grātus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

aid, auxilium, auxiliī, N. 2.

aid, adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.

(come to) **aid**, subveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.*

aim at, petō, petere, petīvī, petitum, 3.

all, omnis, -e; cūctus, -a, -um; tōtus, -a, -um, 130 [643].

all (without exception), ūniversus, -a, -um.

at all, omnīnō.

allow, patior, patī, passus sum, 3.

ally, socius, -ī, M. 2.

almost, ferē.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um, **129** [642].

along, *Prep.*, praeter with *Acc.*;
secundum with *Acc.*

along (with), *Adv.*, ūnā.

already, iam.

also, quoque, *postpositive*;
etiam.

although (though), quamquam,
etsī, with *Indic.*; cum with
Subj.

always, semper.

am, sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *irr.*
[655].

am to be , expressed by
Fut. Pass. Partic. with sum.

ambiguous, duplex, -ex, -icis, **293**
[631].

Ambiorix, Ambiorīx, -īgis, *M. 3.*

ambuscade, īnsīdiae, -ārum, *F. 1.*

among, inter with *Acc.*; apud
with *Acc.*

and, et; both and, et
et; -que, *enclitic*; atque.

and so, itaque.

angry, irātus, -a, -um.

animal, animal, -ālis, -ium, *N. 3.*
270 [621].

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum, *1.*

(be) annoyed, gravor, -ārī, -ātus
sum, *1.*

another, alius, -a, -ud, **130** [643];
(of two) alter, -a, -um, **130**
[643].

answer, respondeō, -spondēre,
-spondī, -spōnsum, *2.*

anxiety, cūra, -ae, *F. 1.*

any, *Adj.*, ūllus, -a, -um, **129**
[642]; aliquī, -qua, -quod, **207**
[653]; quispiam, quaequam,
quodpiam, **200, c** [652, a]; quī,

qua, quod, *Adj. form of Indefi-*
nite quis, used with sī, nisi,
nē, etc., **207, b** [653, a].

any one, any thing, *Substantive*,
quisquam, quicquam, **199** [651];
aliquis, -quid, **207** [653]; quis-
piam, quidpiam, **200, c** [652, a];
quis, quid, used with sī, nisi,
nē, etc., **207, b** [653, a].

appoint, cōstituō, -stituere,
-stituī, -stitūtum, *3.*

approach, adpropinquō, -āre,
-āvi, -ātum, *1, with Dat.*; ac-
cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
3, with ad or propius; adeō,
adīre, adīi (or adīvī), aditum,
irr., **503** [667].

approve, probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *1.*

are to be , see am to
be

argument, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *F. 3.*

arise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *4*
(in several forms, *3*).

arm, brachium, -ī, *N. 2.*

arm, armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *1.*

arms, arma, -ōrum, *N. 2.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *M. 4*; army
(on the march) agmen, -inis,
N. 3.

around, circum, *Prep. with Acc.*,
and *Adv.*

around in, circum with *Acc.*

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
-ventum, *4.*

art, ars, artis, -ium, *F. 3.*

as, *Adv.*, quam; as much . . as,
tam . . . quam; as . . . as
possible, quam with *Superl.*
and possum, or *Superl. only*;
as much as possible, quam
maximē; as long as, quam diū.

as, *Conj.*, (=in the way in which, just as) *ut with Indic.*; (=when) *ut with Indic.*; (=since) *quandō with Indic.*; *cum with Subj.*

ask, *petō*, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petitum*, 3; *quaerō*, *quaerere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum*, 3; *orō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1; *rogō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1.

assist, *adiuvō*, *-iuvāre*, *-iūvī*, *-iūtum*, 1.

assured, *certus*, -a, -um.

at, *of Motion*, in *with Acc.*; *of Rest*, in *with Abl.* (but the Locative of names of towns, etc.), 409, 3 [594, 3]; *ad with Acc.*; (*of time*) *Abl.*

at all, *omnīnō*.

at any rate, *quidem*, *certē*.

(be) **at hand**, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, *adfutūrus*, *irr.* [655].

at last, *dēnique*.

at least, *saltem*.

at night, *noctū*.

at once, *statim*.

at that time, *tum*; *tunc*.

at the house of, *apud with Acc.*

athlete, *āthlēta*, -ae, M. 1.

attack, *impetus*, -ūs, M. 4.

attack, *petō*, *petere*, *petīvī*, *petitum*, 3; *adgredior*, *-gredī*, *-gressus sum*, 3; **attack** (a fortified place), *oppugnō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1.

attempt, *cōnor*, *-ārī*, *ātus sum*, 1.

attend to, *obeō*, *obīre*, *obiī* (or *obivī*), *obitum*, *irr.*, 503 [867].

authority, *auctōritās*, -ātis, F. 3.

await, *exspectō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1; *maneō*, *manēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsūm*, 2.

be away, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus* (also *abfuī*, *abfutūrus*), *irr.* [655].

away from, *ā with Abl.*; (*from inside of*) *ex with Abl.*

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.

badly, *male*.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

band, *manus*, -ūs, F. 4.

barbarian, *barbarus*, -a, -um.

(line of) **battle**, *aciēs*, *aciēī*, F. 5.

battle, *proelium*, -ī, N. 2.

be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, *irr.* [655].

bear (arms), *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestum*, 3.

beat, *vincō*, *vincere*, *viciī*, *victum*, 3.

beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.

because, *quod*, *quia*, *with Indic.*; *cum with Subj.*

before, *ante*, *Prep. with Acc.*, and *Adv.*

before, *Conj.*, *priusquam* or *priusquam*, *antequam*, *with Indic. of actual past act* [597, III], and *Subjunctive of act anticipated*.

before that, **before this**, *anteā*.

beg, *orō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1.

begin, *incipiō*, *-cipere*, *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*, 3; *coepī*, *coepisse*, *coepum est*, *defective*.

be here, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, *adfutūrus*, *irr.* [655].

behind, *post*, *Prep. with Acc.*, and *Adv.*

believe, *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*, 3, *with Dat. of the person*, or *Acc. of the thing*, or *both*.

be permitted, licet, licēre, licuit
and licitum est, 2, *impersonal*.

beside, propter *with Acc.*

besiege, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

best, optimus, -a, -um, *Superl. of*
bonus, 530 [635].

better, Adj., melior, melius,
Compar. of bonus, 530 [635];
Adv., melius, *Compar. of* bene,
539 [638].

between, inter *with Acc.*

beyond, trāns *with Acc.*

big, magnus, -a, -um.

bigger, maior, maius, *Compar. of*
magnus, 530 [635].

blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
body, corpus, corporis, N. 3, 265
[620].

both, *Pron.*, ambō, -ae, -ō, 328
[640].

both . . . and, *Conjs.*, et . . . et.
boundaries, finēs, finium, M. 3,
Pl. of finis, 271 [622].

boy, puer, puerī, M. 2, 111 [616].

brave, fortis, -e.

brains (=judgment), cōsilium,
-ī, N. 2.

bravely, fortiter.

break, rumpō, rumpere, rūpī,
ruptum, 3.

bridge, pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3.

bring about, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum, 3.

bring to, adferō, adferre, attulī,
allātum, *irr.*, 522 [668].

brother, frāter, frātris, M. 3.

business, negōtium, -ī, N. 2.

(be) busy in, versor, -ārī, -ātus
sum, 1, *with in*.

but, sed; at.

by, of Agent, ā or ab *with Abl.*,
or Dat. *with Fut. Pass. Partic.*;
of Means or Instrument, Abl. ;
(close) by, ad *with Acc.*

by chance, cāsū; forte.

by far, multō, Abl. of Measure
of Difference, equivalent to an
Adv.

cabin, casa, -ae, F. 1.

Caesar, Caesar, Caésaris, M. 3.

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 ;
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

can, possum, posse, potuī, *irr.*,
485 [664]; also rendered in
various uses by the Subjunc-
tive of Possibility.

Capri, Capreae, -ārum, F. 1.

captive, captīvus, -ī, M. 2.

care, cūra, -āe, F. 1.

careful, diligēns, -ēns, -entis.

carefulness, diligētia, -ae, F. 1.

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,
irr., 522 [668]; deferō, -ferre,
-tulī, -lātum, *irr.*, 522 [668].

carry on, gerō, gerere, gessī, ges-
tum, 3.

case, cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, 369 [624].
(in that) case, tum.

catch, comprehendō, -prehen-
dere, -prehendī, -prehensum,
3.

Catuvolcus, Catuvolcus, -ī, M. 2.

cause, causa, -ae, F. 1.

cautious, cautus, -a, -um.

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M. 4;
equitēs, -um, M. 3, *Pl. of* eques.

cavalry, as Adj., equestris, -tre.

censure, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

centurion, centuriō. -ōnis, M. 3.

certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), **193** [650]; certus, -a, -um.

certainly, certē.

chance, cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, **369** [624].

(by) chance, cāsū; forte.

change, mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1; vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3.

charge, prōcurrō, -currere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, 3.

chide, moneō, monēre, -monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

choose, legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3; eligō, eligere, elēgī, elēctum, 3.

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, M. 3.

circle, orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3.

city, urbs, urbis, -ium, F. 3.

close by, proximus, -a, -um.

Superl. of propior, **531** [636].

class, genus, generis, N. 3.

cohort, cohors, -rtis, -ium, F. 3.

collect, conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3.

come, veniō, venīre, vērī, ventum, 4.

come down, mē dēmītō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

come over, trānseō, -īre, -īī (or -īvī), -itum, *irr.*, **503** [667].

come to aid, subveniō, -venīre, -vērī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.*

come to hope, in spem veniō, venīre, vērī, ventum, 4.

come together, conveniō, -venīre, -vērī, -ventum, 4.

command, imperātum, -ī, N. 2; imperium, -ī, N. 2.

command, imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1.

(be in) command, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.* [655], *with Dat.*

common, commūnis, -e.

communicate, communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

compulsion, coāctus, -ūs, M. 4.

concede, concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *with Dat.*

(safe) conduct, tūtum iter.

confer, conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3.

conference, conloquium; -ī, N. 2.

conquer, vincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, 3; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, M. 3, **257** [618].

construct, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4.

contempt, contemptiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

contend, certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1.

contest, certāmen, -minis, N. 3.

continue, maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2.

controversy, contrōversia, -ae, F. 1.

cook, coqua, -ae, F. 1.

Corfinium, Corfīnium, -ī, N. 2.

Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2.

Cotta, Cotta, -ae, M. 1.

cottage, casa, -ae, F. 1.

council, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

country, rūs, rūris, N. 3; loca, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2; country of . . . , *may be translated by name of tribe alone.*

country, as *Adj.*, rūsticus, -a, -um.

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, F. 3.

Crassus, Crassus, -ī, M. 2.

cross, trānseō, -īre, -īi (or -īvī),
-itum, *irr.*, 503 [667].

crowd, turba, -ae, F. 1.

cry, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, 2.

cultivate, colō, colere, coluī, cul-
tum, 3.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3;
mōs, mōris, M. 3.

cut, caedō, caedere, cecīdī, cae-
sum, 3.

danger, periculum, -ī, N. 2.

dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um.

dare, audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2.

daughter, filia, -ae, F. 1.

day, diēs, diēi, M. and F., 5, 395
[625].

(every) day, cotīdiē.

(late in the) day, magnā parte
diēi cōsumptā.

daybreak, prīma lūx.

deceive, dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum, 3.

decide, statuō, statuere, statuī,
statūtum, 3; constituō, -stitu-
ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

decide (between), dīiudicō, -āre,
-āvī, -ātum, 1.

decoration, insigne, -is, -ium,
N. 3, 270 [621].

defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī,
-fēsum, 3.

delay, mora, -ae, F. 1.

delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

deliberate, dēliberō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

(be) delighted, laetor, -ārī, -ātus
sum, 1.

depart, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
-cessum, 3; (accomplish a) de-

parture, profectiōnem faciō,
facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

departure, profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

desire, dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
1; cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupī-
tum, 3.

desirous, cupidus, -a, -um, *with*
Objective Gen.

desist, dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -sti-
tūrus, 3.

desperate (= *extreme*), extrēmus,
-a, -um, *Superl. of exterior*,
531 [636].

determine, cōstituō, -stituere,
-stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

devote, mē dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī,
dēditum.

(be) devoted to, studeō, studēre,
studuī, 2, *with Dat.*

different, dīversus, -a, -um.

differently, aliter.

difficult, difficilis, -e.

(with) difficulty, aegrē.

diligence, diligentia, -ae, F. 1.

diligent, diligēns, -ēns, -entis.

diligently, diligenter.

dine, cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

dinner, cēna, -ae, F. 1.

direct, praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum, 3, *with Dat. of Person.*

disadvantageous, inīquus, -a,
-um.

discharge, fungor, fungī, fūctus
sum, 3, *with Abl.*

discipline, disciplina, -ae, F. 1.

display, prae mē gerō, gerere,
gessī, gestum, 3.

displease, displiceō, -plicēre, -pli-
cuī, -plicitum, 2, *with Dat.*

disregard, neglegō, -legere, -lēxī,
-lēctum, 3.

from a distance, *procul*.
 distribute, *distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, 3.*

divide, *dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum, 3.*

do, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3; agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3.*

(be) done, *fiō, fierī, factus sum, irr., 502 [666].*

do harm, *iniūriam faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.*

draw up, *īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3; prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3.*

drill, *exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2.*

drive, *pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3.*

drive out, *pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3.*

dust, *pulvis, pulveris, M. 3, 265 [620].*

duty, *officium, -ī, N. 2.*

each, *quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), 200 [652]; each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque (declined like uter, 130 [643] + -que).*

eager, *alacer, -cris, -cre.*

(be) eager for, *studeō, studēre, studuī, —, 2, with Dat.*

eagerly, *cupidē.*

easily, *facile.*

easy, *facilis, -e.*

Eburōnes, *Eburōnēs, -um, M. 3.*

(the) edge of, *extrēmus, -a, -um, Superl. of exterior, 531 [636].*

effect, *efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.*

either (of two), *Pron., uterque, utraque, utrumque (declined like uter, 130 [643] + -que).*

either . . . or, *Conjs., aut . . . aut; (giving choice) vel . . . vel.*

elect, *ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3.*

end, *finis, -is, -ium, M. 3, 271 [622].*

enemy, (of the state) *hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3; (of an individual) inimicus, -ī, M. 2.*

energetic, *impiger, -gra, -grum. energetically, impigrē.*

enjoy, *fruor, fruī, fructus sum, 3, with Abl.*

engage in or (be) engaged in, *versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.*

enough, *satis.*

enter, *intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.*

equal, *pār, pār, paris; aequus, -a, -um.*

equally, *aequē.*

escape, *ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3.*

establish, *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.*

Esuvii, *Esuvī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.*

even, *etiam.*

(not) even, *nē . . . quidem.*

ever, *umquam.*

every, *omnis, -e; quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque), 200 [652].*

everybody, *cūctī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2; omnēs, -ium, M. Pl. 3, from omnis.*

every day, *cotīdiē.*

every one, *omnēs, -ium, M. Pl. 3, from omnis.*

(on) every side, undique.

everything, omnia, -ium, N. Pl. 3,
from omnis.

example, exemplum, -ī, N. 2.

exceedingly, maximē, *Superl. of*
magnopere and multum, 539
[638].

except, nisi.

exercise, exerceō, exercēre, ex-
ercuī, exercitum, 2.

expect, exspectō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

experienced, perītus, -a, -um,
with *Objective Gen.*

explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

extend, extendō, -tendere, -tendī,
-tentum and -tēsum, 3.

eye, oculus, -ī, M. 2.

(in the) eyes (of), *Dat. of the*
Person Judging.

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, M. 2.

face, ōs, ōris, N. 3.

(full in the) face, in adversum ōs.

fact, rēs, rei, F. 5, 395 [625].

fail, dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
tum, 3.

fair, aequus, -a, -um.

faith, fidēs, fideī, F. 5.

fall, cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsū-
rus, 3.

fame, fāma, -ae, F. 1.

(by) far, multō, *Abl. of Measure*
of Difference.

far, longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, M. 1.

fashion, modus, -ī, M. 2.

father, pater, patris, M. 3, 257
[618].

fault, culpa, -ae, F. 1.

favor, faveō, favēre, fāvī, fau-
tum, 2, with *Dat.*

favorable, aequus, -a, -um.

fear, timor, -ōris, M. 3; metus,
-ūs, M. 4.

fear, timeō, timēre, timuī, —, 2;
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 2.

feel, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēn-
sum, 4.

feel sure, pro certō habeō, habēre,
habuī, habitum, 2.

feel well, valeō, valēre, valuī,
valitūrus, 2.

feeling, sententia, -ae, F. 1.

(a) few (only), paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agrī, M. 2, 111 [616].

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre, 293 [630];
ferus, -a, -um.

fiercely, ācritē.

fight, pugna, -ae, F. 1.

fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1;
dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

fight it out, dēcertō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

fighter, pugnāns, -āns, -antis,
Pres. Act. Partic. of pugnō.

fill, compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plē-
tum, 2.

finally, dēnique.

find, invenio, -venīre, -venī, -ven-
tum, 4.

finish, cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
tum, 3.

fire, ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, 278
[623]; flamma, -ae, F. 1.

(set on) fire, incendō, -cendere,
-cendī, -cēsum, 3.

first, prīmus, -a, -um, *Superl. of*
prior, 531 [636].

(at) first, prīmō.

(in the) first place, prīmum.

fit, aptus, -a, -um.

fitted, aptus, -a, -um.

five, quīnque, *indecl. Adj.*

fixed, certus, -a, -um.

flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3.

flight, fuga, -ae, F. 1.

(take to) flight, mē in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

fly (to), advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3.

following (= next), posterus, -a, -um.

follow up, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3, insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3.

fool, verba dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

foot, pēs, pedis, M. 3.

for, *Prep., expressed by Dat.; by ad or in with Acc.; (=through a period of time) per with Acc., or Acc. of Extent of Time.*

for, *Conj., enim, postpos.; nam.*

for a little (while), paulisper.

for nothing, sine ullā causā.

for the purpose of, causā or grātiā with *Gen. of Gerundive or Gerund; ad with Gerundive or Gerund; quī, quō, ut, with Subj.*

for the sake of, causā or grātiā with *Gen.*

for this reason, ob eam causam.

for which reason, quārē.

forbid, prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2; vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, 1, with *Infin.*

force, forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. 1, *Pl. of cōpia.*

forced march, magnum iter.

forehead, frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3.
foresee, prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, 2.

forest, silva, -ae, F. 1.

form (*a plan*), capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3 [659].

former, prīstinus, -a, -um; priōr, -us, *Compar., 531* [636].

formerly, antēā.

fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

fortify, commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum, 4.

fortunate, beātus, -a, -um.

four, quattuor, *indecl. Adj.*

four hundred, quadringentī, -ae, -a.

friend (*man or boy*), amīcus, -ī, M. 2; (*woman or girl*), amīca, -ae, F. 1.

(in a) fright, territus, -a, -um, *Perf. Pass. Partic. of terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2.*

(thoroughly) frighten, perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.

from, (= away from) ā or ab, with *Abl.*; (= down from) dē with *Abl.*; (= out of) ē or ex, with *Abl.*

from a distance, procul.

front, frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3.

(in) front of, prae with *Abl.*; prō with *Abl.*; ante with *Acc.*

full in the face, in adversum ōs.

further, amplius, *Neut. Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv.*

gain, cōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3.

Gaius, Gāius, -ī, M. 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, M. 1.

Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.

Gallus, Gallus, -ī, M. 2.

game, lūdus, -ī, M. 2.

garden, hortus, -ī, M. 2.

gate, porta, -ae, F. 1.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F. 1.

(a) Gaul, Gallus, -ī, M. 2.

general, dux, ducis, M. 3; **general**
(*in chief*), imperātor, -ōris,
M. 3.

generally, ferē.

German, Germānus, -ī, M. 2.

get (possession of), potior, potirī,
potītus sum, 4, *with Abl.*

get into condition, vīrēs cōn-
firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

get sight of, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus
sum, 1.

girl, puella, -ae, F. 1.

give, dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

give advice, suādeō, suādēre,
suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

give way, cēdō, cēdere, cessī,
cessum, 3, *with Dat.*

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

(be) glad of, gaudeō, gaudēre,
gāvīsus sum, 2.

glory, glōria, -ae, F. 1.

go, eō, ire, iī (*or ivī*), itum, *irr.*,
503 [667].

go on (= *be done*), fiō, fierī, factus
sum, *irr.*, 502 [666].

going to, *expressed by Fut. Act.*
Partic.

good, bonus, -a, -um, 117 [627].

good-bye, valē.

(a) good many, complūrēs, com-
plūria *or* -a, 327 [633].

good-will, voluntās, -ātis, F. 3.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, N. 2.

great, magnus, -a, -um; *often*
tantus, -a, -um.

(a) great many, plūrimī, -ae, -a,
Superl. of multus, 530 [635].

greater, maior, maius, *Compar.*
of magnus, 530 [635].

greatest, maximus, -a, -um,
Superl. of magnus, 530 [635].

(how) great, quantus, -a, -um.

(so) great, tantus, -a, -um.

greatly, magnopere.

grieve, doleō, dolēre, doluī, doli-
tūrus, 2.

ground, locus, -ī, M. 2, *Pl. loca*,
-ōrum; regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

guide, dux, ducis, M. 3.

guide, regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 3.

habit, mōs, mōris, M. 3; cōnsuē-
tūdō, -inis, F. 3.

halt, cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī,
—, 3.

hand, manus, -ūs, F. 4.

happy, beātus, -a, -um; laetus,
-a, -um.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um.

hardly, vix.

harm, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, noci-
tum, 2, *with Dat.*; do harm (*to*
a person), iniūriam faciō, fa-
cere, fēcī, factum, 3; no harm
is done him, eī nihil nocetur,
nocērī, nocitum est, 2.

harsh, dūrus, -a, -um.

(make) haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

hasten, contendō, -tendere, -ten-
dī, -tentum, 3.

hate (*to do a thing*), gavor, -ārī,
-ātus sum, 1, *with Infin.*

have, habeō, habēre, habuī, habi-
tum, 2; *Dat. of Possession with*
sum.

have regard for, *rationem habeo*,
habere, habui, habitum, 2, *with*
Gen.

he, is, **153** [646]; ille, **145** [645];
iste, **145**, *a* [645]; hic, **166** [648].

head, caput, capitis, N. 3.

hear, audio, audire, audivi, audi-
tum, 4.

heavy, gravis, -e.

helmet, galea, ae, F. 1.

help, auxilium, auxilii, N. 2.

help, iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, 1;
adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.

(come to) help, subveniō, -venire,
-vēnī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.*;
auxiliō veniō, venire, vēnī, ven-
tum, 4, *with Dat.*

hem in, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī,
-tentum, 2.

her, *Gen. Sing. of* is, **153** [646],
ille, **145** [645], iste, **145**, *a* [645],
or hic, **166** [648]; *Reflexive*,
her (own), suus, -a, -um.

herald, praecō, -ōnis, M. 3.

here, hic.

(be) here, adsum, adesse, adfuī,
adfutūrus, *irr.* [655].

high, altus; -a, -um.

highest, suprēmus, -a, -um, or
summus, -a, -um, *Superl. of*
superior, **531** [636].

hill, collis, -is, -ium, M. 3.

(of, etc.) himself, *Reflexive*, suī,
etc., **215** [654]; (he) himself,
Intensive, ipse, -a, -um, **139**
[644].

hindrance, impedimentum, -i, N. 2.

his, *Gen. Sing. of* is, **153** [646],
ille, **145** [645], iste, **145**, *a* [645],
or hic, **166** [648]; his (own),
suius, -a, -um.

hold, teneō, tenēre, tenuī, ten-
tum, 2.

home, domus, -ūs *and* -ī, 4 and 2,
406 [626].

(at) home, domī, **409**, 3, *a*.

honor, honor, -ōris, M. 3.

honorable, honestus, -a, -um.

hope, spēs, speī, F. 5; (come to)
hope, in spem veniō, venire,
vēnī, ventum, 4.

hope, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1;
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

horn, cornū, -ūs, N. 4, **369** [624].

horse, equus, -ī, M. 2.

horseman, eques, -itis, M. 3.

hour, hōra, -ae, F. 1.

(at the) house (of), apud *with*
Acc.

how, quam; (= *in what way, by*
what means) quī.

how great, quantus, -a, -um.

however, autem, *postpositive*.

hurl, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iec-
tum, 3.

hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

hurt, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, noci-
tum, 2, *with Dat.*

I, ego, meī, **214** [654].

if, si.

if not (= *unless*), nisi.

ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.

image, imāgō, -inis, F. 3.

immediately, cōnfestim; statim.

in, of Place, in *with Abl.* (or
the Locative of names of
Towns, etc., **409**, 3, *a* [594. 3]);
of Respect, Abl. of Respect;
of Time, Abl. of Time.

in accordance with, see according
to.

(be) in command, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.* [655], *with Dat.*

in front of, ante *with Acc.*, prō *with Abl.*

in order to, ut *with Subj.*; in order not to, nē *with Subj.*

in person, per mē, tē, or sē.

in return for, prō *with Abl.*

in succession, deinceps.

in that case, tum.

in the eyes of, expressed by *Dat. of the Person Judging.*

in the first place, primum.

in the second place, deinde.

in the morning, māne.

in this way, ita; sīc.

indeed, vērō; quidem.

influence, grātia, -ae, F. 1.

influential, potēns, -ēns, -entis.

inform, doceō, docēre, docuī, doc-tum, 2; certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

injure, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, noci-tum, 2, *with Dat.*

injury, iniūria, -ae, F. 1.

inquire, quaerō, quaerere, quae-sīvī, quaesītum, 3.

instruct, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

interest, studium, -ī, N. 2; rēs, rei, F. 5, **395** [625].

interpreter, interpres, -pretis, M. 3.

intervene, intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

into, in *with Acc.*

invite, invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

it, id, **153** [646]; illud or istud, **145** and *a* [645]; hoc, **166** [648].

Italy, Italia, -ae, F. 1.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, N. 2; iaculum, -ī, N. 2.

(Gallic) javelin, trāgula, -ae, F. 1.

join, iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnc-tum, 3; adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, 3; join battle, proelium committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

judge, iūdex, iūdicis, M. 3.

judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

judgment, iūdicium, -ī, N. 2; cōn-silium, -ī, N. 2.

Julia, Iūlia, -ae, F. 1.

Julius, Iūlius, -ī, M. 2.

just, iustus, -a, -um.

just now, modo.

keep, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

keep out (= stay away from), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (and abfuī, abfutūrus), *irr.* [655].

keep (some one from) prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2.

kill, caedō, caedere, cecidī, cae-sum, 3; occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, 3; interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

kind, benignus, -a, -um.

kind, genus, generis, N. 3.

kindness, beneficium, -ī, N. 2.

king, rēx, rēgis, M. 3, **256** [617].

kingship, rēgnum, -ī, N. 2.

kitchen, culīna, -ae, F. 1.

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4;

Perfect tenses of noscō, nōs-cere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, *and cog-nōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gni-tum, 3.*

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M. 2.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
larger, maior, maius, Compar. of magnus, 530 [635].
(at) last, dēnique.
late in the day, magnā parte diēi cōnsūmptā.
(too) late, sērō.
later, postea; post.
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3.
lead off, dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, M. 3.
learn, discō, discere, didicī, —, 3; nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3; cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3.
(at) least, saltem.
leave, (transitive) relinquo, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, 3; (intransitive), dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3; discēdō, -cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3; ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
left, reliquus, -a, -um.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
leisure, ōtium, -ī, N. 2.
less, Adj., minor, minus, Compar. of parvus, 530 [635].
less, Adv., minus, Compar. of parum, 539 [638].
less than, minus quam.
lest, nē with Subj.
let (me or us), generally expressed by Subj.
letter (of correspondence), epistula, -ae, F. 1; litterae, -ārum, F. 1, Pl. of littera.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M. 2.
life, vīta, -ae, F. 1.
like, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, F. 5.
line of march, agmen, -inis, N. 3.
listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
little, Adv., parum; Substantive, paulum, -ī, N. 2.
(by a) little, paulō, Abl. of Measure of Difference, equivalent to an Adv.
(a) little while, (for) a little while, paulisper.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
live on, vēscor, vēscī, —, 3, with Abl.
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long (= for a long time), diū.
(no) longer, nōn iam; nec iam.
(as) long as, quam diū.
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
lowest, infimus, -a, -um, Superl. of inferior, 531 [636].
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, M. 2.
lung, latus, lateris, N. 3.
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3; (= bring about that) efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, with ut or ut nōn, and Subj.
make haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
man, vir, virī, M. 2, 111 [616]; homō, hominis, M. 3; men (our men, his men, etc.), nostrī, suī, etc.
(to a) man, ad ūnum.

manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, 3.

many, multī, -ae, -a, *Pl. of multus*.

(a good) **many**, complūrēs, complūria or -a, 327 [633].

(line of) **march**, agmen, agminis, N. 2.

Mark, Mārcus, -ī, M. 2.

master, (of a household) dominus, -ī, M. 2; (of a school) magister, -trī, M. 2.

matter, rēs, reī, F. 5, 395 [625].

(by) **means of**, expressed by *Abl. of Means*.

meanwhile, interim; intereā.

meet, conveniō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventum, 4.

memory, memoria, -ae, F. 1.

men (our men, his men, etc.), nostrī, suī, etc.

merely, tantummodo.

message, nūntius, -ī, M. 2.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, M. 2.

method, modus, -ī, M. 2.

midday, meridiēs, -ēī, M. 5.

(the) **middle of**, medius, -a, -um.

mile, mille passuum, *Pl. milia passuum*.

military, militāris, -e.

mind, animus, -ī, M. 2.

mine, meus, -a, -um.

misfortune, incommodum, -ī, N. 2.

missile, tēlum, -ī, N. 2.

mistress, domina, -ae, F. 1.

mob, turba, -ae, F. 1.

mock (=pretended), simulātus, -a, -um, from simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

money, pecūnia, -ae, F. 1.

more, *Substantive*, plūs, *Gen. plūris*; in *Pl.*, plūrēs, plūra, plūrium, 327 [633], *Compar. of multus*, 530 [635].

more, *Adv.*, magis; plūs and amplius, *Compar. Adjs. in Acc. of Degree, equivalent to Advs.*

(in the) **morning**, māne.

(this) **morning**, hodiē māne.

most, *Adv.*, expressed by *Superlative form*; also by maximē, *Superl. of magnopere and multum*, 539 [633].

most, as *Substantive*, maxima pars.

mother, māter, -tris, F. 3.

mountain, mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3.

mouth, ōs, ōris, N. 3.

move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2.

much, *Adj.*, multus, -a, -um.

much, *Adv.*, multum, *Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv.*; much (= by much), multō, *Abl. of Measure of Difference, equivalent to an Adv.*

(as) **much . . . as**, tam . . . quam.

(too) **much**, nimis.

(very) **much**, plūrimum, *Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Superl. of multum*, 539 [638].

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, F. 3.

must be . . . (= is to be . . .) expressed by *Fut. Pass. Partic. with sum*.

my, meus, -a, -um.

(of) **myself**, *Reflexive*, meī (from ego, 214 [654]).

(my)self, *Intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 139 [644].

name, nōmen, -inis, N. 3.

name (= call), appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

nature, nātūra, -ae, F. 1.

near, propinquus, -a, -um, with *Dat.*

near, prope with *Acc.*

nearer, propius, *Compar. Adv.*,
539 [638]; used also as *Prep.*
with *Acc.*

nearest, proximus, -a, -um, *Compar. of* propior, 531 [636].

(is or are) necessary, necesse est
or sunt.

(it is) necessary, necesse est.

need, opus, *indecl. Noun with Abl.*

neglect, neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3.

neighboring, propinquus, -a, -um.

neighborhood, loca propinqua.

neither, *Pronoun*, neuter, -tra, -trum, 129 [642].

neither (=and not), *Conj.*, neque (nec).

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec . . .).

Nervian, Nervius, -ī, M. 2.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

news, aliquid novī.

night, nox, noctis, -ium, F. 3,
271 [622].

(at) night, noctū.

no, *Adj.*, nūllus, -a, -um, 129 [642].

no, in Answers, nōn, minimē, *Superl. of* parum, 539 [638];
implied in Questions, num.

no longer, nōn iam; nec iam.

no one, nēmō, nūllius, 290.

noise, strepitus, -ūs, M. 4.

none, nūllus, -a, -um, 129 [642];
nemō, nūllius, 290; nihil, *indecl. Noun.*

nor, neque (nec).

not, nē for *Imperative, Volitive, and Optative ideas* (except in questions); nōn for all other ideas and all questions.

not, in questions, nōnne, *interrog. Adv. implying "yes."*

not at all, minimē, *Superl. of* parum, 539 [638].

not even, nē . . . quidem.

not only . . . but also, nōn solum
or nōn modo . . . sed etiam.

not yet, nōndum.

nothing, nihil, *indecl. Noun.*

(for) nothing, sine ūllā causā.

notice, animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3.

now, (= at this time) nunc; (= by this time), iam.

(just) now, modo.

number, numerus, -ī, M. 2; multi-
tūdō, -inis, F. 3.

(a) number of, complūrēs, -plūria
or -a, -ium, 327 [633].

o, ō.

oak, rōbur, rōboris, N. 3, 257
[618].

observe, observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
1.

of, of Possession, expressed by *Gen.*; of the Whole, expressed by *Gen.*, or dē or ex with *Abl.*; of Separation; by ā with *Abl.*, or *Abl. alone*; of Cause or Reason by *Abl.*

of war, militāris, -e.

- often, *saepe*.
 (very) often, *saepissimē*, *Superl.*
of saepe, **539** [638].
oh, *ō*.
 old, *vetus*, *vetus*, *veteris*, **286** [629].
 oldest, *maximus*, -a, -um, *Superl.*
of magnus, **530** [635].
 old-fashioned, *vetus*, *vetus*, *veteris*, **286** [629].
on, *of Place*, in *with Abl.*; *of Time*, *Abl.*; *on (the front, etc.)*,
ab or *ex* *with Abl.*
on account of, *ob* or *propter* *with Acc.*; *Abl. of Cause or Reason*.
on all sides, *undique*.
on every side, *undique*.
(at) once, *statim*.
one, *ūnus*, -a, -um, **129** [642]; *one (oftwo)*, *alter*, -a, -um, **130** [643];
one (who or that), *tālis* (*quī*) or *is* (*quī*).
one after another, *deinceps*.
one at a time, *singulī*, -ae, -a.
one in ten, *decimus quisque*.
only, *Pronom. Adj.*, *sōlus*, -a, -um, **129** [642].
only, *Adv.*, *sōlum*; *modo*; *tantummodo*.
(not) only . . . but also, *nōn solum*
or nōn modo . . . sed etiam.
opportunity, *facultās*, -ātis, F. 3;
potestās, -ātis, F. 3.
oppose, *obstō*, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1.
opposed, *adversus*, -a, -um, *with Dat.*
or, *aut*, *vel* (*giving choice*); *an (in second part of question)*.
Either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*; *vel . . . vel*; *whether . . . or*, *sive . . . sive* (*seu . . . seu*).
order, *imperō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1,
with Dat. and Subj.; *iubeō*,
iubēre, *iussī*, *iussum*, 2, *with Acc. and Infin.*
(in) order to, *ut* *with Subj.*; *(in) order not to*, *nē* *with Subj.*
(without) orders, *iniussū*, *Adv.*
other, *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, **130** [643];
other (of two), *alter*, *altera*,
alterum, **130** [643]; *some . . . others*, *aliī* . . . *aliī*.
otherwise, *aliter*.
ought, *translated by Future Passive Participle* *with sum*, *or by Subj.*; *also by dēbeō*, *dēbēre*,
dēbuī, *dēbitum*, 2.
our, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*.
our men, *nostrī*, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.
(of, etc.) ourselves, *Reflexive*,
nostrī, *etc.*, **215** [654].
out of, *ex* or *ē*, *with Abl.*
out of what, *unde*.
pace, *passus*, -ūs, M. 4.
paint, *pingō*, *pingere*, *pīnxī*, *pīctum*, 3.
part, *pars*, *partis*. -ium, F. 3;
regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
party, *pars*, *partis*, *or partēs*, *partium*, F. 3.
pass, *agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctum*, 3.
past, *praeter* *with Acc.*
pattern, *exemplar*, -āris, -ium, N. 3, **270** [621].
peace, *ōtium*, -ī, F. 2.
pebble, *lapillus*, -ī, M. 2.
people, *populus*, -ī, M. 2.
perhaps, *forte* *or fortasse* *with Indic.*; *forsitan* *with Subj. of Possibility*.
peril, *periculum*, -ī, N. 2.

period, spatium, -ī, N. 2.

(be) permitted, licet, licēre, licuit
and licitum est, 2, *impers.*

persevere, perseverō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

(in) person, per mē, tē, or sē.

persuade, persuādēō, -suādēre,
-suāsī, -suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

pertain, pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī,
-tentum, 2.

pick up, excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum, 3.

place, locus, -ī, M. 2; *Pl. loca*,
-ōrum, N. 2.

(in the first) place, primum.

place, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, posi-
tum, 3; cōstituō, -stituere,
-stituī, -stitūtum, 3; conlocō,
-āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

plan, cōsiliū, -ī, N. 2.

plan, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) pleasing, = please (*next*
word).

please, placeō, placēre, placuī,
placitum, 2, *with Dat.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um, *with*
Dat.

pledge (*one's word*), (*fidem*)
interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
tum, 3.

Pompeii, Pompei, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.

popularity, grātia, -ae, F. 1; (be
in great or greater) popularity,
sum in magnā or maiōre grātiā.

(take) position, consistō, -sistere,
-stitī, —, 3.

possess (= *get possession of*),
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, 4.

power, potestās, -ātis, F. 3.

(be) powerful, valeō, valēre, valuī,
valitūrus, 2.

practice, exerceō, exercēre, exer-
cuī, exercitum, 2.

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

precede, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
-cessum, 3.

prefer, mālō, mälle, māluī, —,
irr., 493 [665].

prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

prepared, parātus, -a, -um, *Perf.*
Pass. Partic. of parō.

presence, praesentia, -ae, F. 1.

present, dōnum, -ī, N. 2.

(be) present, adsum, adesse, adfuī,
adfutūrus, *irr.* [655].

preserve, cōservō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

pretend, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
1.

pretense, simulatiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

prevent, prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī,
-hibitum, 2; obstō, -stāre, -stitī,
-stātūrus, 1.

proceed, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
-cessum, 3.

proclaim, prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum, 1.

profit by, fruor, fruī, fructus
sum, 3, *with Abl.*

promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pol-
licitus sum, 2.

properly, commodē.

protect, tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēc-
tum, 3.

Publius, Pūblius, -ī, M. 2.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, M. 2.

(for the) purpose of, causā or
grātiā, *with Gen. of Gerundive*
or Gerund; ad, *with Gerundive*
or Gerund; ut or nē, *with Subj.*

pursue, īnsequor, -sequī, -secū-
tus sum, 3.

put an end to, *fīnem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.*

queen, *rēgīna, -ae, F. 1.*

quickly, *celeriter; vēlōciter.*

race, *gēns, gentis, -ium, F. 3, 271 [622].*

raise, *excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1.*

ramparts, *vāllum, -ī, N. 2.*

rank, *ōrdō, -inis, M. 3.*

rash, *temerārius, -a, -um.*

rashly, *temerē.*

(at any) rate, *certē; quidem.*

read, *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3.*

read up, *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3.*

ready (=prepared), *parātus, -a, -um, from parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1; prōmptus, -a, -um.*

real, *vērus, -a, -um.*

really, *vērō.*

rear, *tergum, -ī, N. 2.*

reason, *causa, -ae, F. 1.*

(for this) reason, *ob eām causam.*

(for which) reason, *quārē.*

receive, *accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.*

recently, *nūper.*

recognize, *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, 3.*

(take) refuge with, *perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, with ad.*

(have) regard for, *rationem habeo, habere, habui, habitum, 2, with Gen.*

region, *regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.*

rejoice, *laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1; gaudeō, gaudere, gāvīssus sum, 2.*

(be) reluctant, *gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.*

remain, *maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2.*

remaining, *reliquus, -a, -um. (Those) remaining, Pl. of reliquus.*

remedy, *auxilium, -ī, N. 2.*

remember, *meminī, meminisse, defective.*

Remi, *Rēmī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.*

report, *dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr., 522 [668].*

reputation, *fāma, -ae, F. 1.*

resist, *resistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3.*

resources, *opēs, opum, F. 3, Pl. of ops, opis.*

(the) rest, *reliquī, -ae, -a.*

retire, *mē recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr., 522 [668].*

retreat, *mē recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, 522 [668].*

return, *revertor, revertī (Infīn.), revertī (Perf.), reversum, 3. (Not deponent in Perfect.)*

(in) return for, *prō with Abl.*

Rhine, *Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2.*

rise, *orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4 (in several forms, 3).*

river, *flūmen, -inis, N. 3.*

road, *via, -ae, F. 1.*

Roman, *Rōmānus, -a, -um; as Noun, Rōmānus, -ī, M. 2.*

Rome, *Rōma, -ae, F. 3.*

rule, *lēx, lēgis, F. 3.*

run, *currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3.*

run away, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3.

run forward, prōcurrō, -currere, -curri and -cucurri, -cursum, 3.

run to and fro, concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

Sabinus, Sabīnus, -ī, M. 2.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

safe conduct, tūtum iter.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, F. 3.

(for the) sake of, causā or grātiā, with Gen.

sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

sally out, ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3.

salvation, salūs, -ūtis, F. 3.

same, idem, eadem, idem, 158 [647].

satisfy, satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3.

save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

say, dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, 3; he says, or says he, inquit, following one or more words.

say no, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

scarcity, inopia, -ae, F. 1.

scheme, cōsiliū, -ī, N. 3.

school, schola, -ae, F. 1.

schoolboy, discipulus, -ī, M. 2.

schoolmate, condiscipulus, -ī, M. 2.

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M. 3.

(in the) second place, deinde.

see, videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, 2.

seek, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3.

seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, 2.

select, eligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3.

self, *Intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 139 [644]; *Reflexive* (*myself, yourself, himself, themselves, etc.*), mei, tuī, suī, 215 [654].

send, mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3.

send around, circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

send back, remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

send out, ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

serious, gravis, -e.

servant, (*man*) servus, -ī, M. 2; (*woman*) serva, -ae, F. 1.

served (= *ready*) parātus, -a, -um, *Perf. Pass. Partic. of* parō.

Servius, Serviūs, -ī, M. 2.

set on fire, incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, 3.

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3.

set up, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, 3.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

several, aliquot, *indecl.*; aliquī, -quae, -qua, 207 [653]; quīdam, quaedam, quaedam, 193 [650].

Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M. 2.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre, 293 [630].

she, ea, 153 [646]; illa, 145 [645]; ista, 145a [645]; haec, 166 [648].

shield, scūtum, -ī, N. 2.

shout, shout out, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

show, doceō, docēre, docuī, doc-tum, 2.

side, latus, lateris, N. 3; (= *party*) pars, partis, -ium, F. 3, or partēs, partium, F. 3, Pl.

- side by side, paribus gradibus.
 (on every) side, undique.
 siege, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3;
 obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
 (get) sight of, cōspicor, -ārī,
 -ātus sum, 1.
 simultaneously, simul.
 since, cum *with Subj.*; quoniam
 or quandō *with Indic.*; since
 he, etc., quī, etc., *with Subj.*
 sister, soror, sorōris, F. 3.
 six, sex, *indecl. Adj.*
 slaughter, caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3.
 slave, (man) servus, -ī, M. 2,
 107 [615]; (woman) serva, -ae,
 F. 1, 86 [614].
 sling, funda, -ae, F. 1.
 slow, tardus, -a, -um.
 slowly, tardē.
 small, parvus, -a, -um.
 smaller, minor, minus, *Compar.*
 of parvus, 530 [635].
 smallest, minimus, -a, -um,
Superl. of parvus, 530 [635].
 so, ita; sic; tam.
 (and) so, itaque.
 so great, tantus, -a, -um.
 so that, ut *with Subj.*
 soldier, miles, militis, M. 3.
 some, *Adj.*, aliquī, aliqua, ali-
 quod, 207 [653]; aliquantus,
 -a, -um.
 some, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
 some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
 some one, *Substantive*, aliquis,
 207 [653]; quis, *used with sī*,
 nisi, nē, etc., 397, a [653].
 something, aliquid, 207 [653].
 sometimes, nōnnumquam.
 somewhat, aliquantum, *Acc. of*
Degree, equivalent to an Adv.
 son, fīlius, -ī, M. 2.
 soon, mox.
 sound, sonus, -ī, M. 2.
 space, spatium, -ī, N. 2.
 spare, parcō, parcere, pepercī or
 parsī, parsūrus, 3, *with Dat.*
 speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus
 sum, 3.
 spend, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
 tum, 3.
 spirit, animus, -ī, M. 2.
 splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
 sport, lūdus, -ī, M. 2.
 stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus,
 1.
 state, cīvītās, -ātis, F. 3.
 step, gradus, -ūs, M. 4.
 stern, dūrus, -a, -um.
 still, tamen.
 stone, saxum, -ī, N. 2.
 stop, dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -sti-
 tūrus, 3; intermittō, -mittere,
 -mīsī, -missum, 3.
 storm, tempestās, -ātis, F. 3.
 stratagem, dolus, -ī, M. 2.
 stream, rīvus, -ī, M. 2.
 street, via, -ae, F. 1.
 strength, vīrēs, -ium, F. 3, *Pl. of*
vīs, 326 [626].
 strengthen, firmō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum, 1; cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum, 1.
 strive, contendō, -tendere, -tendī,
 -tentum, 3.
 strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
 (be) strong, valeō, valēre, valuī,
 valitūrus, 2.
 study, studium, -ī, N. 2.
 study, studeō, studēre, studuī,
 —, 2.
 (in) succession, deinceps.

such, tālis, -e; is, ille, etc., *often with Descriptive quī-Clause, in Subj.*

sudden, repentīnus, -a, -um.

suffer, doleō, dolēre, doluī, doli-tūrus, 2.

sufficiently, satis.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, F. 3.

superior, superior, superius,
Compar. of superus, 531
[636].

supper, cēna, -ae, F. 1.

supply, cōpia, -ae, F. 1.

sure, certus, -a, -um.

(feel) sure, prō certō habeō, ha-bēre, habuī, habitum, 2.

surround, circumveniō, -venīre,
-vēnī, -ventum, 4; circumdō,
-dare, -dedī, -datum, 1.

swiftly, celeriter; vēlōciter.

sword, gladius, -ī, M. 2.

take, capiō, capere, cēpī, cap-tum, 3 [659].

take to flight, mē in fugām dō,
dare, dedī, datum, 1.

take position, cōsistō, -sistere,
-stitī, —, 3.

take refuge, perfugiō, -fugere,
-fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *with ad.*

take up, capiō, capere, cēpī, cap-tum, 3 [659].

talk, sermō, -ōnis, M. 3.

talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum,
3; conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus
sum, 3.

task, opus, operis, N. 3.

teach, doceō, docēre, docuī, doc-tum, 2.

teacher, magister, -trī, M. 2.

tear down, scindō, scindere,
scidī, scissum, 3.

tell, doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum,
2; dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3.

ten, decem, *indecl. Adj.*

tent, tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2.

terms, condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3.

terrify, terreō, terrēre, terruī,
territum, 2.

(thoroughly) terrify, perterreō,
-terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.

territory, finēs, finium, M. 3,
Pl. of finis, 271 [622].

terror, terror, -ōris, M. 3.

than, quam; *also expressed by*
Abl. after Comparatives.

that, *Determinative Pron.*, ille,
illa, illud, 145 [645]; is, ea, id,
153 [646].

that, *Relative Pron.*, quī, quae,
quod, 184 [649].

that, *Conj. after ideas of Will,*
Wish, Request, or Consent, ut
with Subj.; that not, nē *with*
Subj.

that (*English more generally*
from . . . ing, etc.) *after ideas*
of Hindrance or Prevention,
nē, quōminus, or quīn, *with*
Subj. (Originally that not.)

that (= lest), *after ideas of Fear,*
nē *with Subj.*; that not, ut
with Subj.

that, *of Purpose (= in order*
that), ut with Subj. (with a
Comparative, quō); that not,
nē *with Subj.*

that, *of Result (after so, such,*
etc.), ut with Subj.; that not,
ut nōn *with Subj. (Consecutive*
Clauses of Fact).

- that, in *Substantive Clauses of Fact of Consecutive origin* (originally full Result), ut with Subj.; that not, ut nōn with Subj.
- that, in *Substantive Clauses of Fact not of Consecutive origin*, quod with Indic.; that not, quod nōn with Indic.
- that, in *Principal Statements in Indirect Discourse*, expressed by using Infjn.
- that of yours, iste, -a, -ud, **145**, a [645].
- their, Gen. Pl. of is, **153** [646], ille, **145** [645], iste, **145**, a [645], or hic, **166** [648]; their (own), Reflexive, suus, -a, -um.
- (they) themselves, *Intensive, Pl.* of ipse, -a, -um, **139** [644].
- (of, etc.) themselves, *Reflexive*, suī, etc., **215** [654].
- then, tum; tunc.
- theory, ratiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
- there, *Expletive*, not translated.
- there, of Place, ibi.
- therefore, itaque.
- thing or things, rēs, rei, F. 5, **395** [625]; often translated by *Neut. Pl. of Adjectives or Pronouns*.
- think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4.
- (way of) thinking, sententia, -ae, F. 1.
- third, tertius, -a, -um.
- this, hic, haec, hoc, **166** [648]; is, ea, id, **153** [646].
- this morning, hodiē māne.
- this of yours, iste, ista, istud, **145**, a [645].
- thither, eō.
- thoroughly frighten, thoroughly terrify, perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.
- though, see although.
- thoughtless, temerārius, -a, -um.
- three, trēs, tria, trium.
- through, per with Acc.
- throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iac-tum, 3; mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3.
- throw down, abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3.
- thus, sic; ita.
- time, tempus, temporis, N. 3.
- (at that) time, tum; tunc.
- tire out, dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
- Tivoli, Tībur, Tīburis, N. 3.
- to, generally expressed by *Dat.*; of Motion, ad with Acc.; (= into) in with Acc.).
- to, of Purpose, translated by *Dat.*; quī, quō, ut, or nē with Subj.; *Supine* in -um; ad with *Gerundive* or *Gerund*; causā or grātiā with Gen. of *Gerundive* or *Gerund*; Fut. Pass. Partic. in agreement with object of verb.
- to a man, ad ūnum.
- today, hodiē.
- together, ūnā; inter sē.
- too (= also), quoque, *postpos.*
- too (= too much), nimis; often translated by *Compar.*
- too late, sērō.
- too much, nimis.
- toward, ad with Acc.; in with Acc.

- tower, *turris*, -is, -ium, F. 3, **278** [623].
- town, *oppidum*, -ī, N. 2.
- tranquil, *tranquillus*, -a, -um.
- Treviri, *Trēvirī*, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.
- tribune, *tribūnus*, -ī, M. 2.
- triumph, *triumphus*, -ī, M. 2.
- trouble, *incommodum*, -ī, N. 2.
- true, *vērus*, -a, -um.
- trust, *fidō*, *fidere*, *fīsus sum*, 3, and *cōfidō*, -*fidere*, -*fissus sum*, 3, with *Abl.* or *Dat.* (of a Person, *Dat.* only).
- try, *experior*, -*perīrī*, -*pertus sum*, 4.
- turn, *vertō*, *vertere*, *vertī*, *ver-sum*, 3.
- two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, **328** [640].
- two hundred, *ducentī*, -ae, -a.
- unarmed, *inermis*, -e.
- under, *sub*, of *Motion toward* with *Acc.*; of *Place in which* with *Abl.*
- under compulsion, *coāctū*, *Abl.* of *coāctus*, -ūs, M. 4.
- undertake, *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.
- undertaking, *cōnātus*, -ūs, M. 4.
- unfriendly, *inimicus*, -a, -um, with *Dat.*
- unhappy, *miser*, *misera*, *miserrum*.
- unless, *nisi*.
- until, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, with *Indic.* of *actual past acts*, and *Subj.* of *anticipated acts*.
- unworthy, *indignus*, -a, -um, with *Abl.*
- upon, in, of *Motion toward* with *Acc.*; of *Rest* with *Abl.*
- upon with a *Participial Noun*, translated by *cum* with *Subj.*; *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, or *simul atque*, with *Indic.*; *Abl. Absolute*; *Perf. Pass. Partic.* of *Deponent Verb.*
- urge, *hortor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.
- us, *nōs*, *Nom.-Acc. Pl.* of *ego*, **214** [654].
- use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*, 3, with *Abl.*
- valley, *vallis*, -is, -ium, F. 3; *convallis*, -is, -ium, F. 3.
- Vertico, *Verticō*, -ōnis, M. 3.
- very, *Adj.*, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, **139** [644].
- very, *Adv.*, expressed by *Superl.* or *maximē*.
- very much, *plūrimum*, *Acc.* of *degree*, equivalent to an *Adv.* *Superl.* of *multum*, *much*, **539** [638].
- victory, *victōria*, -ae, F. 1.
- vigorously, *impigrē*.
- villa, *villa*, -ae, F. 1.
- wage (war), *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3.
- wait, *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
- wait for, *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
- walk, *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
- wall, *mūrus*, -ī, M. 2; *vāllum*, -ī, N. 2.
- wander, *vagor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.
- want, *cupiō*, *cupere*, *cupivī*, *cupitum*, 3; *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —, *irr.*, **493** [665].
- (not) want (be unwilling), *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, —, *irr.*, **493** [665].

war, bellum, -ī, N. 2.

(of) **war**, militāris, -e.

warn, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

watch, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

way (=road or journey), via, -ae, F. 1; iter, itineris, N. 3.

way (=habit), mōs, mōris, M. 3.

way (=manner), modus, -ī, M. 2.

way of thinking, sententia, -ae, F. 1.

(give) **way**, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3.

(in this) **way**, sic; ita.

we, nōs, *Nom. Pl. of ego*, 214 [654].

weapons, arma, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2; (missile) **weapon**, tēlum, -ī, N. 2.

wear (=carry, bear), gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

weary, dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) **well**, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

(feel) **well**, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

well, bene.

what, *Interrog. Pron.*, quis, quid, and *Interrog. Adj.*, quī, quae, quod, 184 [649]; **what** (=how great), quantus, -a, -um.

whatever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, 192 [649, a].

wheel about, signa convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3.

when, ubi or ut, *with Indic.*; cum *with Indic. in Determinative Clause, Subj. in Descriptive; Abl. Absolute.*

where, ubi; **where** (=from which), unde.

whether . . . or, sive . . . sive (seu . . . seu).

which (*of two*), uter, -tra, -trum, 130 [643].

which, *Rel.*, quī, quae, quod; *Interrog.*, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), 184 [649].

while, dum, *with Present Indic. in narration.*

(after a) **while**, post aliquantum temporis.

(for a little) **while**, paulisper.

who, *Rel.*, quī, quae, quod, *Interrog.*, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), 184 [649].

whole, tōtus, -a, -um, 130 [643]; omnis, -e.

why, cūr.

will, voluntās, -ātis, F. 3.

willingly, libenter.

wing, cornū, -ūs, N. 4, 369 [624].

winter, hiems, hiemis, F. 3.

winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

winter-camp, **winter-quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

wisdom, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

wish, cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum, 3; volō, velle, voluī, —, *irr.*, 493 [665].

with, cum *with Abl.*; by *Abl. alone to express Means, and (often) Manner*, 513, and *Accompaniment*, 507, a; (=at the house of or among) apud *with Acc.*

withdraw, dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

within, intrā *with Acc.*

without, sine *with Abl.*

without orders, iniussū.

witness, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
1.

woman, fēmina, -ae, F. 1.

wood, woods, silva, -ae, F. 1.

word, verbum, -ī, N. 2; dictum,
-ī, N. 2; (=promise, faith,
pledge) fidēs, -eī, F. 5.

work, opus, operis, N. 3; labor,
-ōris, M. 3.

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

worry, laccessō, laccessere, laces-
sīvī, laccessitum, 3.

worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *Superl.*
of malus, 530 [635].

worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with*
Abl.

would that, utinam *with Subj.*

wound, vulnus, vulneris, N. 3.

wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
1.

write, scribō, scribere, scripsī,
scriptum, 3.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, F. 1.

wrong-doing, maleficium, -ī, N. 2.

year, annus, -ī, M. 2.

yes, ita, etiam, vērō, certē, *etc.*;
or the answer may be given
by repeating the verb.

yesterday, herī.

yet, tamen.

not yet, nōndum.

yield, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum,
3, *with Dat.*; concēdō, -cēdere,
-cessī, -cessum, 3, *with Dat.*

you, tū, tuī; *Pl.* vōs, *etc.*, 214
[654].

your, yours, *in speaking to one*
person, tuus, -a, -um; *in*
speaking to more than one,
vester, -tra, -trum.

yourself, *Reflexive*, tuī, *etc.*, *Pl.*
vestrī, *etc.*, 215 [654].

zeal, studium, -ī, N. 2.



GIRLS PLAYING AT JACKSTONES
From a Painting found in Herculaneum



THE ANIO, AS IT FALLS BELOW TIVOLI

INDEX

The references are in general to sections, but occasionally to pages, marked *p.*, or footnotes, marked *n.* Numbers in brackets refer to the Summary of Constructions and Forms, pp. 240-290. *Roman* numerals not attached to others refer to Pronunciation, pp. 1-3.

- ā* and *ab*, choice between, *p.* 24, *n.* 1.
 with ablative of agent, 126.
- Ablative, a mixed case, 71.
 general forces, 72, 1, 2, 3 [591].
 absolute, 308 and *a.*
 of accompaniment, 507 and *a.*
 of accordance, 455 and *a.*
 of agent, 126; origin, *p.* 44, *n.* 2.
 of cause or reason, 440.
 of comparison, 457.
 of description, 390, 2.
 of manner, 513.
 of means or instrument, 274.
 of measure of difference, 332.
 this often like adverb, *p.* 191, *n.* 1.
 of place in which, 78, *a.* 407, 3; with
 names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*,
 409, 3; preposition may be omitted
 with certain words, 410.
 of place from which, 407, 1, 409, 1.
 of point of view from which, 411.
 of respect, 442.
 of separation, 519.
 of time at or within which, 399.
 of way or manner, 513.
 with *fidō*, *cōfidō*, 432.
 with *opus est*, 445.
 with prepositions [592, 1].
 with *ūtor*, *frūor*, *fungor*, *potior*,
 vēscor, 334.
 summary of uses of ablative [591].
- Ablative singular third declension, in *-e*
 or *-ī*, 293, *a.* 319, 1-4, 320, 1-3.
 of participles, 300, *a.*
- Abstract nouns, defined, *p.* 169, *n.* 2.
-ābus, dative and ablative in, 113.
ac, see *atque*.
- Accent, XI, 1, 2.
 in genitive and vocative of nouns in
 -ius or *-ium*, 112, 2, *a.*
- Accompaniment, with *cum*, 507.
cum omitted, 507, *a.*
- Accordance, ablative of, 455 and *a.*
 Accusative, 15.
 of direct object, 62.
 of extent, duration or degree, 434.
 this often like adverb, *p.* 191, *n.* 1.
 of place to which, with *ad* or *in*, 78,
 a.; with *sub*, 467; with names of
 towns, *domus* and *rūs*, 409, 2.
 of predicate object, with verbs of
 making, choosing, etc., 330.
 becomes subject of passive, 330, *a.*
 of space-relation (not separative,
 sociative, or locative), 78.
 of subject of infinitive in indirect
 discourse, 465; elsewhere, 542.
 "two accusatives," 330.
 with prepositions, 78 [592, II].
 summary of uses of accusative [589].
- acer*, declension, 293 [630].
- Active voice, defined, 122.
- ad*, with accusative, 78 and *b.*
 after words of fitness or readiness,
 p. 98, *n.* 5, *p.* 116, *n.* 4.
 of purpose with gerundive or gerund,
 p. 123, *n.* 4.
- Adjectives, defined, 12.
 declension: first and second, 117
 [627, 628]; third, consonant stems,
 286 [629]; *i*-stems, 293 [630, 631];
 pronominal, 129, 130 [642, 643].
 comparison of, 511, 530, 531 [634-36].
 agreement of, 119.
 through infinitives, 295, *b.*
 as substantives, 146, *b.*
 attributive, 25, 1.
 position of, 19, 2.
 possessive, 34.
 position of, 34, *a.*
 predicate, 25, 2.
 position of, *p.* 19, *n.* 1.
 with dative, 67.
- Adjective pronoun, defined, 147.

- Adverbs, defined, **36**.
 formation, p. 130, n. 1, **537**.
 comparison, **538**, **539** [637, 638].
 position of, **38**.
- Adversative *cum*-clause, **489**.
quī-clause, **479**.
- ae*, pronominal ending, **166**, *b*, **184**, *b*.
 Agent, ablative of, with *ā* or *ab*, **126**,
281; dative of, **281**.
- ager*, declension, **111** [616].
- Agreement, general nature of, **13**.
 of adjectives with nouns, **119**.
 through infinitives, **295**, *b*.
 of adjectives with infins., p. 38, n. 1.
 of appositive nouns, **44**.
 of determinative pronouns, **147**.
 of participles, **226**, *a*, **247**, *b*.
 of predicate nouns, **26**.
 of relative pronouns, **189**.
 of verbs, **95**, *b*.
 summary and general rule [585].
- a-i*, pronunciation of, p. 55, n. 4.
aliquis (-*quī*), declension, **207** [653].
alius, declension, **130** [643].
alius . . *alius* . . , *one* . . *another*, **131**.
- Alphabet, I.
- alter*, declension, **130** [643].
alter . . *alter* . . , *one* . . *the other*, **131**.
amandus sum, conjugation [663].
amāns, declension, **300** [632].
amātūrus sum, conjugation [663].
ambō, declension, **328** [640].
amō, conjugation in full [656].
animal, declension, **270** [621].
- Answers to questions, **174**.
- Antecedent, defined, **187**, 2.
 sometimes repeated in relative
 clause, p. 158, n. 1.
- Antepenult, defined, XI, 2.
 when accented, XI, 2.
- antequam* and *priusquam*, with indica-
 tive of actual past act [597, III].
 with subjunctive of act anticipated,
356 [596, B, 1].
- Anticipatory subjunctive, defined, **343**.
 close to fut. indic. in meaning, **343**, *c*.
 translation of, **343**, *d*.
 with *antequam*, *priusquam*, **356**.
 with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, **356**.
 in past-future clauses in general, **382**.
 see also *past future*, etc.
- Aoristic idea, defined, **221**, 2.
 Aoristic narrative clause, with *ubi*, *ut*,
postquam, *simul atque*, **506**.
 interchangeable with *cum*-clause of
 situation, p. 224, n. 2.
- Apposition and appositive, defined,
43, *a*.
 agreement of appositives, **44**.
- Article, lacking in Latin, **6**.
 "As . . . as possible," how expressed,
 p. 236, n. 3.
- atque* and *ac*, choice between, p. 66, n. 1.
- Attempted action, imperf. of, p. 158, n. 2.
- Attitude, dative after words of, **67**.
- Attraction, subjunctive by, **545**.
- Attributive adjective, **25**, 1.
- audiō*, conjugation in full [660].
- aut* and *vel* distinguished, **195**.
- "Before," moods with words meaning,
356 [597, III].
- bonus*, declension, **117** [627].
- caedēs*, declension, **271** [622].
capīō, conjugation in full [659].
caput, declension, **256** [617].
 Cardinal numbers [639].
- Cases, defined, **15**.
 endings of, see *endings*.
 table of meanings, **80**.
 summaries of uses [585-94].
- cāsus*, declension, **369** [624].
causā, of purpose, p. 220, n. 1.
- Cause, expressed by:
 ablative, **440**.
quod, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*, and
 indicative, **517**.
cum-clause, subjunctive, **486**, *c*, **489**.
quī-clause, subjunctive, **479**.
- cēdō*, original meaning, p. 72, n. 1.
- certior*, declension, **286** [629].
- Clause, defined, **148**, 1.
 for kinds, see special names.
 generally modifying forward, p. 228,
 n. 3.
- Collective noun, defined, **31**, *a*.
- Combinations of words, pronunciation
 in, X.
- Command, imperative of, **137**.
 subjunctive of, **347**.
 in indirect discourse, **532**, *c*, **533**.

- Common noun, defined, **31**.
 Comparative adjectives, declension, **286, 287**, 1 [629].
 with ablative, **457**.
 Comparative degree, defined, p. 111, n. meaning "too," p. 187, n. 4, **540**.
 Comparison of adjectives:
 (first shown, p. 130, n. 2, p. 187, n. 1.)
 regular, in *-ior*, *-issimus*, **511**, 1.
 in *-ior*, *-errimus*, **511**, 2.
 in *-ior*, *-illimus*, **511**, 3.
 with *magis*, *maximē*, **511**, 4.
 irregular or defective, **530, 531**.
 summary [634-36].
 Comparison of adverbs:
 (first shown, p. 130, n. 2.)
 regular, **538**.
 irregular or defective, **539**.
 summary [637-38].
 Complementary infinitive, **87**, *b*.
 Completed action, see *perfect*, *past perfect*, *future perfect*.
complūrēs, declension, **327** [633].
 Composite origin of constructions, explained, **391**, 1, 2.
 Composition, genitive of, **387**.
 Compound verbs with dative, **527**.
 Concern, dative of, **260**.
 Conclusions, see *conditions*.
 Concrete noun, defined, p. 169, n. 3.
 Concrete object for which, **430**.
 Conditions and conclusions, defined, **494**.
 introduced by *sī*, *nisi*, relatives, or conjunctions, **494**, *a*.
 individual and general, **494**, *b*.
 neutral (implying nothing as to fact), **496**.
 more vivid future, **498**, 1; less vivid future, **498**, 2.
 contrary to fact, **524**.
 general table, **525**.
confidō, dative and ablative with, **432**.
 Conjugation defined, **92**.
 Conjugations distinguished by characteristic vowels, **92**.
 for details, see *first conjugation*, *second conjugation*, *third conjugation*, etc.
 Conjunctions, defined, **14**.
 frequent omission of, p. 47, n. 1.
 Consecutive subjunctive, defined, **418, 419** and 1, 2, **420**.
 with *quī*, *cum*, *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quān*, **421**, 1-3, **446**.
 Consonant stems, see *third declension*.
 Consonantal *i*, V.
 Consonants, pronunciation, V.
 Constructions, summaries of [585-612].
 Constructions of composite origin, **391**, 1, 2.
cōnsuetūdine, ablative of accordance, **455**, *a*.
 Contraction in forms from perfect stems in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, *-īvī*, p. 224, n. 4.
 Contrary to fact, see *conditions and conclusions*.
cornū, declension, **369** [624].
corpus, declension, **265** [620].
cum, conjunction:
 with indicative, determinative, **426**, p. 239, n. 2, end.
 generalizing, **494**, *b*; p. 226, n. 1.
 summary for indicative, p. 227, n. 1.
 with subjunctive, descriptive, **487**.
 lightest touch of, p. 239, n. 2.
 interchangeable with clause with *ubi*, *ut*, etc., **506**, *a*.
 descriptive with additional causal or adversative idea, **488**.
 (purely) causal or adversative, **489**.
 summary for subjunctive, p. 224, n. 5.
cum, preposition with ablative, **74**.
 enclitic with personal, relative, and interrogative prons., p. 167, n. 1.
 with ablative of accompaniment, **507**.
 when omitted, **507**, *a*.
 when used with ablative of way or manner, **513**.
 Customary action, imperfect of, p. 159, n. 2.
 Dative, general force, **55**.
 of agent, with future passive participle, **281**.
 of concrete object, **430**.
 of indirect object, **65**.
 of person judging, **295**.
 of possession, **289**.
 of reference or concern, **260**.
 of tendency, purpose, or result, **428**.

- Dative, continued:
 "predicate dative," p. 169, n. 1.
 "two datives," p. 169, n. 1.
 with adjectives, 67.
 with *fidō* and *cōfidō*, 432.
 with impersonal verbs, 402.
 with verbs compounded with prepositions, 527.
 with "verbs meaning believe, favor, help," etc., see next lines.
 with words of quality, attitude, or relation, 67.
 summary of uses of dative [588].
dē or *ex* with ablative, in place of genitive of the whole, 202, b.
 Declension, defined, 79.
 of nouns, see *first declension*, etc.
 of adjectives, see *adjectives*.
 of participles, see *participles*.
 of pronouns, see pronoun desired.
 Degree, accusative of, 434.
 Degree of difference, see *measure of difference*.
 Deliberative questions, p. 134, n. 2, p. 139, n. 9.
 Demonstrative, see *determinative*.
 Deponent verbs, defined, 313.
 principal parts, 314.
 voice of participles of, 315.
 Descriptive idea, expressed by:
 adjective, 12.
 ablative, 390, 2.
 genitive, 390, 1.
quī-clause, 421, 1, 422, c.
cum-clause, 421, 487.
 with additional idea of cause or opposition, 488.
 Determinative idea, expressed by:
 determinative pron., p. 51, n. 1, 147.
cum-clause, 426, p. 227, n. 1, p. 239, n. 2.
quī-clause, 426.
 Determinative pronoun, defined, 145 and n. 1.
 used as adjective, 147.
 as personal pronoun, 214.
 for *hic*, *is*, *iste*, *ille*, see word desired.
 position of, 133, 147, a.
dīc, imperative of *dīcō*, p. 204, n. 1.
dīc-, decl., 395 [625]; gender, 396.
 Diphthongs, pronunciation, IV.
 are long, VII, b.
 Direct discourse, defined, 463.
 Direct object, defined, 61; case of, 62.
 Direction in space, how expressed:
 literal, 78, b.
 figurative, 55 and a, 78, b.
dis-, meaning, p. 150, n. 3.
 Division of syllables, VI.
 Divisions of time, 251.
dō, short a in conjugation, p. 59, n. 1.
domus, declension, 406 [626].
 cases in constructions of place, 409, 1, a, 2, a, 3, a.
dōnec, moods with, see *dum*.
dōnum, declension, 107 [615].
 Double connective, p. 220, n. 5.
dūc, imperative of *dūcō*, p. 204, n. 1.
dum, "while," with present indicative in narration, p. 126, n. 1.
 "until," with indicative of actual past act, p. 218, n. 2.
 with subjunctive of act anticipated, 356.
 summary of mood-uses, p. 218, n. 2.
duo, declension, 328 [640].
duplex, declension, 293 [631].
 Duration, accusative of, 434.
 -e or -ī in ablative singular, 319, 1-4, 320, 1-3.
 e-i-, pronunciation of, p. 55, n. 4.
ē and *ex*, choice between, 175.
ego, declension, 214 [654].
 when expressed as subject, 140.
-ēī or *-eī* in fifth declension, 395, b.
eius, distinguished from *suus*, 216, 1 and 2.
 pronunciation, p. 55, n. 4.
 Emphatic order, see *order*.
 Enclitic, defined, p. 46, n. 2.
 enclitic conjunction introducing a clause, position of, 148, 1, a.
 Endings, in conjugation, personal, 124.
 in declension: first, 86; second, 107; third, 256, 257; fourth, 369; fifth, 395.
 English present participle, frequent inexactness of, p. 225, n. 1.
 Entreaty, see *request*.
eō, conjugation, 503 [667].
-ēs and *-īs* in third declension, 319, 1, 2, 320, 2, 3.

- esse*, often omitted in perfect passive infinitive, almost always so in future active infinitive, p. 180, n. 1.
- ex* or *ē*, choice between, 175.
- Exactness, quantity, and number, position of words of, 133.
- exemplar*, declension, 270 [621].
- exemplō*, ablative of accordance, 455, *a*.
- Exhortation, subjunctive of, p. 134, n. 1.
- Expletive, defined, p. 30, n. 1, p. 38, n. 1.
- Extent of space, accusative of, 434.
- faciō*, passive of compounds of, 502, *a*.
- imperative, *fac*, 522 and n. 1.
- Fact, indicative of, 59 [597].
- subjunctive of (existing in consecutive clauses only), 421.
- substantive *quod*-clause of, 444.
- Fear, clauses of, 353.
- Feminine gender of nouns: in first decl., 105; second, 106; third, 324, 3; fourth, 370; fifth, 396.
- ferō*, conjugation, 522 [668].
- fido*, dative and ablative with, 432.
- Fifth declension, 395 [625].
- genders in, 396.
- Figurative and literal direction, explanation of terms, p. 17, n. 1.
- filia*, dative and ablative plural, 113.
- filius*, gen. and voc. sing., 112, 1, 2.
- finis*, declension, 271 [622].
- Finite moods, defined, p. 44, n. 1, 338.
- fiō*, conjugation, 502 [666].
- First conjugation, in full [656].
- First declension, of nouns, 86.
- genders in, 105.
- of adjectives, 117 [627, 628].
- Five ways of introducing main verb, p. 233, n. 1.
- fore* and *futūrum esse* with *ut* and subj. for future infinitive, 466.
- Formal *ut*, p. 136, ns. 1, 5.
- Forms, summary of [613-68].
- fortis*, declension, 293 [630].
- Forward-moving rel. clause, p. 171, n. 1.
- Fourth conjugation, in full [660].
- Fourth declension, 369 [624].
- genders in, 370.
- fruor*, ablative with, 334.
- fungor*, ablative with, 334.
- Future conditions and conclusions: more vivid, 498, 1; less vivid, 498, 2.
- Future imperative, formation, 448; meaning, 449.
- Future indicative, formation, 157, *a*, 206, *a*; meaning, 157, *b*.
- Future infinitive, formation, 460, 3; meaning, 462.
- replaced often by *fore* or *futūrum esse* with subjunctive, 466.
- Future participle:
- active, formation and decl., 233, 1.
- meaning, 233, 2.
- when given in principal parts, 234.
- passive, formation and decl., 279.
- generally expresses obligation, propriety, or necessity, 280.
- with dative of agent, 281.
- agreeing with object may express purpose, p. 216, n. 3.
- used impersonally, p. 187, n. 2.
- Future perfect indicative:
- formation, active, 243, passive, 248.
- meaning, 243, *a*.
- Future perfect subjunctive, expressed:
- by perf. subj., 497, *b*, p. 234, n. 2, or past perf. subj., p. 222, n. 5.
- Future point of view, 251, *a*, 253 and 254 (headings), 379 and *a*, 380.
- Future subjunctive, expressed by pres. subj., 497, *a* and *b*, p. 234, n. 2, or imperf. subj., 379 and *a*, p. 234, n. 2.
- futūrum esse ut*, see *fore ut*.
- Gender, grammatical, p. 35, n. 1; in first declension, 105; in second declension, 106; in third declension, 324; in fourth declension, 370; in fifth declension, 396.
- Generalizing conditions and conclusions, 494, *b*, p. 226, n. 1.
- Generalizing pronoun, *quicumque*, 192; also *quī*, 494, *a*.
- Genitive, defined, 53.
- forms, see *first declension*, etc.
- descriptive, 390, 1.
- objective, 209.
- of material or composition, 387.
- of the whole ("partitive"), 202.
- possessive, 53.
- summary of uses of genitive [587].

gēns, declension, **271** [622].

Gerund, defined, **470**, 2.

for uses, see *gerundive* and *gerund* below.

Gerundive, defined, **303**, **470**, 1.

for uses, see *gerundive* and *gerund* below.

Gerundive and gerund, choice, **474**, *a*.
uses in general, **473**, **474**.

in genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*,
expressing purpose, p. 220, n. 1.

with *ad*, expressing purpose, p. 123,
n. 4.

grātiā, of purpose, see fourth line
above.

Growth of language, two principles in,
391.

Habitual action, imperfect of, p. 159,
n. 2.

Harmony of tenses ("sequence"),
475, 1.

Helping tenses, p. 222, n. 2.

hic, declension, **166** [648].

distinguished from *is*, *iste*, *ille*, **167**, 1.

Hindering, substantive clauses after
verbs of, **352** (2).

Historical infinitive, **515**.

subject in nominative, **515**.

Historical present, **504** and *a*.

'Hortatory' subjunctive, see *volitive*
subjunctive, and *exhortation*.

i as consonant, V.

-ī or -e in ablative singular, **319**, 1-4,
320, 1-3.

-ī, pronominal dative ending, **129**.

i-stems, see *third declension*.

īdem, declension, **158** [647].

īēns, participle of *eō*, declension, **503**
[667].

ignis, declension, **278** [623].

ille, declension, **145** [645].

as personal pronoun, **167**, 3.

distinguished from *hic*, *is*, *iste*, **167**, 1.

with descriptive meaning, **422**.

Imperative mood, formation (all con-
jugations), **448**.

tenses of, **449**.

uses of, **137**.

dīc, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*, p. 204, n. 1.

Imperfect indicative, formation, **144**,
a, **198**, *a*, *b*.

tense sign, **144**, *a*.

meaning, **144**, *b*.

how differing from perfect, compare
144, *b*, and **221**, 2.

of attempted action, p. 158, n. 2.

of habitual action, p. 159, n. 2.

Imperfect subjunctive, formation,
377, *a*.

tense meaning, **379**, **382**, p. 234, n. 2.

of action that had been for some time
going on, p. 215, n. 1.

imperō, takes subjunctive, **543**, *a*.

Impersonal verbs, **400** and *a*.

any verb may be so used, **401**.

dative remains with passive, **402**.

in with ablative, **78**, *a*.

with accusative, **78**, *a*, *b*.

= "at," with accusative, p. 67, n. 1.

= "for," of effect to be produced, with
acc., p. 110, n. 1.

Indefinite pronouns, declension of:

aliquis (-*quī*), **207** [653].

quis (*quī*), **397**, *a*.

uses and position of *quis*, **397**.

quīdam, **193**.

Indicative, formation and tenses, see
present, *imperfect*, etc.

mood of fact, declaring, inquiring,
or assuming, **59** [597].

in independent statements and ques-
tions of fact, **59** [597, 1].

in dependent clauses of fact:

aoristic narrative clauses with *ubi*,
ut, *postquam*, *simul atque*, **505**.

determinative clauses: with *cum*,
426, with *quī*, **426**.

general conditions of fact, **494**, *b*,
496.

more vivid future conditions, **498**, 1;
table, **525**.

neutral conditions, **496**; table, **525**.

of actual past act with words mean-
ing "before" or "until," p. 207,
ns. 6, 7, p. 218, n. 2.

of cause or reason with *quod*, *quia*,
quoniam, *quandō*, **517**.

quod-clause of respect, **444**, *a*.

substantive *quod*-clause of fact, **444**.

summary of uses of indicative [597].

- Indirect discourse, defined, **463**, *a*.
 general rule for, **533**.
 table, **534**.
 indirect clauses of cause or reason
 with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quān-*
dō, **533** and *c*.
 indirect commands or prohibitions,
533, **534**. See also p. 218, n. 9.
 indirect questions of fact, **533**, **534**.
 indirect statements of fact, **465**, **533**,
534.
 omission of subject, **465**, *a*.
 omission of *esse*, p. 222, n. 3.
 tenses in, **463**, *c*, **464**.
 indirect subordinate clauses, **533**,
534.
 Indirect object, dative of, **65**.
 Infinitive, defined, **87**.
 origin of, p. 181, n. 1.
 formation, **138**, **460**, 1-3.
esse often omitted in compound
 tenses, p. 180, n. 1.
 meanings of tenses, **462**.
 distinguishing conjugations, **92**.
 as subject, object, or complement, **87**
 and *a*, *b*; in freer relations, **542**.
 historical infinitive, **515**.
 subject in nominative, **515**.
 in indirect discourse, **465**, **533**.
 subject in accusative, **465**.
 subject omitted, **465**, *a*.
 in rivalry with subjunctive, **543**, *a*.
insigne, declension, **270** [621].
 Instrument, ablative of, **274**.
-iō, of third and fourth conjugations,
178, 1, 2, **179**.
 Interjections, defined, **46**.
 Interrogative particles, **173**, 2-4.
 Interrogative pronoun, defined, **186**.
 Intransitive verb, defined, **63** and *a*.
 Introducing main verb, five ways of,
 p. 233, n. 1.
ipse, declension and meaning, **139** [644].
 distinguished from *sē*, p. 83, n. 4.
 Irregular comparison, see *comparison*.
is, declension, **153** [646].
 as personal pronoun, **167**, 3.
 distinguished from *hic*, *ille*, *iste*,
167, 2.
 general use, **167**, 2, 3.
 descriptive, = *tālis*, **422**, p. 230, n. 4.
-is and *-ēs* in third declension, **319**, 1, 2,
320, 2, 3.
 Islands, small, expressions of place
 with names of, **409**, 1-3.
iste, declension, **145**, *a* [645].
 meaning, **167**, 1.
iubeō, takes infinitive, **543**, *a*.
-ius and *-ium*, genitive and vocative
 singular of nouns in, **112**, 1, 2.
-ius, pronominal genitive ending, **129**.
 "Jussive subjunctive" = volitive.
 Leading events, tenses of, p. 222, n. 2.
 Less vivid future conditions and con-
 clusions, **498**, 2; table, **525**.
 Locative, force of word, p. 23, n. 3.
 Locative ablative, **72**, 3.
 Locative case, use of, **409**, 3.
 Long vowels, see *vowels*.
maior, pronunciation, cf. p. 55, n. 4.
mālō, conjugation, **493** [665].
 Manner, ablative of, **513**.
 Masculine gender of nouns: in first
 decl., **105**; second, **106**; third,
324, 2; fourth, **370**; fifth, **396**.
 Material or composition, gen. of, **387**.
 Means or instrument, ablative of, **274**.
 Measure of difference, ablative of, **332**.
 this often like adverb, p. 191, n. 1.
meī, *mihi*, *mē*, personal pronoun, **214**
 [654]; reflexive, **215** [654].
 Mental certainty, expressed by sub-
 junctive, **365**, **368**, VII.
meus, vocative singular *mī*, **112**, *b*.
 omission of, **35**.
 Middle verbs, **311**.
mīles, declension, **256** [617].
mīlle, declension and use, **490**.
mīror, conjugation [662].
mīser, declension, **117** [628].
 Mixed stems, see *third declension*.
 Modifier, defined, **16**.
monēns, declension, **300** [632].
moneō, conjugation in full [657].
 Monosyllable, defined, p. 33, n. 2.
 Mood, defined, **59**, *a*, **368**, *c*.
 for details, see indicative, etc.
 More vivid future conditions and con-
 clusions, **498**, 1; table, **525**.

mōs, declension, **265** [620].

mōre, ablative of accordance, **455, a.**

multitūdō, declension, **264** [619].

multum, in acc. of degree, p. 191, n. 1.

Mute consonants, defined, p. 125, n. 2.

Natural harmony of tenses ("sequence") **475, 1** [611, 612]; **477** [610].

Natural likelihood, expressed by subjunctive, **368, V.**

-ne, interrogative enclitic, **173, 2.**

nē, see *negatives*.

nec, see *neque*.

necesse, indeclinable noun, **374.**

in predicate="necessary," **374.**

Negatives:

nē for imperative, **449.**

for optative, **368, b.**

for volitive, **344, 368, b.**

nōn for other subjunctives, **368, b.**

for all questions, **349, b.**

for indicative, **59, c.**

nēmō, declension, **290.**

neque and *nec*, choice between, p. 66, n. 1.

corresponding to *nōn*, **181, 565.**

neuter, declension, **129** [642].

Neuter gender in second declension, **106; in third, 324, 1.**

Neuter *i*-stems, **270** [621].

Neutral conditions and conclusions, **496; table, 525.**

nēve (*neu*), corresponding to *nē*, **565.**

"No" in answers, **174, 1, 2.**

nōlī with infinitive=prohibition, p. 195, n. 3.

nōlō, conjugation, **493** [665].

nōmen, declension, **264** [619].

Nominative as subject, **24.**

nōn, see *negatives*.

nōnne, in questions, **173, 3.**

Normal order, see *order*.

noster, distinguished from *meus*, **216, 1.**

nostrī, reflexive, declension, **215** [654].

nostrum, *-trī*, distinguished, **214, a.**

"Noun clauses," see *substantive clauses*.

Nouns, defined, **12.**

declension, see *first declension*, etc.

genders, see *gender*.

common nouns, defined, **31.**

collective nouns, defined, **31, a.**

proper nouns, defined, **30.**

used as appositives, **44.**

as predicates, **26** and *a.*

as subjects, **24.**

for other uses, see *genitive, dative*, etc.

nox, declension, **271** [622].

nullus, declension, **129** [642].

num, in questions, **173, 4.**

Number, defined, **79, 84.**

Numerals, list [639].

position of, p. 46, n. 1.

Object of verb, direct, **62**; indirect, **65.**

Objective genitive, **209.**

Obligation or propriety, may be expressed by subjunctive, **368, IV.**

Obligation, propriety, or necessity, may be expressed by future passive participle, **280.**

Obstructed consonants, VI, 3, *a.*

Omission:

of conjunction, p. 47, n. 1.

of *esse* in compound forms of the infinitive, p. 180, n. 1.

in indirect discourse, p. 222, n. 3.

of *cum* in ablative of accompaniment, **507, a.**

in ablative of manner, **513.**

of *in* with certain phrases, **410.**

of personal pronoun, **35.**

of possessive adjective, **35.**

in general, of words easily understood, p. 5, n. 1.

Opposition, see *subj.*, *adversative*.

Optative subjunctive, **368, III.**

in substantive clauses, **375, 3.**

orātiō obliqua, see *indirect discourse*.

Order, normal, **19, 1.**

normal position of:

adjective, **19, 2.**

adverb, **38.**

dative, **54, a.**

determinative pronoun, **133, 147, a.**

genitive, **53, a.**

indirect object, **65, a.**

numeral, **133** and n. 1.

possessive adjective, **34, a.**

predicate adj. or noun, p. 19, n. 1.

pronominal adjective, **132.**

vocative, **45, a.**

words of exactness, quantity, or number, **133.**

- emphatic order, 19, 3, 49, 50.
 most emphatic places first and last, 50, p. 222, n. 7.
 immediate arrest of attention, effect of, p. 15, n. 2, 49, 1.
 suspense, effect of, 50, *a*, p. 222, n. 7.
 slight suspense, p. 76, n. 1.
 preposition emphasized, p. 27, n. 1.
 group order: adjective, preposition, noun, p. 64, n. 1.
causā and *gratiā* follow the words that depend upon them, p. 220, n. 1.
 most clauses modify forward, p. 228, n. 3.
 relative clause leading, p. 228 n. 4.
 Ordinals [639].
- Participles, defined, 226.
 formation and declension, see participle desired.
 agreement of, 226, *a*, 247, *c*.
 express situation, p. 226, n. 6.
 perfect active English participle, how expressed, p. 225, n. 1.
partior, conjugation [662].
 "Partitive genitive," see *genitive of the whole*.
- Parts of speech, 81.
- Passive voice, defined, 122.
- Past future idea, only subjunctive can express, 382.
 expressed by imperfect subj., 382, *a*.
 by past perfect subj., p. 222, n. 5.
- Past perfect indicative, formation, 238; tense-force, 239.
- Past perfect subj., formation, 437.
 as past future perfect, p. 222, n. 5.
- Past point of view, 379, 380, 382.
pater, declension, 257 [618].
- Penult, defined, XI, 1.
 when accented, XI, 1, 2.
- "Perfect definite," p. 84, n. 1.
 "Perfect indefinite," p. 84, n. 2.
- Perfect indicative, formation, active, 225; passive, 247.
 two forces, present perfect and past aorist, 221.
- Perfect infinitive, formation, active, 460, 2; passive, 460, 2.
 tense meanings, 462.
- Perfect passive participle, formation and declension, 227, 2.
 meaning, 227, 1.
 agreement, 226, *a*.
- Perfect passive tenses, formation, 247, 248.
- Perfect stem, formation, 225 and *a*.
- Perfect subjunctive, formation, active and passive, 415.
 used as future perf., 497, *b*, p. 234, n. 2.
- Perfect tenses with present meaning (*nōvī*, etc.), 309, 310.
- Periphrastic conjugations, active, 233, 2, *b*; passive, 280, *a*; forms in full [663].
 restriction of uses [663, *a*].
- Person, of pronouns, 213.
 of verbs, 60 and *a*.
- Person judging, dative of, 295.
- Person or thing affected, dative of, after compound verbs, 527.
- Personal endings of verbs, 124.
- Personal pronouns, defined, 213.
 declension, 214 [654].
 four of the third person, 167, 3.
 when expressed as subjects, 140.
- Phrase, first defined, p. 7, n. 1; more fully defined, 148, 2.
- Picturesque tenses, 504, *a* [612, *b*].
- piger*, declension, 117 [628].
- Place, general expression of, 78, *a*, 407, 1-3; preposition *in* may be omitted with certain very common words, 410.
 with names of towns, etc., 409, 1-3.
- Pluperfect, see *past perfect*.
- plus*, declension, 327 [633].
- plus, plurimum*, in accusative of degree p. 175, n. 5, p. 191, ns. 1, 2.
- Point of view from which, 411.
- Point of view in tenses, 475, 1, 2.
- Position of words, see *order*.
- Possessive, expressed by genitive, 53.
 by accusative with *habēō* or dative with *sum*, 289 and *a*.
- Possessive adjectives, defined, 34.
 of first and second persons, 216, 1.
 often omitted, 35.
 position of, 34, *a*.
 of third person, expressed by *eius*, etc., 216, 1.

- Possessive adjectives, reflexive, **216, 2.**
 often omitted, **35.**
 position of, **34, a.**
 "Possessive pronouns," see the three lines above.
- Possibility, expressed by subjunctive, **368, VI**; by *possum*, **485.**
possum, conjugation, **485** [664].
 with superlative and *quam*, p. 236, n. 3.
- Postpositive, defined, p. 53, n. 1.
- postquam*, narrative clause with, **506.**
- Potential subjunctive, **368, VI**, and n. 2.
- potior*, ablative with, **334.**
- prae*, why takes ablative, **301.**
- Predicate, defined, **22.**
 predicate adjective, agreement, **25, 2.**
 generally stands next to verb,
 p. 19, n. 1.
 predicate noun, agreement, **26, a**;
 generally stands next to verb,
 p. 19, n. 1.
 predicate accusative, **330.**
 becomes subject in passive, **330, a.**
 predicate nominative, **26.**
 "predicate dative," p. 169, n. 1.
- Prepositions, defined, **73.**
 not existing in oldest stage of language, p. 201, n. 2.
 originally adverbs, p. 154, n. 1.
 gain figurative meanings, p. 122, n. 1.
 position of, p. 27, n. 1.
 prepositions with ablative, **78.**
 prepositions with accusative, **78.**
 list, with cases [592].
- Present active participle, declined, **300** [632].
- Present perfect, **221, 1.**
- Present imperative, **449.**
- Present participle in English, frequent inexactness of, p. 225, n. 1.
- Present point of view, **379, 380.**
- Present subjunctive, mood signs, **339, a.**
 as future, **380, 497, b**, p. 234, n. 2.
- Présent tense of indicative, meaning, **59.**
- "Primary tenses," = tenses of the present or future, **475-77** [610].
- Principal parts of verbs, **228.**
- "Principal tenses," see *primary tenses*.
- Principles, two, in the growth of language, **391.**
- priusquam*, mood with, see *antequam*.
- prō*, why takes ablative, **301.**
 development of meanings, **304, 458, 556.**
- Prohibitions, subjunctive, **347.**
 expressed by *nōt* with infinitive,
 p. 195, n. 3.
- Pronominal adjectives, **129.**
 declension, **129, 130.**
- Pronominal endings, **129.**
- Pronouns, defined, **32.**
 determinative, personal, etc. See under these words.
 used as substantives, **146** and *a.*
- Pronunciation, I-XI.
 general directions for, **7.**
- Proper nouns, defined, **30.**
- puer*, declension, **111** [616].
- pulvis*, declension, **265** [620].
- Purpose, expressed by:
ad with gerundive or gerund, p. 123, n. 4.
causā or *gratiā* with genitive of gerundive or gerund, p. 220, n. 1.
 dative, **428.**
 future passive participle in agreement with object, p. 216, n. 3, p. 229, n. 1.
quī, quō, ut, or nē, with subjunctive, **351.**
 these distinguished, **351**, p. 139, n. 7.
 supine, **453, 1.**
 never by infinitive in prose, p. 139, n. 8, p. 229, n. 1.
 table of summary, p. 229, n. 1.
- Quality, dative after words of, **67.**
- "Quality," genitive and ablative of, see *descriptive genitive* and *descriptive ablative*.
- quam*, with comparatives, **457.**
 with superlatives, p. 236, n. 3.
- quamquam*, with indicative, example, **268, 1.**
- quandō*, in clauses of reason, **517.**
- Quantity of vowels, VII.
 of syllables, IX.
 in combinations of words, X.
- Quantity, position of words of, **133.**
-que, enclitic, **134.**
-que, indefinite particle, p. 71, n. 1.

Questions:

- indicative, of fact, **59** [597].
- indirect of fact, see *subjunctive*.
- subjunctive:
 - of deliberation, **349, 354**.
 - of obligation or propriety, **368, IV**.
 - of possibility, **368, VI**.
 - indirect of fact, **534**.

quī, declension, **184** [649].

construction, rule for, **189**.

quī-clauses:

- causal or adversative, **479**.
- descriptive, **421, 1, 422, c**.
- determinative, **426**.
- of purpose, **351**.
- see also *relative clause*.

quīa, in clauses of cause or reason, **517**.

quicumque, declension, **192** [649, *a*].

quid-, substantive form in compounds, see *quod-*.

quīdam, declension, **193** [650].

quīn, origin and meaning, p. 136, n. 3.

in volitive clauses, **352**.

in consecutive clauses, **421, 2**.

restriction of use, **352, a**.

quis:

- interrogative, declension, **184** [649].
- indefinite, declension, **397, a** [653].
- uses and position, **397**.

quispiam, declension, **200, c, 565** [652, *a*].

quisquam, declension, **199** [651].

when used, **199, b**.

quisque, declension, **200** [652].

quoad, moods with, see *dum*.

quod, relative pronoun or conjunction (danger), p. 224, n. 9.

quod- and *quid-*, respectively adjective and substantive forms in all compounds of *quis* and *quī*, p. 71, n. 2.

quod-clause:

- of cause or reason, **517**.
- of respect, **444, a**.
- substantive, of fact, **444**.

quōminus, in volitive clauses, **352 (2)**.
origin and meaning, p. 136, n. 2.

quoniam, in clauses of reason, **517**.

Quoted reason, subjunctive of, see *indirect discourse*.

"Rather," expressed by comparative, **540**.

Reason, see *cause*.

Reference or concern, dative of, **260**.

Reflexive possessive adjectives, **216, 2**.
often omitted, **35**.

position of, **34, a**.

Reflexive pronouns, defined, **213, 2**.

declined, **215**.

distinguished from *ipse*, intensive,
compare **215** and **139**.

Reflexive verbs, **311**.

Relation, dative after words expressing, **67**.

Relations of time, generally expressed exactly in Latin, **161**.

Relative clause, defined, **187, 3**.

relative clause leading, p. 228, n. 4.

forward-moving relative clause (really independent), p. 171, n. 1.

Relative pronoun, defined, **187, 1**.

its antecedent, **187, 2**.

gender, number, case, **189**.

in clauses of purpose, cause, or opposition, see these words.

see also *quī*.

Relative tenses:

of indicative and subjunctive [608, 1, 610].

all tenses of infinitive and particip'e, **462** [603].

Request or entreaty, expressed:

by imperative, **137**.

by subjunctive, p. 207, n. 2, p. 226, n. 7.

rēs, declension, **395** [625].

Respect, ablative of, **442**.

ablative supine of, **453, 2**.

Result, expressed by:

dative, **428**.

ut, ut nōn, quīn, with subjunctive, **421, 1-3**.

rēx, declension, **256** [617].

Rise of new meanings in constructions, **391, 1, 2, and n. 1**.

ro-stems in nouns, explained, **111**.

ro- and *rū*-stems in adjs., **111, 117, b**.

rōbur, declension, **257** [618].

Roman pronunciation, I-XI.

"Rule," meaning of word, p. 8, n. 1.

rās, rūre, rūrī, in constructions of place, **409, 1, a, 2, a, 3, a**.

s-stems, 265, a.

sē, declension, 215 [654].

Second conjugation, in full [657].

Second declension:

of nouns in general, 107, 111 [615, 616]; of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 112, 1, 2.

genders in, 106.

of adjectives, 117 [627, 628].

"Secondary tenses," = tenses of the past, 475-477 [610].

Semi-deponent verbs, 417.

Separation, ablative with verbs of, 519.

Separative ablative, 72, 1.

"Sequence of tenses," 476, 477 [611, 612].

sequor, conjugation [662].

sermō, declension, 264 [619].

serva, declension, 86 [614].

"Service," see *dative of tendency*.

servus, declension, 107 [615].

Short vowels, see *vowels*.

simul atque, narrative clause with, 506.

Situation in past, expressed by:

imperfect or past perfect indicative, 144, b, 247, b.

cum-clause, imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, 487, 488.

participle, p. 226, n. 6.

ablative absolute, 307, a, 308, a, p. 233, n. 1.

Sociative ablative, defined, 72, 2.

sōlus, declension, 129 [642].

Sounds, the Latin, III-V, VII and a, b.

Space, accusative of extent of, 434.

Space relation (not separative, sociative, or locative), expressed by preposition with accusative, 78.

Specification, see *respect*.

State of affairs, = *situation*, which see.

Stem, defined, 85, a.

sub, of motion with accusative, of rest with ablative, 467.

Subject, defined, 22.

of finite verb, in nominative, 24.

of historical infinitive, in nominative, 515.

of other infinitives, in accusative, 465, 533, 542.

when omitted, 465, a.

Subjunctive, formation and tense meanings, see tense desired.

used to express:

adversative idea (opposition) with *quī*, 479; with *cum*, 488, 489.

anticipation, with words meaning "before" or "until," 356.

in past future clauses in general, 382.

cause or reason, with *quī*, 479; with *cum*, 488, 489.

close connection with subjunctive or infinitive clause (attraction), 545.

commands or prohibitions, 347.

conditions and conclusions: less vivid future, 498, 2; contrary to fact, 524.

deliberation, 349, 354, p. 139, n. 9.

description, in *quī*-clauses, 421, 1, 422, c; in *cum*-clauses, 487, 488.

exhortation, 347 and n. 1.

fear or anxiety, 353.

indirectness (clauses in indirect discourse), 533, 534.

natural likelihood, 368, V.

obligation or propriety, 368, IV.

possibility, 368, VI.

purpose, with *quī*, *quō*, *ut*, or *nē*, 351, p. 139, ns. 7, 8.

choice among these, 351, p. 139, n. 7.

request or entreaty, p. 207, n. 2.

result, with *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quīn*, 421, 2.

situation, in *cum*-clauses, 487, 488.

substantive idea, as follows:

volitive, after verbs of will or endeavor, with *ut* or *nē*, 352 (1); after verbs of hindrance, prevention, or check, with *nē*, *quōminus*, or *quīn*, 352 (2).

optative, after verbs of wishing, with *ut* or *nē*, example, 375, 4.

consecutive, after verbs of bringing about or existence, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, 421, 3.

will, 343, 368, I.

wish, 368, III.

with *utinam*, 365, a.

summary of uses of subjunctive [596].

Substantives, defined, 146.

adjectives as substantives, 146, b.

pronouns as substantives, 146 and d.

Substantive clauses, defined, **353, a, 443, b.**

of fact, in consecutive clauses, **421, 3.**

of request or entreaty, p. 207, n. 2, p. 231, n. 4.

of result, see *of fact*.

quod-clause of fact, **444.**

volitive, after verbs:

of will or endeavor, **352 (1).**

of hindering, **352 (2).**

of fear or anxiety, **353.**

optative (of wish), after verbs of wishing, example, p. 146, n. 3.

suī, sibi, sē, declension, **215 [654].**

sum, conjugation in full [655].

Summaries given in various places for: agreement [585].

conditions and conclusions [598-601].

cum-clauses, indicative, possibilities of, p. 227, n. 1.

cum-clauses, subjunctive, possibilities of, p. 224, n. 5.

dum, donec, and *quoad*, moods with, **552, 2**; also (applies to all three words), p. 207, ns. 6, 7.

expression of purpose, p. 229, n. 1.

of result, with *ut, ut nōn, quān*, **421, 2.**

five ways of introducing main verb, p. 233, n. 1.

situation in past, see *situation*.

see also *tables*.

uses of cases [585-594].

of imperative [595].

of indicative [597].

of infinitive [602].

of subjunctive [596].

of tenses, general [606-612].

in historical writing, p. 222, n. 2.

Superlative degree, defined, p. 111, n. 1.

meaning "very," p. 130, n. 3, **540.**

with *quam*, "as . . . as possible," p. 236, n. 3.

Supine, formation, **451**; uses, **453.**

Suspense, effect of, **50, a.**

suus, distinguished from *eius*, etc., compare **216, 1, 2.**

omission of, **35.**

Syllables, division of, VI.

quantity of, IX.

Synopsis of regular verbs [661].

Tables of:

conditions and conclusions, **525.**

indirect discourse, **534.**

natural harmony of tenses, **477.**

tenses, classification [610].

tegō, conjugation in full [658].

"Temporal clauses," see *cum, ubi*, etc.

Tendency, dative of, **428.**

Tense, defined, **59, b.**

of indicative, subjunctive, imperative, see *present*, etc. [607-12].

of infinitive **462 [606].**

of participle **462 [606].**

picturesque uses of tenses, **504, a. [612, b].**

point of view in tenses, **475, 1, 2.**

"sequence of," see *natural harmony*.

summary of tense-uses [607-12].

tables of indicative and subjunctive tenses, **477 [610].**

Terminations, see *endings*.

"Than," English, how expressed, **457.**

Third conjugation:

in *-ō*, **170, 171, b.**

in *-iō*, **178, 2.**

conjugation in full [658, 659].

Third declension adjectives:

consonant stems, **286.**

i-stems, **293.**

helps in distinguishing, **320, 1, 2.**

Third declension nouns:

genders, **324, 1-3.**

consonant stems, **256, 264, 265.**

remarks, **258.**

i-stems, **270**; notes, **272.**

exceptional *i*-stems, **278 [623].**

helps in distinguishing stems, **321-3.**

mixed stems, **271 [622]**; notes, **272.**

points of difficulty, **318-23.**

Third declension participles, **300, 320 and 3 [632].**

Time at or within which, ablative of, **399**; occasional prepositions with, **399, a, b.**

duration of time, accusative, **434.**

Time, three divisions of, **251 [610].**

"Too," expressed by comparative, p. 187, n. 4, **540.**

tōtus, declension, **130 [643].**

Towns, place constructions with names of, **409, 1, 2, 3.**

- Transitive verb, defined, **61**.
trēs, declension (regular), **345**.
tū, personal pronoun, decl., **214** [654].
 when expressed as subject, **159**.
tui, *tibi*, *tē*, reflexive, decl., **215** [654].
turris, declension, **278** [623].
tuus, distinguished from *vester*, **216**, 1.
 often omitted, **35**.
 "Two accusatives," **330**.
 "Two datives," p. 169, n. 1.
- u*, pronunciation with *q*, *g*, and *s*, V.
ubi, *ut*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, with indicative, **506**.
 interchangeable with subjunctive *cum*-clause, **506**, *a*.
ullus, declension, **129** [642].
 when used, **199**, *b*.
ūnus, declension, **129** [642].
 "Until," summary of ideas with words meaning, p. 218, n. 2.
ut, "as," with indicative, p. 138, n. 1.
 in clauses of fear, **353**.
 in clauses of purpose, **351**.
 in clauses of result, **421**, 2.
 in optative substantive clauses, example, **375**, 4.
 in substantive clauses of fact, **421**, 3.
 in volitive substantive clauses, **352**.
 formal *ut*, p. 136, ns. 1, 5.
 meaning "as" ("just as"), with indicative, p. 138, n. 1.
uter, declension, **130** [643].
uterque, declension, **316**.
utinam, wishing particle, **365**, *a*.
ūtor, ablative, with **334**.
- v* sometimes lost in perfect stems in
-āvi, *-ēvi*, *-īvi*, **561**, 4.
vel, force of, **195**.
 Verb, defined, **14**.
 agreement, compare **60**, **88**, **94**.
 conjugation, see *first conjugation*,
second conjugation, etc.
 deponent, defined, **313**.
 impersonal, defined, **400**, *a*, **401**.
 intransitive, defined, **63** and *a*.
 irregular, see verb desired.
 periphrastic future active, **233**, 2, *b*
 [663]; passive, **280**, *a* [663].
 principal parts of, see *principal parts*.
 semi-deponent, defined, **417**.
 transitive, defined, **61**.
 verbs meaning "believe, favor," etc.,
 with dative, **67**.
vereor, conjugation [662].
vērō, often merely emphasizes, p. 238,
 n. 2.
 "Very," expressed by superlative, **540**.
vēscor, ablative with, **334**.
vester, distinguished from *tuus*, **216**, 1.
vestrum, *-trī*, distinguished, **214**, *a*.
vetō, takes infinitive, **543**, *a*.
vetus, declension, **286** [629].
victor, declension, **257** [618].
 "Villain," history of meanings, used
 for illustration, p. 154, n. 1.
vir, declension, **111** [616].
vis, declension, **326** [626].
 Vocative, regular formation, **107**, *a*.
 of nouns in *-ius* or *-ium*, **112**, 1, 2.
 used in address, **45**.
 Voice, defined, **122**.
 Volitive subjunctive, defined, **343**, *a*, *b*;
 translation, **343**, *d*.
 close to imperative in meaning, **343**, *c*.
 negative with, **344**, **352**.
 for other points, see *subjunctive*,
 and *substantive clauses*.
volō, conjugation, **493** [665].
 Vowels, pronunciation, III.
 quantity, VII.
 long before *ns*, *nf*, *nx*, *nct*, VIII, 1.
 short before another vowel or *h*,
 VIII, 2, **100**, 1.
 shortened before certain conson-
 ants, VIII, 3, **100**, 2.
- Way or manner, ablative of, **513**.
 Ways, five, of introducing main verb,
 p. 233, n. 1.
 Whole, expressed by genitive, **202**.
 by *dē* or *ex* with ablative, **202**, *b*.
 Wish, expressed by subjunctive, **368**,
 III; with *utinam*, **365**, *a*.
- x + y*, formula for growth of mean-
 ings in words and constructions,
391, 1.
- "Yes" and "no" questions, **173**, 1-4.
 answers to, **174**, 1, 2.



THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

MAR 25 1933

FEB 7 1941 A

~~MAR~~ 26 1933

FEB 4 1935

Mandy

MAY 11 1944

SEP 22 1936

AUG 6 1947
SEP 9 1947

OCT 6 1936

MAY 19 1948

NOV 18 1936

Jan 25 '49 RI

2-25

23 Nov '49 RI

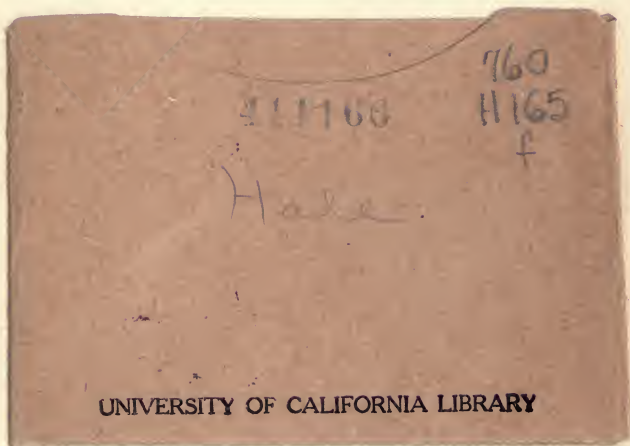
DEC 2 1936

4 May '53 PWJ

JUN 16 1953 LU

DEC 18 1936

YB 00366



411168

Hale

760

H165

f

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

h